

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मसूरी  
MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय  
LIBRARY

110134

अवाप्ति संख्या

Accession No.

~~337~~

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

445

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

Doc.



# FRENCH IN REVIEW

*René Dandon*

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

HARCOURT, BRACE AND COMPANY, NEW YORK

COPYRIGHT, 1945, BY  
HARCOURT, BRACE AND COMPANY, INC.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced  
in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without  
permission in writing from the publisher

[j · 8 · 52]

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA



# PREFACE

Communication in a foreign language requires an understanding of the parallels and contrasts between the native and the foreign tongues. These are often termed rules of grammar. But idiomatic communication results only when the rules are so applied that they convey the shade of meaning desired. FRENCH IN REVIEW has as its chief purpose not only to define the parallels and contrasts between French and English but also to describe how the rules of grammar can be made to convey the correct shades of meaning. It considers French from the point of view of the Frenchman studying his language and not from that of an American trying to twist French rules to fit the American turn of thought.

The presentation of the subjunctive clearly illustrates this procedure. This mood is neither so unusual nor so difficult in French as the American student is led to believe; it is essential, frequent, and commonly used. Certain obligatory uses of the subjunctive are introduced gradually in early lessons. The student thus approaches the summary chapter on the use of the subjunctive with some degree of familiarity, and the teacher finds the ground cleared for comparing the subjunctive as a mood of potentiality or emotivity with the indicative as one of fact. The thought, the situation, the meaning to be conveyed are thus made to contribute to understanding of the rules. Quite similar procedures are followed for the conditional, infinitives, and participles as vehicles for conveying thought.

A distinctively new contribution in this text is the section in each lesson entitled Vocabulary Distinctions. Students quite as frequently trip over the exact word to use as they do over the correct application of a rule of grammar. Yet vocabulary distinctions, for which the

average dictionary offers little or no help, have been largely neglected in most review texts. A reference chart of these distinctions is provided on the inside front cover.

Grammatical terminology has been kept at a minimum. All usages have been carefully checked by Ferdinand Brunot's *La Pensée et la langue*, and G. and R. LeBidois's *Syntaxe du français moderne*, Paris 1938, both generally considered in France the authoritative references for accurate delineation of current and correct French usage.

A second purpose of FRENCH IN REVIEW is to refresh the memory, to provide a readily accessible reference, and to develop a more mature viewpoint towards the language than an elementary text can offer. It is therefore essential that the text be short, easy to assign, and convenient of reference.

FRENCH IN REVIEW consists of sixteen lessons. Each lesson is divided into three sections: Grammar and Usage, Vocabulary Distinctions, and Translation. A teacher who wishes to spend a minimum amount of time in review may select those sections he most desires to teach and may omit the rest, or he may come back to them for further review during the year. At the end of the text, sixteen connected passages for translation into French are provided. These may be taken with the lessons if a "long course" is desired; they may be omitted entirely; or they may be subsequently used for additional review at any time during the year.

The grammar section of each lesson usually introduces several essentials that at first may appear dissimilar. The purpose of this procedure is to introduce the essentials of most frequent occurrence early in the text or to lead up gradually to the complete presentation as with the study of the conditional and of the subjunctive.

The translation section is a condensation, in sixteen instalments, of Bazin's *Les Oberlé*. This reading text illustrates some of the essentials studied in the sections on grammar and vocabulary distinctions and is also the basis for some of the translation exercises, particularly those at the end of the book.

Exercises are given for each of the three sections in each lesson. They are short and so prepared that they focus attention not on the

whole field of grammar but on specific points of difficulty in the lesson. They are easy to correct and they test thoroughly the student's understanding of the section.

Rules should be applied to situations rather than to set sentences. This is admittedly difficult and seldom possible of attainment in a review text where exercises to test comprehension and application must be supplied. The teacher should be on the alert for occasions in which the French ways of thinking can be further applied in the classroom.

In addition to the chart of vocabulary distinctions on the inside front cover, there is a number of additional reference aids. In the vocabularies, for example, certain infinitives, nouns, and adjectives which may be followed by *de* or *à* are clearly indicated. Various reference tables on verbs, numerals, and idiomatic expressions will be found in the appendices. Even with these aids, a few students are bound to go astray, but every effort has been made to reduce the temptation to a minimum.

It is our hope that this review text will give the student a clear and usable means of communicating in French with a close approximation to the correct and natural idiom.

Professor Osmond T. Robert, of Smith College, Northampton, Massachusetts, read the entire manuscript, the several sets of proofs, and helped to prepare the index while the author was out of the country on active duty in the United States Army. His suggestions and his critical reading of the manuscript have been a valuable contribution to this text. It is the author's wish and ours to express a real appreciation to his wife, Margaret Dent Daudon, for her suggestions, and her help in preparing the compositions, and for the reading of the proofs.

THE PUBLISHERS

# CONTENTS

<b>PREFACE</b>	v
<b>LESSON ONE</b>	1
1. Use of the Present Indicative 2. Use of <i>qui</i> and <i>que</i> 3. One Use of the Subjunctive 4. The Imperative 5. The Genitive Case	
<b>LESSON TWO</b>	11
1. The Interrogative Construction 2. The Interrogative Adjectives 3. The Interrogative Pronouns 4. <i>Quel, que, comme</i> in Exclamatory Phrases 5. Inverted Constructions	
<b>LESSON THREE</b>	23
1. The Future Tenses 2. The Article 3. The Negative Construction	
<b>LESSON FOUR</b>	36
1. The Partitive <i>de</i> 2. The Partitive Pronoun <i>en</i> 3. Feminine of Adjectives 4. Plural of Nouns and Adjectives 5. The Agreement of Adjectives	
<b>LESSON FIVE</b>	49
1. Position of Adjectives 2. Position of Adverbs 3. Comparative and Superlative 4. Another Use of the Subjunctive	
<b>LESSON SIX</b>	63
1. Verbs with the Reflexive Pronoun 2. The Auxiliary in Compound Tenses 3. The Agreement of the Past Participle 4. The Infinitive after Prepositions	
<b>LESSON SEVEN</b>	76
1. The Past Indefinite and the Imperfect 2. The Past Definite 3. The Perfect Subjunctive	
<b>LESSON EIGHT</b>	91
1. Personal Pronouns 2. Noun Objects 3. The Disjunctive Pronoun	
<b>LESSON NINE</b>	103
1. Additional Uses of the Disjunctive Pronouns 2. The Neuter	

Conjunctive Pronoun <i>le</i> 3. The Pluperfect 4. The Subjunctive after Impersonal Verbs	
<b>LESSON TEN</b>	113
1. Relative Pronouns 2. Conditional Sentences and the Conditional Mood	
<b>LESSON ELEVEN</b>	127
1. Demonstrative Adjectives 2. Demonstrative Pronouns 3. The Neuter Pronoun <i>ce</i> 4. The Subjunctive after Conjunctions	
<b>LESSON TWELVE</b>	141
1. Possessive Adjectives 2. Possessive Pronouns 3. The Subjunctive after Conjunctions	
<b>LESSON THIRTEEN</b>	154
1. Recapitulation of the Subjunctive 2. The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses	
<b>LESSON FOURTEEN</b>	165
1. The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses (continued) 2. The Subjunctive in Independent Clauses 3. Choosing between the Subjunctive and the Indicative 4. Sequence of Tenses of the Subjunctive	
<b>LESSON FIFTEEN</b>	181
1. The Infinitive after Prepositions 2. The Complementary Infinitive 3. The Subject and the Object of the Subordinate Infinitive 4. The Past Infinitive 5. The Infinitive as a Noun 6. Special Verbs	
<b>LESSON SIXTEEN</b>	192
1. The Present and Perfect Participles 2. The Passive Voice 3. The Past Anterior 4. The Causative <i>faire</i>	
<b>SUPPLEMENTARY COMPOSITIONS</b>	207
<b>APPENDIX</b>	222
<b>FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b>	237
<b>ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY</b>	248
<b>INDEX</b>	263

# LESSON ONE

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. USE OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

1. The Present Indicative is used as in English to express in the present: an action or a state, a customary action or state, or a permanent general truth.

**Nous sommes heureux.**

We are happy.

**Ils vont au bord de la mer tous les étés.**

They go to the seashore every summer.

**L'honnêteté est toujours récompensée.**

Honesty is always rewarded.

NOTE. Remember that there is only one form of the Present Indicative in French instead of three forms as in English: **je travaille**, I work, I am working, I do work.

**Il travaille dans une usine.**

He works in a factory.

**Il travaille en ce moment.**

He is working now.

**Il travaille bien.**

He works well.

**Oui, il travaille très bien.**

Yes, he does work very well.

2. The Present Indicative is used in the **si** clause of a conditional sentence in French when the result clause is in the Future or the Imperative. It is used to translate into French:

a. The Present Indicative in the English *if* clause:

**Je viendrai si j'ai le temps.**

I shall come *if I have* time.

**Si vous avez le temps, venez me voir.**

*If you have* the time, come to see me.

b. The Future in an English *if* clause.

**Je viendrai de bonne heure si cela vous convient.** I shall come early *if it will suit you.*

c. The Present of the Conditional in an English *if* clause.

**S'il vient, je lui demanderai de vous attendre.** *If he should come, I shall ask him to wait for you.*

**S'il vient, demandez-lui de m'attendre.** *If he should come, ask him to wait for me.*

3. The Present is used, NOT the Past, with **depuis** and synonymous expressions (*cf. Vocabulary Distinctions*) meaning *for* or *since*, to denote an action which began in the past and continues in the present.

**J'habite ici depuis quinze ans.** *I have been living here for fifteen years.*

**Je suis ici depuis plusieurs heures.** *I have been here for several hours.*

**Il lit depuis trois heures.** *He has been reading since three o'clock.*

## II. USE OF QUI AND QUE

1. The relative pronoun **qui** (*who, which*) refers to PERSONS or THINGS and is used as subject of the verb of the relative clause.

**L'homme qui vient a l'air fatigué.** The man *who* is coming looks tired.

**L'auto qui est devant la porte n'est pas à nous.** The car *which* is in front of the door is not ours.

2. The relative pronoun **que** (*whom, which*) refers to PERSONS or THINGS and is used as direct object of the verb of the relative clause (*See NOTE after Section 3 on the next page*).

**Connaissiez-vous l'étudiant que votre sœur a amené?** Did you know the student *whom* your sister brought?

**Le chapeau qu'elle a acheté est ravissant.** The hat *which* she bought is delightful.

3. **Que** is also a conjunction introducing a subordinate clause. It corresponds to the English *that* expressed or understood.

Il dit **que** vous avez raison. He says (*that*) you are right.

NOTE. Do not forget that **que** CANNOT be omitted in French; beware of such sentences as:

The man <sup>^</sup> we saw	L'homme <b>que</b> nous avons vu
The book <sup>^</sup> I bought	Le livre <b>que</b> j'ai acheté
I know <sup>^</sup> he is here.	Je sais <b>qu'</b> il est ici.

In these expressions, *whom*, *which*, or *that* are omitted in English, but must be expressed in French.

### III. ONE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

After verbs of doubting, wishing, desiring, willing, asking, etc., the Subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause. The Present Subjunctive translates the English present or future indicative, a complementary infinitive, or a subjunctive. The time expressed by the Subjunctive is present or future with relation to the main verb.

Je doute <b>qu'il vienne</b> .	I doubt <i>that he will come</i> .
Il désire <b>que nous chantions</b> .	He wishes <i>us to sing</i> (he wishes <i>that we sing</i> ).
Je veux <b>que vous travailliez</b> .	I want <i>you to work</i> .
Nous exigeons <b>qu'ils partent</b> .*	We demand <i>that they leave</i> .

\* **Exiger** is the strongest expression of the will in French.

NOTE 1. With **vouloir**, **désirer**, **souhaiter**, **exiger** (also with verbs of liking or preference), a complementary infinitive cannot be used in French, although used in English, when the subject of the subordinate verb is different from that of the main verb. A subordinate clause introduced by **que** must be used.

Je veux travailler.	I want to work.
J'aime mieux rester ici.	I prefer to stay here.
<i>but</i>	
Je veux <b>que vous travailliez</b> .	I want you to work.
J'aime mieux <b>que vous restiez</b> ici.	I prefer you to stay here.



NOTE 2. **Désirer** is used to translate *to wish* in the sense of desiring, liking. **Souhaiter** is used only when *to wish* means to make wishes, to anticipate hopefully.

**Je souhaite que vous réussissiez.** I wish that you may succeed.

#### IV. THE IMPERATIVE

The Imperative is used only in the second person singular and plural, and the first person plural. No pronoun subject is used with the imperative.

**Écris ta lettre.**

Write your (thy) letter.

**Écrivez cette phrase.**

Write that sentence.

**Allons au cinéma.**

Let us go to the movies.

**Travaillons.**

Let us work.

NOTE. The English word *let* used to form the imperative is not translated in French. But when *let* is used to express a request and means *allow to*, it is translated by the imperative of **laisser**:

**Maman, laissez-nous aller au cinéma ce soir.**

Mother, let us (allow us to) go to the movies tonight.

**Laissez-nous travailler en paix.**

Let us (allow us to) work in peace.

**Laissez-moi tranquille.**

Leave me alone.

#### V. THE GENITIVE CASE: JOHN'S FATHER

The English construction, *John's father*, *my friend's house*, is translated in French: **le père de Jean**, the father of John; **la maison de mon ami**, the house of my friend.

**Le bureau du directeur**

The manager's desk (or office)

**Le magasin de la modiste**

The milliner's shop

**Les livres des étudiants**

The students' books

**L'auto de Paul**

Paul's car

## VERB REVIEW

1. Which are the five principal parts of the verb? What forms of the verb are derived from each principal part? (*Study* Appendix I, Section III.)
2. Carefully review how to form the Present Indicative, the Present Subjunctive, the Imperative.
3. Conjugate: **être, avoir, aller** (*refer to Table 2 on page 229*).

## EXERCISE A

1. (I am going <sup>2</sup>) à la campagne. 2. (He speaks) français couramment. 3. Oui, en effet (he does speak) très bien. 4. Si vous lui (give) votre plume, il la perdra. 5. Il est tard, (let us begin) la classe. 6. Si vous (sell) votre maison, je l'achèterai. 7. Je n'ai pas trouvé (Paul's hat). 8. Je doute qu' (he will go <sup>2</sup>) en France. 9. (She has been) malade depuis huit jours. 10. Nous souhaitons que vous (buy) cette montre. 11. (We are reading <sup>1</sup>) un livre intéressant. 12. J'exige qu'ils (learn <sup>2</sup>) leurs leçons. 13. (They have been working) depuis deux heures de l'après-midi. 14. Je veux que vous me (give) la main pour traverser la rue. 15. Jean, (go) au tableau noir et (recite) votre leçon. 16. (If he should telephone), dites-lui que je suis occupé. 17. Ne nous interrompez pas, (let us finish) notre histoire. 18. Il demande que nous lui (send <sup>1</sup>) ses livres. 19. Nous désirons (speak) au directeur. 20. Avez-vous vu (my uncle's garden)? 21. (I have been waiting) depuis plus d'une demi-heure. 22. (If we should find) votre stylo, nous vous l'enverrons.

*Replace the dash by qui or que.* 23. Aimez-vous la maison — votre père a achetée? 24. Nous croyons — Paul viendra nous voir. 25. Est-ce votre voiture — est devant la porte? 26. Comment s'appelle l'élève — est entré? 27. Où avez-vous mis les cadeaux — vous avez reçus? 28. La dame — vous avez rencontrée est ma mère. 29. Voilà un élève — ne sait pas sa leçon. 30. C'est le même élève — j'ai puni hier.

<sup>1</sup> Check the verb form: Irregular Verbs, Table 1 on page 227.

<sup>2</sup> Check the verb form: Irregular Verbs, Table 2 on page 229.

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## HOW LONG? DEPUIS QUAND? COMBIEN DE TEMPS?

If the action, begun in the past, is still going on in the present, use **depuis quand** or **combien de temps y a-t-il que?** (with the present tense).

Depuis quand lisez-vous?	} How long have you been reading?
Combien de temps y a-t-il que vous lisez?	

If the action was completed in the past or will be terminated in the future, use **combien de temps** with a past or with a future tense.

Combien de temps avez-vous vécu en France?	How long did you live in France?
--	----------------------------------

Combien de temps resterez-vous ici?	How long will you stay (are you staying) here?
-------------------------------------	--

## FOR: DEPUIS, PENDANT, POUR, CAR

**Depuis** or **il y a . . . que, voilà . . . que** (with the present tense) is used if the action begun in the past is still going on in the present.

Il demeure ici depuis dix ans.	} He has been living here for ten years.
Il y a (voilà) dix ans qu'il demeure ici.	

**Pendant** is used if the action was completed in the past or will be terminated in the future.

Nous avons joué au tennis pendant trois heures.	We played tennis for three hours.
---	-----------------------------------

Je resterai avec vous pendant quelques jours.	I shall stay with you for a few days.
---	---------------------------------------

**NOTE.** **Pendant** is usually omitted when the period of time immediately follows the verb.

J'ai couru une heure sans m'arrêter.	I ran for an hour without stopping.
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

When *for* implies not the duration of the action but an intended time limit, use **pour** (usually after verbs of motion).

**Nous sommes venus pour une semaine.** We came for a week.

**Ils iront à New-York pour quelques jours.** They will go to New York for a few days.

*Pour* is used also when *for* + *period of time* qualifies a noun.

**Nous avons assez de provisions pour un mois.** We have enough supplies for a month.

*For*, meaning *because*, is translated *car*.

**Ne lui répondez pas, car il ne sait pas ce qu'il dit.** Don't answer him, for he does not know what he is talking about.

#### SINCE: DEPUIS, PUISQUE

*Since*, stating the time the action began, is translated **depuis**. **Il y a (voilà) . . . que** can only mean *for*.

**Je lis depuis ce matin.** I have been reading since this morning.

**Il dort depuis cinq heures.** He has been sleeping since five o'clock.

**Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?** How long (since when) have you been here?

NOTE. **Deux heures, trois heures, quatre heures et demie**, etc. mean in English either *two hours, three hours*, etc. or *two o'clock, three o'clock*, etc. When used with **il y a (voilà) . . . que**, they denote the duration of the action; when preceded by **depuis**, they denote the hour at which an action began. This avoids ambiguity.

**Il y a (voilà) cinq heures qu'il dort.** He has been sleeping for five hours.

**Il dort depuis cinq heures.** He has been sleeping since five o'clock.

**Voilà deux heures et demie que les enfants jouent.** The children have been playing for two and a half hours.

**Les enfants jouent depuis deux heures et demie.** The children have been playing since half past two.

*Since*, meaning *inasmuch as*, is translated **puisque**, not **depuis**.

**Je répéterai puisque vous n'avez pas compris.** I shall repeat since (inasmuch as) you did not understand.

## CROIRE

*To think* used in the sense of *to believe* is preferably translated by *croire*.

Je crois qu'il est très riche.  
Nous croyons qu'il viendra.

I think he is very rich.  
We think that he will come.

## EXERCISE B

1. (How long) avez-vous lu hier soir? 2. Nous nous sommes promenés dans le parc (for) une demi-heure. 3. Je suis ici (for) vingt minutes, je n'attendrai pas plus longtemps. 4. (How long) demeurez-vous dans cette ville? 5. (Since) le commencement de l'année. 6. (How long) travaillez-vous à ce livre? 7. J'y travaille (for) plusieurs mois. 8. (Since) vous savez votre leçon, récitez-la. 9. Il pleut (since) hier matin. 10. Savez-vous (how long) il restera à Paris? 11. Nous avons du travail (for) plus d'une semaine. 12. Ils voyagent (for) deux ans. 13. Ils seront absents (for) encore deux ou trois mois. 14. Il doit être malade, (for) il n'est pas venu nous voir. 15. Elle s'est reposée (for) un quart d'heure. 16. Je (think) que vous avez raison. 17. (For) combien de temps irez-vous à New-York? 18. Nous comptons y aller (for) une quinzaine de jours. 19. (Since) vous êtes venu, aidez-moi à finir mes devoirs. 20. (How long) sont-ils restés à Londres? 21. N'insistez pas, (for) vous avez tort. 22. (How long) jouent-ils dans le jardin? (Since two o'clock.) 23. Nous avons attendu vos amis (for) toute la matinée. 24. Ils veulent louer leur maison (for) trois ans. 25. N'êtes-vous pas fatigué? (You have been working for six hours.)

## TRANSLATION

## LES OBERLÉ

A la suite de la guerre entre la France et l'Allemagne en 1870, l'Alsace, qui depuis plus de deux siècles appartenait à la France, fut annexée par l'Allemagne.

Les épisodes que nous allons lire se passent plusieurs années après l'annexion. Imaginons, pendant un instant, que nous sommes en Alsace et examinons quelle est la situation au moment où commence notre récit.

Malgré les efforts des Allemands pour germaniser la province conquise, les Alsaciens, qui pour la plupart sont restés français de cœur, continuent à opposer aux vainqueurs toute la résistance dont ils sont capables. Certains, cependant, poussés par la nécessité ou par l'ambition, se sont ralliés à leurs conquérants, plus ou moins sincèrement, plus ou moins ouvertement. Les industriels surtout, qui ne peuvent plus faire d'affaires avec la France, sont obligés de se tourner vers l'Allemagne où ils trouvent les débouchés nécessaires à leurs produits. C'est le cas de Monsieur Joseph Oberlé, riche propriétaire d'une scierie dans la petite ville d'Alsheim.

Après avoir d'abord subi la loi du vainqueur avec répugnance, M. Oberlé a fini par se rallier complètement au gouvernement allemand. Mais l'administration doute de sa sincérité, exige des preuves; et pour prouver sa bonne foi, M. Oberlé a envoyé ses deux enfants, Jean et Lucienne, faire leurs études en Allemagne, malgré sa femme qui est toujours ardemment française, et malgré son père, M. Philippe Oberlé, qui n'a jamais consenti à aucun compromis avec « l'ennemi », comme il dit.

Notre histoire commence avec le retour de Jean à la maison paternelle. Il vient de terminer ses études de droit dans une université allemande; mais son cœur n'a pas changé, il est resté fidèle à la France et à la vieille Alsace.

Dans la prochaine leçon nous allons assister à la première entrevue entre M. Oberlé et son fils, depuis le retour de celui-ci.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY \*

<b>à la suite de</b> , following	<b>finir par</b> (+ infinitive), finally . . .
<b>se passer</b> , to take place	<b>faire des études</b> , to study ( <i>in the sense</i> pursue one's studies)
<b>pour la plupart</b> , for the most part	<b>venir de</b> , to have just
<b>de cœur</b> , at heart	<b>études de droit</b> , law courses
<b>se rallier</b> (à), to become reconciled (to); collaborate (with)	<b>celui-ci, celui-là</b> , the latter, the former
<b>faire des affaires</b> , to transact business	<b>avoir raison (tort)</b> , to be right (wrong)
<b>des débouchés</b> , outlets	<b>au moment où</b> , at the time when
<b>d'abord</b> , at first	

\* Words and expressions under this heading are not given in the general vocabularies, unless they are used in the exercises of subsequent lessons.

## EXERCISE C

Helps to translation are indicated throughout as follows:

Bracketed words are to be omitted: I want [to] see. Je veux voir.

Words in italics in parentheses are understood or omitted in English, but must be translated into French for the sentence to be grammatically completed. In the following example, *un* is an adjective in French: I saw one (*of them*). J'**en** ai vu *un*.

Words in bold face type in parentheses translate the preceding word, or must be added to the French text. He tries to (**de**) do it. Il essaye **de** le faire. He asks (**à**) John. Il demande **à** Jean.

1. This story takes place in Alsace, which now belongs <sup>2</sup> to Germany. 2. The Alsatians are still faithful to France. 3. The Oberlés are living in the little town of Alsheim. 4. Mr. Oberlé is obliged to (**de**) transact business with the Germans. 5. But they require him to prove his good faith. 6. John has just arrived and is waiting [for] his father. 7. He loves France in spite of his stay (**le séjour**) in Germany. 8. He wants us to be present at the interview. 9. We think that John's sister is in Germany. 10. You are wrong; she is living with her family. 11. She has been living in (**à**) Alsheim for two years. (*Translate in two ways*) 12. Ask (**à**) your friend how long he will stay here. 13. We shall be <sup>2</sup> very happy if you come with your mother. 14. The student whom you wish [to] see is absent today. 15. Let's give a present to Mary's father. 16. The boy who is speaking to Paul is French. 17. I want you to write <sup>1</sup> to your parents today. 18. Give us the books which are on your father's desk. 19. They will stay in France for two or three years. 20. He is tired; he has been working since nine o'clock. 21. Since you have my books, I cannot <sup>2</sup> do my homework (**devoirs, pl.**). 22. If you should go to the movies, I shall go <sup>2</sup> with you. 23. Lend (**à**) Mary your fountain pen, she wishes [to] write a letter. 24. How long have you been playing in the garden? 25. He wants you to telephone to his wife. 26. We have been playing for two hours. 27. He has just found a book which belongs <sup>2</sup> to Paul. 28. How long have you been waiting? Since two o'clock. 29. Show us the letter you are writing.<sup>1</sup> 30. Here is the student whom you have invited.

<sup>2</sup> Refer to Table 2 on page 229. Hereafter, unless otherwise indicated, the small figures <sup>1</sup> and <sup>2</sup> in the exercises always refer to Tables 1 and 2 on pages 227-232.

# LESSON TWO

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE INTERROGATIVE CONSTRUCTION

1. When the subject of a verb is a personal pronoun, the Interrogative is formed by placing the pronoun after the verb, connecting the two words with a hyphen.

**Êtes-vous heureux?**

Are you happy?

**Voit-il ses amis?**

Does he see his friends?

**Partons-nous bientôt?**

Are we leaving soon?

NOTE 1. When the third person singular ends in a vowel, **-t-** is inserted between the verb and the pronoun:

**Désire-t-il lui parler?**

Does he wish to speak to her  
(him)?

**Ira-t-elle en France?**

Will she go to France?

NOTE 2. Verbs ending in **-e** in the first person singular of the Present Indicative may change **e** to **é**: **resté-je ici**. But this form is avoided, cf. section 2.

a. When the subject of the verb is a noun (or an indefinite, demonstrative, or possessive pronoun), the double-subject construction must be used, that is: **NOUN (OR PRONOUN) + VERB + THIRD PERSON PRONOUN** of the same gender and number as the subject.

**Jean sait-il la nouvelle?**

Does *John* know the news?

**Cette leçon est-elle difficile?**

Is *this lesson* difficult?

**Quelqu'un est-il venu?**

Has *someone* come?

**Cela est-il intéressant?**

Is *that* interesting?

**La vôtre est-elle facile?**

Is *yours* easy?



b. In compound tenses the pronoun is placed after the auxiliary verb:

<b>Avez-vous trouvé votre chapeau?</b>	Have you found your hat?
<b>Marie a-t-elle compris?</b>	Has Mary understood?

2. Any statement may be turned into a question by beginning the sentence with **est-ce que**. This construction is used most frequently with the first person singular of the Present. However **ai-je**, **suis-je**, **dois-je** (*must I*), **puis-je** (*may I*), are commonly used:

<b>Est-ce que je travaille bien?</b>	Do I work well?
<b>Est-ce que vous l'avez acheté?</b>	Did you buy it?
<b>Ai-je raison?</b>	Am I right?
<b>Suis-je en retard?</b>	Am I late?
<b>Puis-je vous aider?</b>	May I help you?

NOTE 1. **Est-ce que** is invariable regardless of the form of the verb used in the statement.

NOTE 2. The construction with **est-ce que**, not being always euphonious, should be used sparingly, except with the first person singular as explained above.

3. With the interrogative pronoun **que** (*what?*) the inverted form **VERB + NOUN** must be used in simple tenses instead of the double-subject construction:

<b>Que cherche Marie?</b>	What is Mary looking for?
<b>Que dira votre mère?</b>	What will your mother say?

4. With the interrogative adverbs **où** (*where*), **comment** (*how*), **combien** (*how much*), and **quand** (*when*) the inverted form **VERB + NOUN** is permitted in simple tenses, but only if the verb has no object or modifier.

<b>Combien coûte ce fauteuil?</b>	} How much does that armchair cost?
or	
<b>Combien ce fauteuil coûte-t-il?</b>	} Where are your parents going?
<b>Où vont vos parents?</b>	

*but*

Combien Mme Durand paie-t-elle ses robes?	How much does Mme Durand pay for her dresses?
Comment Jean travaille-t-il si vite?	How does John work so fast?

5. **N'est-ce pas?** used after a statement asks for a confirmation. It renders the English *don't you? do you? will they? didn't they?* etc.

**N'est-ce pas?** is invariable, regardless of the form of the verb used in the statement.

<b>Vous comprenez, n'est-ce pas?</b>	You understand, don't you? Yes.
<b>Oui.</b>	
<b>Vous ne répétez pas cela, n'est-ce pas? Non.</b>	You will not repeat that, will you? No.
<b>Elle a vu mon père, n'est-ce pas?</b>	She saw my father, didn't she?

## II. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES

quel	( <i>masc. sing.</i> )	what, which
quelle	( <i>fem. sing.</i> )	
quels	( <i>masc. plur.</i> )	
quelles	( <i>fem. plur.</i> )	

The interrogative adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify.

Quel hôtel avez-vous choisi?	What hotel have you chosen?
Quelles fleurs préférez-vous?	What flowers do you prefer?
Quelle robe portera-t-elle?	Which dress will she wear?

## III. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

### 1. Variable pronouns

lequel	} which, which one	lesquels	} which, which ones
laquelle		lesquelles	

*laquelle*  
De and à contract with le and les: *de la quelle*  
duquel, desquels, desquelles,  
auquel, auxquels, auxquelles.

The interrogative variable pronouns agree in gender with the noun or pronoun to which they refer. Their number depends on whether the singular *which one* or the plural *which ones* is meant.

<b>Voici deux plumes. Laquelle voulez-vous?</b>	Here are two pens. Which one do you want?
<b>Lesquels de ces étudiants sont des nouveaux?</b>	Which (ones) of those students are freshmen?
<b>Desquels parlez-vous?</b>	Of which (ones) are you speaking?
<b>Laquelle de ces pommes voulez-vous?</b>	Which (one) of these apples would you like?
<b>Auquel de vos oncles écrivez-vous?</b>	To which (one) of your uncles are you writing?

NOTE. Be careful to distinguish between *which* (adjective) and *which* (pronoun) as illustrated in the sections just preceding.

## 2. Invariable pronouns *who*, *whom*, *what*:

<i>Short Form</i>	<i>Long Form</i>	<i>Use</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<b>qui</b>	<b>qui est-ce qui</b>	subject	<i>who</i>
<b>qui</b>	<b>qui est-ce que</b>	direct or indirect object of a verb	<i>whom</i>
(none)	<b>qu'est-ce qui</b>	subject	<i>what</i>
<b>que</b>	<b>qu'est-ce que</b>	object of verb	<i>what</i>
<b>quoi</b>	(none)	object of a preposition also used alone	<i>what</i> <i>what?</i>

The use of the short or long form follows no definite rule, except in the following cases:

**Qui** (*who*) is used with *être* followed by a noun or pronoun complement: **Qui est cet homme?** or **Qui est-il?** or **Qui est-ce?**

**Qu'est-ce que** (*what* = object) is preferred to **que** in compound tenses when the subject of the verb is a noun: **Qu'est-ce que le garçon a dit?**

Remember that **qu'est-ce qui** (*what* = subject) has no short form

Qui (qui est-ce qui) chante?	Who is singing?
Qui voulez-vous voir?	
or	Whom do you want to see?
Qui est-ce que vous voulez voir? *	
Que dites-vous?	
or	What are you saying?
Qu'est-ce que vous dites? *	
Qu'est-ce que Jean a dit? *	What did John say?
Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?	What makes that noise?
A qui et à quoi pensez-vous?	Of whom and of what are you thinking?
Qui est la dame que vous avez saluée?	Who is the lady whom you greeted?

\* Note that with **qui est-ce que** and **qu'est-ce qui** the verb and its subject are not inverted.

NOTE. Be careful to distinguish between **qui** and **que** as relative pronouns and **qui** and **que** as interrogative pronouns.

	Relative	Interrogative
qui	for persons or things	for persons only
que	for persons or things	for things only

3. *What is it?* is translated **qu'est-ce que c'est?** *What is* asking for a definition or an explanation is translated **qu'est-ce que c'est que . . .**

Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un phonographe?	What is a phonograph?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que ce bâtiment?	What is this building?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça (cela)?	What is that?

4. *Whose* inquiring for ownership is translated **à qui + être**. The meaning of **à qui est** is the equivalent of **à qui appartient**, *to whom belongs*. Observe carefully the construction below:

A qui est ce chapeau?	Whose hat is this? (To whom belongs this hat?)
A qui est le livre que vous lisez?	Whose book are you reading? (To whom belongs the book which you are reading?)

## IV. QUEL, QUE, COMME IN EXCLAMATORY PHRASES

1. *What a* or *what* is translated *quel*; the indefinite article is not translated.

Quel plaisir d'être ici !	What a pleasure to be here !
Quelles belles fleurs !	What beautiful flowers !
Quelle belle femme !	What a beautiful woman !

2. With *que* or *comme*, meaning *how*, the qualifying adjective follows the verb.

Que ces fleurs sont jolies !	How pretty those flowers are !
Comme il est intelligent !	How intelligent he is !

## V. INVERTED CONSTRUCTIONS

An inverted construction (VERB + SUBJECT) is used:

1. When declarative verbs are used parenthetically in the course of a direct quotation.

— Je ne sais pas, dit Louise, si j'assisterai au mariage.	“I do not know,” said Louise, “whether I shall be present at the marriage.”
— J'espère que vous viendrez, a-t-il répondu.	“I hope you will come,” he answered.

2. After *peut-être*, *sans doute*, *à peine*, *aussi* (meaning *and so*, *therefore*) when introducing a statement.

Peut-être a-t-il fini.	Perhaps he has finished.
Sans doute ne viendra-t-il pas.	Probably he will not come.
Aussi était-il heureux.	And so he was happy.

*Sans doute* expresses uncertainty. To express certainty *sans aucun doute* must be used, and there is no inversion.

## VERB REVIEW

Carefully review the three regular conjugations. (Appendix I, Section IV)

What is one characteristic of the second (or *-ir*) conjugation?

In what forms do all verbs, except five, use the same flexional endings? (Appendix I, Section II)

Conjugate: **dormir**, **ouvrir** (Table 1); **boire** (Table 2). What forms of **boire** are not derived from the principal parts?

## EXERCISE A

*Translate the words in parentheses.* 1. Dans (what) rue demeurez-vous? 2. Avec (whom) êtes-vous allé à Moscou? 3. (Who) m'a téléphoné pendant mon absence? 4. (Which) églises ont-ils visitées à Paris? 5. (Which) de ces deux dames avez-vous invitée? 6. (To which) étudiant donnerons-nous cette bourse? 7. (To which one) voulez-vous que nous la donnions? 8. (What) désire votre sœur? 9. (Whom) vous avez rencontré au théâtre? 10. (What) cause le tonnerre? 11. (What) Marie a rapporté du marché? 12. (Whom) enverrons-nous faire cette commission? 13. (What a) surprise! (How) je suis heureux! 14. Avec (what) avez-vous fait cette tache? 15. Ils ont vendu leur cheval, (haven't they)? 16. Avez-vous pris mes cravates? (Of which ones) parlez-vous? 17. Quand (does Paul arrive) d'habitude? 18. Pourquoi (is your brother speaking) si vite? 19. Peut-être (he is) l'homme que je cherchais. 20. Pour (whom) avez-vous dit cela?

*Turn the following statements into questions.* 21. Nous avons parlé à notre professeur. 22. Votre mère arrivera ce soir. 23. Paul a fini ses leçons. 24. Je parle trop vite. 25. Vous viendrez de bonne heure. 26. Nous sommes allés chez le médecin. 27. Vous avez trouvé mon stylo. 28. Il cherche son chapeau. 29. Ils ont une belle maison. 30. Je suis content.

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

**LATE: TARD, EN RETARD**

**Tard** is used either with an impersonal or a personal verb and means at a late, unspecified time. **En retard** can be used only with a personal verb and means late for a specified time, that is, not on time.

Il est tard.	It is late.
Elle est arrivée tard dans l'après-midi.	She arrived late in the afternoon.
Vous vous êtes couché tard.	You went to bed late.
Nous sommes en retard, dépêchons-nous.	We are late; let us hurry.
Il est arrivé à l'école en retard.	He arrived at school late.

**EARLY: TÔT (DE BONNE HEURE), EN AVANCE**

The same distinction applies as for **tard** and **en retard**.

Il est tôt, ne partez pas.	It is early; do not go.
Il se lève tôt en été.	He gets up early in summer.
Nous viendrons de bonne heure.	We shall come early.
Je suis arrivé en avance à mon rendez-vous.	I arrived early ( <i>i.e.</i> ahead of time) for my appointment.
Elle préfère être en avance qu'en retard.	She prefers to be early than late.

NOTE. **Tôt** is used rather than **de bonne heure** with **être** or when *early* is modified by an adverb.

Il est tôt.	It is early.
Vous vous êtes levé trop tôt.	You got up too early.
Venez plus tôt.	Come earlier.

**TIME: TEMPS, HEURE, FOIS**

**Temps** means time in the sense of duration; with impersonal **être** it means the proper time to do something. **Heure** means time by the clock. **Une fois** means *once*; **fois** preceded by a numeral adjective indicates recurrence of an act.

Le temps passe vite.	Time passes quickly.
Il est temps d'aller à la campagne.	It is time to go to the country.
Il est l'heure du dîner.	It is dinner time.
Nous avons essayé une fois (deux fois, trois fois, plusieurs fois).	We tried once (twice, three times, several times).

**ON TIME: À L'HEURE; IN TIME: À TEMPS**

Le train est parti à l'heure.	The train left on time.
Il n'est pas arrivé à temps pour nous aider.	He did not arrive in time to help us.

**IN WITH PERIODS OF TIME: EN, DANS**

**En** is used when one wishes to indicate the time required to perform the action. **Dans** is used when one wishes to indicate the time that elapses before the beginning of the action.

Elle lavera la vaisselle en une demi-heure.	She will wash the dishes in half an hour ( <i>time it will take</i> ).
Elle lavera la vaisselle dans une demi-heure.	She will wash the dishes ( <i>begin washing</i> ) in half an hour.

**LAST NIGHT: LA NUIT DERNIÈRE, HIER SOIR; TONIGHT, THIS EVENING: CE SOIR; TONIGHT, DURING THE NIGHT: CETTE NUIT**

**La nuit dernière** carries the meaning nighttime, or the time when people are reasonably expected to be in bed. **Hier soir** means the part of the night before retiring.

With the verb in a past tense **cette nuit** is sometimes used instead of **la nuit dernière**. It is safer, however, to use the latter.

Nous avons joué au bridge hier soir.	We played bridge last night.
J'ai mal dormi la nuit dernière (cette nuit).	I slept badly last night.
Je dormirai bien cette nuit.	I shall sleep well tonight.
Voulez-vous aller au cinéma ce soir?	Would you like to go to the movies tonight?
Ils arriveront cette nuit.	They will arrive during the night.



**SPEND: PASSER, DÉPENSER**

Spend time or periods of time: **passer**. Spend money, or spend with the sense of using or using up: **dépenser**.

J'ai passé trois ans à Paris.

I spent three years in Paris.

Ils ont dépensé leur salaire en deux jours.

They spent their salary in two days.

Vous dépensez trop d'énergie.

You spend too much energy.

**EXERCISE B**

1. J'espère que vous partirez (on time). 2. Nous avons fait une promenade (last night) après dîner. 3. Vous n'avez pas lu ce roman (in) deux heures! 4. Il (spends) ses vacances au bord de la mer. 5. Le régiment est parti (last night) vers trois heures. 6. Combien de (times) doit-on vous répéter la même chose? 7. Je commencerai à travailler (in) vingt minutes. 8. Il est (time) que vous soyez raisonnable. 9. Vous êtes (late), la classe est commencée. 10. Il n'a pas fini sa lettre (in time) pour le courrier. 11. Marie (spends) tout ce qu'elle gagne. 12. Nous sommes (early), personne n'est arrivé. 13. Il est (late), et vous n'avez pas encore appris vos leçons. 14. A quelle (time) voulez-vous que nous venions? 15. Je suis allé faire une visite à Marie (last night). 16. Nous avons le (time) de faire une promenade. 17. Veut-elle aller au cinéma (tonight)? 18. La dernière (time) que je l'ai vu il était malade. 19. Il est (early), nous pouvons faire une partie de tennis. 20. Si vous buvez du café, vous ne dormirez pas (tonight). 21. Vous ne vous êtes pas couché assez (early). 22. Je vous ai téléphoné plusieurs (times). 23. Ne vous dépêchez pas, vous avez le (time). 24. Je ne veux pas arriver (late), j'aime mieux être (early). 25. Il a fait de l'orage (last night). (*Translate in two ways.*)

**TRANSLATION****JEAN OBERLÉ**

A peine Jean fut-il entré, que M. Oberlé demanda:

— Qui as-tu vu ce matin?

— Personne.

— As-tu causé avec ta mère depuis ton retour?

— Non.

— Avec Lucienne?

— Non plus, je viens de me lever.

— Très bien. Il vaut mieux que nous fassions nos plans, sans que personne s'en mêle. J'ai permis ton retour ici pour que nous puissions préparer ton avenir. D'abord, ton service militaire au mois d'Octobre, c'est-à-dire dans six mois, c'est bien ton intention, n'est-ce pas?

— Oui, mon père, je vous obéirai.

— Le premier point est donc réglé. Et après? Tu te rends compte que tes chances de réussir dans l'administration allemande ont augmenté parce que ma situation s'est considérablement améliorée en Alsace. Entreras-tu dans la magistrature?

Jean pâlit un peu et répondit:

— Non. Rien d'officiel.

— Alors, tes études de droit?

— Inutiles.

— Et pourquoi?

— Parce que, répondit le jeune homme, je n'ai pas l'esprit allemand.

M. Oberlé ne s'attendait pas à cette réponse. Une irritation violente s'était emparée de lui. Mais il comprenait qu'il ne devait pas la laisser voir. Après un moment de silence, il demanda:

— Alors, quelle carrière as-tu choisie?

— La vôtre, avec votre consentement. Ne vous méprenez pas sur ce que je viens de vous dire. J'ai vécu dix ans dans un milieu exclusivement allemand. Voulez-vous savoir le résultat de mon expérience? Eh bien! je crois que je n'ai pas le caractère assez souple pour devenir un fonctionnaire allemand. Je suis sûr que je ne comprendrais pas toujours, et que je désobéirais quelquefois. Par contre, votre industrie me plaît. J'ai profité de mes voyages pour étudier l'industrie forestière partout où j'ai pu. Et je désire vivre à Alsheim. Me le permettez-vous?

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**non plus** (*cf. text*), nor (. . .) either  
**il vaut mieux**, it is better  
**d'abord**, first, first of all  
**se mêler de**, to interfere with  
**régler**, to settle  
**se rendre compte de**, to realize  
**s'améliorer**, to improve  
**s'attendre à**, to expect  
**s'emparer de**, to seize  
**se méprendre**, to misinterpret  
**le milieu**, the environment

**Eh bien!** Well! (*not oh, well*)  
**par contre**, on the other hand  
**profiter de**, to take advantage of  
**l'industrie forestière**, timber business  
**assister à**, to be present at  
**faire une promenade (un voyage)**, take  
 a walk (a trip)  
**faire une partie de**, to have or play a  
 game of  
**se lever**, to get up, rise

## EXERCISE C

1. Whom has John seen this morning? 2. He will see<sup>2</sup> his father in an hour. 3. Mme Oberlé will not arrive in time to be present at the interview. 4. What is Lucienne doing<sup>2</sup> during this time? 5. In what countries has John traveled? 6. Mr. Oberlé wants<sup>2</sup> John to choose between two careers. 7. Which of the two does John prefer? 8. We hope he will take advantage of the situation. 9. Of what situation are you speaking? 10. What does Mr. Oberlé say?<sup>2</sup> Does he show his anger? 11. Lucienne has spent several years in Germany. 12. She will speak to her brother tonight before supper. 13. John will stay in (à) Alsheim, will he not? 14. How happy Mme Oberlé is to see her son! 15. To which of your friends have you written?<sup>1</sup> 16. Can<sup>2</sup> you learn your lessons in two hours? 17. What a good surprise! He is on time today. 18. It is late; I doubt that he will come.<sup>2</sup> 19. Whose coat did we find in the garden? 20. Of what has he been speaking for twenty minutes? 21. The student whom you have invited will arrive in time for dinner. 22. At what time do you eat your breakfast? Very early? 23. Who has taken<sup>1</sup> the watch which was on my desk? 24. Do you understand?<sup>2</sup> Do I speak too fast? 25. Paul has just come in. He is late, isn't he? 26. Who is the man who is speaking to Marie? 27. Perhaps he wishes to see your cousin. 28. When will your son finish his lessons? 29. How much has Marie paid [for] her hat? 30. Where is John going?<sup>2</sup> Is he going to New York?

# LESSON THREE

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE FUTURE TENSES

1. The Future is used, as in English, to express a future action or state. It must be used also in subordinate clauses in the Indicative when futurity is implied, after **quand, lorsque, aussitôt que, dès que, tant que, pendant que**, etc. even though the Present is used in English.

**Je le verrai dans trois jours.**

I shall see him in three days.

**Il ne sera plus ici quand vous arriverez.**

He will no longer be here when you arrive.

2. The Present of **aller** followed by an infinitive is used as *I am going to* is, in English, to express a near or comparatively near future.

**Nous allons faire un voyage la semaine prochaine.**

We are going to take a trip next week.

3. The Present, instead of the Future, may be used to denote intention.

**Où allez-vous cet été? (Où comptez-vous aller . . . ?)**

Where are you going this summer? (Where do you intend to go . . . ?)

4. The Future Perfect (*cf.* Appendix I, Section I) expresses an action which will have been entirely completed at a given future time or completed before another future action takes place.

<b>Ils auront fini leurs devoirs à huit heures.</b>	They will have finished their homework at eight o'clock.
<b>Je partirai dès que j'aurai mangé.</b>	I shall leave as soon as I (shall *) have eaten.

\* Note that *shall* or *will* is often omitted in English, although the tense has a future meaning.

5. The English future is not translated by the Future in French:

a. In a subordinate clause requiring the Subjunctive.

<b>Nous doutons que vous réussissiez.</b>	We doubt that you will succeed.
---	---------------------------------

b. In the *si* clause of a conditional sentence. (*See page 2.*)

WARNING. Distinguish between the auxiliary *will* used to form the Future, and the verb *will* expressing willingness, which is translated by *vouloir*. Also, *will you have*, meaning *do you wish*, is translated by *voulez-vous* or *désirez-vous*.

<b>Ils vous verront demain.</b>	They will see you tomorrow. ( <i>Future</i> )
<b>Cette malle est lourde, voulez-vous m'aider?</b>	This trunk is heavy. Will you (are you willing to) help me?
<b>Voulez-vous une tasse de thé?</b>	Will you have (do you wish) a cup of tea?

## II. THE ARTICLE

1. *The definite article* **le, la, l', les**. (**Le** and **les** with the preposition **de** contract into **du** and **des**; with the preposition **à**, into **au** and **aux**).

a. The definite article translates English *the* and is repeated before each noun of a series; the prepositions **à** or **de**, or any other prepositions are also repeated.

<b>Passez-lui le sucre.</b>	Pass him the sugar.
<b>Voici la robe et le chapeau qu'elle a choisis.</b>	Here is the dress and hat she has chosen.
<b>Nous parlons au père et à la mère de Jean.</b>	We are speaking to John's father and mother.

b. The definite article is also used in French, although not in English:

(1) Before nouns denoting whole objects, before a whole group or a whole class, and before abstract nouns.

<b>Le dîner est prêt.</b>	Dinner is ready.
<b>Les tigres sont féroces.</b>	Tigers are ferocious.
<b>La charité est une vertu.</b>	Charity is a virtue.

(2) Before titles even when followed by the name of a person and before proper nouns preceded by adjectives. But, in direct address the article is omitted. It is also omitted before **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle** followed by a proper name.

<b>Le capitaine Brieux est parti.</b>	Captain Brieux has left.
<b>La petite Marie est jolie.</b>	Little Mary is pretty.
<b>J'ai vu Madame Brun.</b>	I saw Mrs. Brown.
<b>Nous avons parlé à Monsieur G.</b>	We spoke to Mr. G.

*but*

<b>Comment allez-vous, Capitaine B.?</b>	How do you do, Captain B.?
<b>Bonjour, Docteur.</b>	Good morning, Doctor.

NOTE. In formal or respectful address **monsieur, madame, mademoiselle** are used before the title, and the article is retained: **monsieur le général, madame la comtesse.**

(3) Before the majority of geographical names, but not before cities, unless the name of the city is qualified by an adjective or adjective phrase.

**La France, le Mississipi, le Vermont**  
**Paris; but, le vieux Paris; le Paris du XVIII<sup>e</sup> siècle**

(4) Before names of languages except after the verb **parler**:

<b>Il lit l'allemand couramment.</b>	He reads German fluently.
<b>Nous parlons français en classe.</b>	We speak French in class.

2. The indefinite article **un, fem. une**, translates the English *a (an)* and is repeated before each noun of a series.

<b>Un étudiant désire vous voir.</b>	A student wishes to see you.
<b>Il a une plume et un crayon.</b>	He has a pen and pencil.

3. *Omission of the article*

a. The definite or indefinite article is omitted before nouns in apposition used parenthetically; but it is retained when the apposition serves to distinguish, contrast, or single out:

**M. B., député socialiste, n'a pas voté.**

Mr. B., a socialist deputy, did not vote.

**le général B., chef de l'État-major**

General B., the chief of Staff

***Madame Bovary*, roman de Flaubert**

*Madame Bovary*, a novel by Flaubert

*but*

**Voici le Dr. G., un médecin en qui nous avons pleine confiance.**

Here is Dr. G., a physician in whom we have full confidence.

**Nous arrivons à New-York, la ville des gratte-ciel.**

We are arriving in New York, the city of sky-scrapers.

b. Unqualified predicate words of nationality, profession, religion, class, category, etc. are used adjectively in French and therefore the indefinite article is omitted.

**Jeanne est catholique.  
Il est devenu américain.  
Il est soldat.  
quand il était enfant**

Jane is a Catholic.  
He became an American.  
He is a soldier.  
when he was a child

*but*

**Paul est un excellent officier.  
C'est une Américaine que je connais depuis longtemps.**

Paul is an excellent officer.  
She is an American whom I have known for a long time.

c. With few exceptions, no article is used before nouns used adjectively with the preposition **de** or **à** (*cf. below, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS*).

**la leçon d'histoire  
une tasse à thé**

the history lesson  
a teacup

d. The definite article is omitted, with few exceptions, after the preposition **en**, and before the noun in many adjective or adverbial expressions formed with a preposition and a noun.

<b>Nous demeurons en ville.</b>	We live in town.
<b>en souvenir de notre voyage</b>	in memory of our trip
<b>Je l'ai rencontré par hasard.</b>	I met him by chance.

e. The definite, indefinite, or partitive article is omitted after the preposition **sans** before nouns used in a general unrestricted sense, and after **avec** before unqualified abstract nouns:

<b>Elle est sortie sans manteau.</b>	She went out without a coat.
<b>Il travaille avec courage.</b>	He works with courage.

*but*

<b>Il travaille avec un courage remarquable.</b>	He works with a remarkable courage.
<b>avec l'espoir de réussir</b>	with the hope of succeeding
<b>Il est parti avec des amis.</b>	He left with some friends.

### III. THE NEGATIVE CONSTRUCTION

1. The negative is composed of two parts: **ne** and **pas** (or **rien**, **jamais**, **plus**, etc.). With the simple tenses **ne** is placed before the verb and **pas** after it. For the list of negations, see Appendix III, page 233.

<b>Je ne sais pas ce qui se passe.</b>	I do not know what is going on.
<b>Il ne veut rien.</b>	He does not want anything.

2. The interrogative negative is formed by placing the interrogative construction of the verb between **ne** and **pas** (or whatever is the second part of the negative):

<b>Viendra-t-il?</b>	Will he come?
<b>Ne viendra-t-il pas?</b>	Will he not come?
<b>Ne comprenez-vous rien?</b>	Don't you understand anything?

3. In compound tenses the negative is built around the auxiliary verb, and the past participle comes last; by exception **personne**, **aucun**, **nul**, **ni**, and **que** in **ne . . . que** follow the past participle. **Aucun**, **nul**, **ni**, and **que** precede the word they qualify.

<b>Nous n'avons rien acheté.</b>	We have not bought anything.
<b>N'avez vous pas mangé?</b>	Haven't you eaten?



*but*

Je n'ai trouvé personne.

I found no one.

Je n'ai vu aucun de mes amis.

I did not see any of my friends.

Je ne lui ai parlé qu'une seule fois.

I spoke to him only once.

Nous n'avons acheté ni encre ni plumes.

We bought neither ink nor pens.

4. With the infinitive both negative particles precede, except **aucun**, **nul**, **ni**, and **que**. With these the second part follows the infinitive.

Il vous a demandé de ne pas parler.

He asked you not to speak.

Je vous conseille de ne voir personne.

I advise you not to see anybody.

NOTE. With **ne . . . ni . . . ni** the indefinite or the partitive article is omitted, but not the definite.

Il n'a ni chapeau ni chaussures.

He has neither a hat nor shoes.

*but*

Je n'ai ni le temps ni les moyens de vous aider.

I have neither the time nor the means to help you.

5. When there is no verb the negation is used without **ne**:

A-t-il vu quelqu'un? Non, personne.

Has he seen anybody? No, no one.

pas toujours

not always

A-t-il dit quelque chose? Rien.

Did he say anything? Nothing.

6. *Nobody* (*no one*) used as subject of the verb is translated **personne ne**. The same construction is used with *nothing*, **rien ne**; *none*, **aucun ne**, **nul ne**; *not one*, **pas un ne**. (Cf. Appendix III for the use of **aucun** and **nul**).

Vos amis sont-ils venus? Non, aucun n'est venu.

Did your friends come? No, none came.

Nul ne viendra.

No one will come.

Personne ne sait cela.

Nobody knows that.

Rien n'est arrivé.

Nothing happened.

Aucun (nul) de ces chapeaux ne me plaît.

None of these hats pleases me.

NOTE. The negative of

quelqu'un, <i>someone, somebody</i>		personne, <i>no one, nobody</i>
tous, <i>all</i>		aucun, nul, <i>none</i>
quelque chose, <i>something</i>	is	rien, <i>nothing</i>
quelque part, <i>somewhere</i>		nulle part, <i>nowhere</i>
quelquefois, <i>sometimes</i>		jamais, <i>never</i>

In complete sentences remember to use **ne** with these negatives.

### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **croire**, **sentir** (Table 1); **vouloir**, **courir** (Table 2).

What forms of **vouloir** and **courir** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

What are the endings of the Future? Are there any exceptions?

### EXERCISE A

*Change the following sentences to the negative form:* 1. Elle désire cette robe. 2. Avez-vous trouvé mon sac? 3. J'ai apporté quelque chose. 4. Sait-il ses leçons? 5. Quelqu'un a téléphoné. 6. A-t-il apporté son dictionnaire? 7. Vient-il vous voir quelquefois? 8. Tous nos amis sont arrivés. 9. Ils sont toujours en retard. 10. A-t-il demandé quelque chose?

*Fill in the blanks with the proper article where necessary:* 11. — hommes sont tous égaux devant — loi. 12. Comprenez-vous — français, ou dois-je parler — anglais? 13. — professeur Brunetière est — critique célèbre. 14. — lait est — aliment principal des enfants. 15. Paul est — ingénieur, et son frère est — acteur de talent. 16. Monsieur — général, je vous présente M. Dubois, — officier de réserve. 17. — républiques de — Amérique du Sud. 18. — chien est le meilleur ami de — homme. 19. On dit que — chat est — animal perfide. 20. Il nous a expliqué la leçon avec — patience.

*Translate the words in parentheses:* 21. Nous leur avons demandé de (not to come) aujourd'hui. 22. (I shall never forget) ce que vous avez dit. 23. Quand (he learns) cela, il sera furieux. 24. (Are you go-

ing<sup>2</sup> to) vendre votre usine? 25. Non, j'aime mieux (not to sell anything) maintenant. 26. Êtes-vous allé en Chine? Non, (never). 27. Je vous payerai aussitôt que (I have received<sup>2</sup>) un chèque. 28. Nous n'avons (neither a) voiture (nor) chevaux. 29. Ils se reposeront après qu'ils (have eaten). 30. Je leur dirai de (not to invite anybody).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

### ONLY: NE QUE, SEULEMENT, SEUL

**Ne que** can be used only with a verb followed by an object or attribute; **que** is placed before the word it modifies.

Je n'ai vu **que** Paul.

I saw only Paul.

Je n'ai envoyé des cadeaux **qu'à** mes enfants.

I sent presents only to my children.

**Seulement** is used to express the idea of *only*

1. when there is no verb,
2. when *only* refers to the subject,
3. when *only* modifies the verb alone.

**Qui est arrivé? Seulement** Marie.

Who has arrived? Only Mary.

**Quelques-uns seulement** ont réussi.

Only a few succeeded.

**Ne courez pas, marchez seulement.**

Don't run; just (only) walk.

**Je veux seulement** que vous lisiez cet article.

I only want you to read this article.

*Only*, used as an adjective, is translated **seul**.

mes seuls amis  
son seul espoir

my only friends  
his only hope

### HARDLY (SCARCELY): NE . . . GUÈRE. À PEINE

A careful distinction must be observed in the use of these adverbs. **Ne guère** is a synonym of **ne . . . pas beaucoup**. An easy rule of thumb is to try to substitute *not much*, *not many* or *not very* for *hardly* (*scarcely*) in the English sentence.

Use **ne guère** if the sense permits the substitution.

**Je n'ai guère dormi cette nuit.** I scarcely slept (did not sleep much) last night.

**Il n'est guère poli.** He is hardly (not very) polite.

Use **à peine** if the sense does not permit the substitution.

**J'ai à peine commencé.** I have hardly begun.

**A peine** may be used for emphasis instead of **ne . . . guère** to convey the meaning of *almost not at all*:

**Il est à peine poli.** (*emphatic*)

*Hardly (scarcely) any* with a partitive noun **MUST** be translated **ne . . . guère de**.

**Nous n'avons guère d'amis.** We have hardly any friends.

**NO LONGER (NOT ANY LONGER): NE . . . PLUS, NE . . . PAS PLUS LONGTEMPS**

*No longer* meaning *no more (not any more)* and indicating the cessation of an activity or state, is translated **ne . . . plus**.

**Il n'est plus fatigué.** He is no longer (has ceased to be) tired.

*Not any longer* referring to length of time is translated **ne . . . pas plus longtemps** (the comparative of **longtemps**).

**Je ne peux pas rester plus longtemps.** I can't stay any longer.

**IN, TO WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES: À, EN, DANS**

The French do not distinguish between the locational *in* and the directional *to* by separate prepositions as we do in English. Which preposition to use (**à**, **en**, or **dans**) is determined instead by the nature of the geographical name. The preposition is repeated before each name in a series.

1. Use **à**, without the article, before all names of cities.

**à Londres, à Boston, à Moscou;** in (or to) London, Boston, Moscow

2. Use **en**, without the article, before singular feminine names of continents, countries, and important subdivisions such as states or provinces.

**en Asie, en Espagne, en Floride,** in (or to) Asia, Spain, Florida,  
**en Bourgogne** Burgundy

3. Use **à**, with the definite article (contracted in the regular way), before masculine and all plural names of countries.

**au Maroc, aux États-Unis** in (or to) Morocco, the United States

NOTE. The names of all continents are feminine. Most names of countries, states, etc. ending in **e** are feminine. **Le Mexique** is the only exception among the larger countries. (In case of doubt, consult a dictionary.)

4. Use **dans**, with the article, before names qualified by an adjective or adjective phrase.

**dans l'Afrique équatoriale, dans** in (or to) Equatorial Africa,  
**l'Amérique du Sud** South America

#### FROM WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES: **DE, DU, DES**

*From* is translated **de**, without the article, before singular feminine names of countries and cities; **du**, before masculine names; **des** before all plural names.

<b>le bateau d'Amérique</b>	the boat from America
<b>une robe de Paris</b>	a dress from Paris
<b>Ils nous écrivent du Portugal.</b>	They write us from Portugal.
<b>Nous venons des États-Unis.</b>	We come from the United States.

NOTE 1. When the article is an integral part of the name, it is retained in all cases; the preposition **à** or **de** contracts in the regular way with the article: **Le Havre, au Havre, du Havre.**

NOTE 2. The above rules apply safely to the majority of cases, but there are exceptions, especially with islands, for which no general rule can be given.

## DE AND À WITH NOUNS USED ADJECTIVELY

In French a noun CANNOT be used to qualify another noun without using a preposition, generally the preposition **de**.

**une femme de chambre, un médecin de campagne**      a chambermaid, a country doctor

When the qualifier expresses use, fitness, or characteristic, the preposition **à** is generally used.

**une tasse à thé, un bateau à voile**      a teacup, a sailboat

The above distinction is not without exceptions, for example: **salle de bains, table de travail**. These can be learned only from observation and practice.

## EXERCISE B

*Translate the words in parentheses:* 1. (They have scarcely) assez d'argent pour se nourrir. 2. Nous ne pourrons pas aller (to) Europe ni (to) Canada. 3. Il vaut mieux que vous restiez (in) Chicago. 4. Je vous écrirai dès que je serai arrivé, mais (only) une carte-postale. 5. Nous avons voyagé (in) États-Unis et (in) Amérique centrale. 6. Notre bateau est parti (from) Liverpool. 7. Vous m'avez menti, je (no longer can<sup>2</sup>) vous croire. 8. Je vous ai rapporté un souvenir (from) Japon. 9. (He has only) un billet de cinq dollars. 10. Paul est en retard, nous l'attendrons (no longer). 11. Je lui ai (only) dit que vous étiez fatigué. 12. Nous avons un nouveau (composition book). 13. Ils sont (in) Brésil. le mois prochain ils iront (to) Chili. 14. (He no longer works) avec son frère. 15. Vous êtes (scarcely) arrivé, et déjà vous voulez partir. 16. Nous lui avons envoyé des (dessert plates). 17. Quelques personnes (only) savent que Pierre est (in) Bermudes. 18. Elle a reçu des nouvelles (from) Norvège. 19. Il a perdu le (only) chapeau qu'il avait. 20. Ce pauvre enfant (has hardly any) vêtements. 21. Où avez-vous laissé votre (history book)? 22. Il arrive (from) Russie, il a passé un an (in) Moscou. 23. Elle parle trop vite, (I hardly understand) ce qu'elle dit. 24. Resterez-vous ici plusieurs jours? Non, (only) quelques heures. 25. J'ai tout essayé, (I no longer know) que faire.

## TRANSLATION

JEAN OBERLÉ (*suite*)

— Soit ! mon enfant. Je ne sais pas si j'ai raison, mais cela fera la joie de mon père, de ta mère et de ton oncle Ulrich. Oui, je consens, seulement à une condition.

— Laquelle ?

— Tu ne te mêlera pas de politique.

— Je n'en ai guère envie.

— Comprends ce que je veux dire ; je ne pense pas que tu aies pour toi-même une ambition politique, tu es trop jeune, et ce n'est pas cela que je t'interdis. Je t'interdis de répéter tout le temps et partout « La France ! La France ! » ou d'imiter les étudiants alsaciens qui sifflent, aux oreilles de la police, les six notes de la Marseillaise : « Formez vos bataillons ! » Ce sont des manifestations qui nous sont défendues, à nous autres industriels qui travaillons en pays allemand. Elles sont en contradiction avec notre effort et avec notre intérêt, car ce n'est pas la France qui achète. N'oublie pas cela ! Tu vas, par ta volonté, devenir industriel ; si tu tournes le dos aux Allemands, tu es perdu. Pense ce que tu voudras de l'histoire de la France, de son passé et de son présent. J'ignore là-dessus tes opinions, mais, quoi que tu penses, sache te taire, ou bien fais ton avenir ailleurs. J'accepte que tu prennes une carrière toute différente de celle que j'avais rêvée pour toi ; j'espère que tu comprendras notre situation, comme ta sœur la comprend. À partir de demain tu commenceras ton apprentissage pratique avec Guillaume, mon contre-maître.

Jean se leva, il tendit la main à son père et dit, tout pâle de joie :

— Je pourrai donc rester alsacien ! Que je suis heureux !

— Tu vois, mon enfant, que je n'ai qu'un but : te rendre heureux. Je l'ai toujours eu. Et maintenant, va voir ta mère et ta sœur, quand tu leur auras fait part de la bonne nouvelle, tu reviendras causer avec moi.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

Soit! So be it! Why, yes!	quoi que, whatever
avoir raison (tort), to be right (wrong)	se taire, to keep silent, stop talking
se mêler de, to mix with	ou bien, or else
avoir envie de, to have a desire to	à partir de, beginning
vouloir dire, to mean	contre-maitre, foreman
interdire, to forbid	faire part de, to inform, let know
siffler, to whistle	la nouvelle, news ( <i>one item</i> )
nous autres, we, us ( <i>in contrast to others</i> )	les nouvelles, news ( <i>several items</i> )
ignorer, not to know	aimer mieux, to prefer
là-dessus, on this subject	arriver, to arrive, happen

## EXERCISE C

1. John has just arrived from Munich where he has spent four years. 2. Mr. Oberlé explains to his son that he can no longer sell to France. 3. He learns his son's decision without anger but with sadness. 4. John's uncle is proud to (de) be an Alsatian. 5. He does not like either Germans or Germany. 6. When you have read <sup>1</sup> this story, you will understand why. 7. Alsatians are a people whom nothing discourages. 8. They have not seen <sup>2</sup> anyone, have they? No, no one. 9. Hasn't Henry decided where he will go? <sup>2</sup> To Argentina or to Peru? 10. He is not going anywhere. He will stay in New York. 11. What is his profession? Isn't he a lawyer? 12. Doctor Dupré, how long have you been living in Lille? 13. Patience is a quality that one does not find often. 14. General (*respectful*), do you wish <sup>1</sup> to speak to Captain Morel? 15. We doubt that he will come, <sup>2</sup> he is already two hours late. 16. The history course of Professor Malet is very interesting. 17. She speaks only English, but she understands French and Spanish. 18. They will send <sup>1</sup> a tea service to Mary for her birthday. 19. He has traveled in South Africa for several months. 20. You are right, nobody can tell what (ce qui) will happen tomorrow. 21. You say they will arrive on time, but I have scarcely any hope. 22. Mr. Dupuis is a Frenchman whom we like very much. 23. We only wish you to be <sup>2</sup> here when we come <sup>2</sup> back. 24. You will never succeed if you do not follow my advice. 25. We have received <sup>2</sup> a present from our friends in the United States. 26. It is late; nobody will come now. I shall not wait any longer. 27. What do you mean? You have scarcely waited twenty minutes. 28. Automobiles have replaced horses almost everywhere.



# LESSON FOUR

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE PARTITIVE *DE*

1. The partitive *de* plus the definite article denotes that an undetermined quantity, number, or amount of something is spoken of or that it is considered only as a part of the whole. It translates *some* or *any*, expressed or understood in English, or it may simply express the plural of *one* as in the third example.

**Donnez-lui du pain.**

Give him some bread.

**Ont-ils apporté de la viande?**

Did they bring any meat?

**Il vend des chevaux.**

He sells horses.

WARNING. Be careful to distinguish between the general sense (Lesson Three) and the partitive sense when translating an English sentence into French. The English sentence may make no distinction, but either the definite article or the partitive must be used in the French sentence.

**Nous aimons les chiens.**

We like dogs (dogs in general).

**Nous avons des chiens.**

We have dogs (a number of dogs).

**Les chiens sont des animaux fidèles.**

Dogs (in general) are faithful animals (not the only animals which are faithful).

**Donnez-moi le pain.**

Give me the bread.

**Donnez-moi du pain.**

Give me some bread.

2. The partitive *de* without the definite article is used in a general or unrestricted negation, and after nouns and adverbs of quantity. A negation and *de* means *not any*, *no*, or *not a (an)*.

Il ne veut pas de vin.	He does not want any wine.
Nous n'avons pas d'argent.	We have no money.
Je n'ai pas de crayon.	I haven't a pencil.
Vous avez trop de bijoux.	You have too many jewels.
un panier de pommes	a basket of apples

NOTE 1. **Du, de la, de l', and des** are used after **la plupart** (*most, the majority*), **bien** (*a good many, a good deal*) and **ne . . . que**.

la plupart des gens	most (of the) people
dans bien des cas	in a good many cases
Elle a bien de la patience.	She has a good deal of patience.
Il n'a que du pain.	He has only bread.

NOTE 2. When the sense of the noun is restricted by a qualifying phrase, both **de** and the article are used. Note that the quantity is now determined by the qualifying phrase and is no longer indefinite.

Il n'a pas mangé du gâteau qu'il a reçu.	He did not eat any of the cake he received.
Je n'ai pas acheté des verres pour que vous les cassiez.	I did not buy glasses for you to break them.

In these examples the negation is no longer unrestricted.

3. **De** without the article may be used when an adjective precedes the noun. This is not compulsory (decreed by the French Ministry of Education in 1901), and the modern custom is to use **du, de la, de l'** rather than **de** in the singular, but **de** (not **des**) in the plural.

Il nous a vendu <b>de</b> l'excellent pain.	He sold us excellent bread.
Elle porte <b>de</b> jolies robes.	She wears pretty dresses.

NOTE. **Des** MUST be used when the adjective is a part of a compound noun: **des grands-pères**, *grandfathers*; **des petits pois**, (*green*) *peas*.

#### 4. Omission of the partitive **du, de la, des** and **de**.

The partitive is omitted after **sans** and **ni** and after **avec** before abstract nouns.

un homme sans enfants	a man without children
Je n'ai ni argent ni amis.	I have neither money nor friends.
Nous marchons avec peine.	We walk with difficulty.

5. After verbs, adjectives, or expressions which require **de** before a noun, no article is used when the noun is unqualified and is considered in a partitive sense.

**Il manque de patience.**

He lacks patience.

**Ils sont pleins d'ambition.**

They are full of ambition.

**Nous parlons de sports.**

We are speaking of sports.

**J'ai besoin de chaussettes.**

I need some socks.

NOTE. When the meaning of the noun is restricted by a qualifying phrase, it is no longer taken in a partitive sense, and the article is used as in English.

**Nous parlons des maisons que nous avons visitées.**

We are speaking of the houses that we visited.

**Elle a besoin du dictionnaire de son frère.**

She needs her brother's dictionary.

## II. THE PARTITIVE PRONOUN **EN**

The pronoun **en** expresses the ideas *some, any, some of it (them), any of it (them)* whether expressed or understood in English. **En** must be used whenever its antecedent is *preceded* by **de, du, de la, des**; **en** is placed immediately before the verb (or the auxiliary in compound tenses), but it follows the verb in the imperative affirmative: **Prenez-en** but **n'en prenez pas**.

**Avez-vous des cigarettes? Oui, j'en ai. J'en ai assez. J'en ai beaucoup. J'en ai acheté ce matin.**

Have you any cigarets? Yes, I have (some). I have enough (of them). I have many (of them). I bought some this morning.

**Avez-vous besoin de votre auto? Oui, j'en ai besoin.**

Do you need your car? Yes, I do. (I have need of it.)

WARNING. In English, *of it, of them* are often omitted after adverbs of quantity, after numbers, and after the pronouns *several (plusieurs)* and *a few (quelques-uns)*. **En** is never omitted in French.

**Avez-vous une automobile? J'en ai une.**

Have you a car? I have one (of them).

<b>Ils en ont plusieurs.</b>	They have several (of them).
<b>Elle en a trois.</b>	She has three (of them).
<b>Avez-vous assez de viande?</b>	Have you enough meat?
<b>Nous en avons assez.</b>	We have enough (of it).

### III. FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES

1. The regular feminine of an adjective is formed by adding an **e** to the masculine singular: **grand, grande; petit, petite.**

Adjectives ending in **-e** in the masculine do not change in the feminine: **jeune, triste, rouge, etc.**

2. Adjectives ending in **-el, -eil, -en, -et, and -on** generally double the final consonant before adding the **e**: **naturel, naturelle; bon, bonne; ancien, ancienne; pareil, pareille; net, nette, etc.**

3. Adjectives ending in **-eux** change to **-euse** in the feminine: **heureux, heureuse, etc.**

4. Those ending in **-f** change to **-ve**: **actif, active; bref, brève.**

5. Those ending in **-er** change to **-ère**: **étranger, étrangère.**

6. Those ending in **-eur** change to **-euse**: **flatteur, flatteuse; trompeur, trompeuse.** (A few uncommon adjectives change to **-trice**.)

7. **Meilleur** and those ending in **-ieur** form their feminine regularly by adding **-e**: **antérieur, antérieure.**

8. **Beau, nouveau, mou, fou, and vieux** change to **bel, nouvel, mol, fol, and vieil** before a masculine singular noun beginning with a vowel or a mute **h**: **un vieil arbre, un bel homme.**

NOTE. A certain number of adjectives have an irregular feminine. The most common are listed here and on the next page for reference.

beau (bel), belle	blanc, blanche
nouveau (nouvel), nouvelle	franc, franche
fou (fol), folle	frais, fraîche
mou (mol), molle	sec, sèche
gentil, gentille	
nul, nulle	doux, douce
vieux (vieil), vieille	faux, fausse

épais, épaisse  
 bas, basse  
 las, lasse  
 gras, grasse  
 gros, grosse

complet, complète  
 discret, discrète  
 inquiet, inquiète  
 public, publique  
 malin, maligne

#### IV. PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1. The plural of nouns and adjectives is usually formed by adding an **s** to the singular: **le bon enfant, les bons enfants.**

2. Those ending in **-au, -eu, -eau** add an **x**: **le beau château, les beaux châteaux; le feu, les feux.** (**Bleu** adds an **s**.)

3. Those ending in **-al** change **-al** to **-aux** (the feminine **-ale** follows the general rule and adds an **s**): **le général, les généraux; amical, amicaux; des actions légales.**

4. Common exceptions and irregularities \*

le ciel, les cieux	le travail, les travaux	le bijou, les bijoux
l'œil, les yeux	fatal, fatals ( <i>adj.</i> )	le chou, les choux
l'aïeul, les aïeux	final, finals ( <i>adj.</i> )	le genou, les genoux

\* Within the first 3000 in the Vander Beke word count.

#### V. THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

1. Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify; predicate adjectives agree with the subject of the verb: **un homme heureux; une femme heureuse; elles sont heureuses.**

2. When two or more feminine nouns are qualified by the same adjective, the adjective is feminine plural. When the nouns are all masculine or of two genders, the adjective is masculine plural.

**Mon père et mon oncle seront contents.**

My father and my uncle will be happy.

**Ma sœur et ma cousine sont très jolies.**

My sister and my cousin are very pretty.

**une robe et un chapeau élégants**

an attractive dress and hat

NOTE. When the nouns are of different genders, the masculine noun is placed nearest the adjective.

3. When **vous** is used in speaking to one person in formal address, the adjective remains singular: **Marie, êtes-vous prête?**

### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate: **écrire, lire** (Table 1), **dire, faire** (Table 2).

What have **dire** and **faire** in common? What forms of **faire** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

### EXERCISE A

*Replace the dashes by the proper partitive or article wherever one is necessary.* 1. Voulez-vous me verser — eau? 2. Ils n'ont pas acheté — cravates. 3. Cette jeune fille a beaucoup — amies. 4. Il nous a apporté une bouteille — limonade. 5. Nous avons besoin — calme et — repos. 6. Il ne m'a pas donné — crayons que je lui ai demandés. 7. Nous ne voulons ni — chaussettes ni — chaussures. 8. La plupart — Français sont économes. 9. Sont-ils tout à fait sans — ressources? 10. Vous aimez trop — luxe et — plaisirs. 11. Cet élève doit certainement manquer — mémoire. 12. J'ai besoin — plume que je vous ai prêtée. 13. Elle a acheté une douzaine — oranges. 14. Ils nous ont envoyé — belles fleurs. 15. Ces soldats sont pleins — courage.

*Make the adjectives agree with the nouns they qualify, or translate the English words.* 16. Ces (jeune) filles sont (charmant, aimable, vif et très (joli)). 17. Louise a de (beau) mains (blanc et doux) et de (grand) yeux (bleu). 18. Ces soldats (brave et loyal) sont restés près de leurs (generals). 19. Il nous a chanté une (vieux) chanson (français, léger et gai). 20. J'ai donné mon (nouveau) habit à ce (vieux) aveugle. 21. Cette robe (gris) est (laid), et elle est trop (court). 22. Avez-vous remarqué les (eyes) de Marthe? 23. Il a quarante élèves; (how many have you)? (I have twenty). 24. Mes (nephews) aiment beaucoup les (horses). 25. Nous n'avons plus de pain, allez (buy some). 26. Avez-vous du pain et du beurre? Oui, (I have). 27. Connaissez-vous un

bon dentiste? (I know several). 28. Partagez vos gâteaux avec Louis, (you have too many). 29. Donnez-lui une feuille de papier, (he hasn't any). 30. Où avez-vous mis mes gants? (I need them).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

### A FEW: QUELQUES, QUELQUES-UNS

A *few*, adjective, is translated **quelques**. A *few*, *a few of them*, pronouns, are translated **quelques-uns**.

Il a invité <b>quelques amis</b> .	He invited a few friends.
Il en a invité <b>quelques-uns</b> .	He invited a few (of them).
<b>Quelques-uns ne sont pas venus</b> .	A few of them did not come.

NOTE 1. The pronoun *some* (*some of*, *some of them*) meaning a certain number (synonymous with *a few*) is also translated **quelques-uns**.

**Quelques-unes de mes fleurs sont mortes.** Some (a few) of my flowers died.

**Quelques-unes sont très belles.** Some (of them) are very pretty.

NOTE 2. Do not confuse *a few* with *few* (cf. below).

### ADVERBS OF QUANTITY

<b>Beaucoup</b> , <i>much, many, very much, very many, a great many, a lot, a great deal</i>	<b>tant</b> , <i>so much, so many</i>
<b>trop</b> , <i>too much, too many, too</i>	<b>peu</b> , <i>little, few</i>
<b>autant (que)</b> , <i>as much (as), as many (as)</i>	<b>moins (que)</b> , <i>less (than), fewer (than)</i>
	<b>plus (que)</b> , <i>more (than)</i>
	<b>combien</b> , <i>how much, how many</i>

The following points must be kept in mind when using adverbs of quantity.

1. **De** MUST be used when the adverb determines a noun.

<b>Nous avons peu d'amis.</b>	We have few friends.
<b>Ils ont trop de chance.</b>	They have too much luck.

2. **De** must NOT be used when the adverb modifies a verb, or when the adverb fulfills the function of a subject.

Il travaille autant que vous.	He works as much as you.
Elle mange très peu.	She eats very little.
Beaucoup ont essayé, peu ont réussi.	Many tried, few succeeded.

3. Be careful to distinguish between such sentences as

J'ai acheté beaucoup **de** pommes. I bought *a lot of* apples.

*and*

J'aime beaucoup **les** pommes. I like apples *a lot*.

In the first sentence **de** is used because the adverb determines the quantity of apples. In the second sentence **beaucoup** modifies the verb; the definite article **les** is used because **pommes** is taken in a general sense.

4. **En** must be used with the verb if *of it* or *of them* is understood in English after the adverb (see page 38).

Ne m'en donnez pas tant. Don't give me so much (of it).

5. **Beaucoup** is an absolute superlative, therefore do not say **très beaucoup** to translate *very much, very many, a great many*.

Il a beaucoup d'amis.	He has many (very many) friends.
-----------------------	----------------------------------

Ils l'aiment beaucoup.	They like him very much.
------------------------	--------------------------

Je n'ai pas beaucoup de temps.	I have not very much time.
--------------------------------	----------------------------

6. **Peu (de)** means *little or few*; **un peu (de)** can only mean *a little* (see above for *a few*).

Nous connaissons peu de gens.	We know few people.
-------------------------------	---------------------

Il a peu de patience.	He has little patience.
-----------------------	-------------------------

Donnez-lui un peu d'eau.	Give him a little water.
--------------------------	--------------------------

7. *As* and *than* introducing the second term of a comparison are both translated **que** as in the examples on the top of the next page.



**Nous avons autant d'argent que vous.** We have as much money as you.

**Nous avons moins d'élèves que l'année dernière.** We have fewer students than last year.

### CHEZ

The preposition **chez** used before a noun or a pronoun has the original meaning of *at (in, to) the house of*. Its meaning has been extended to place of business, shop, office, etc.

**Nous avons passé la soirée chez Jean (chez moi, chez eux).** We spent the evening at John's house (at my, their house).

**Elle est chez la couturière.** She is at the dressmaker's (shop).

**Je vous verrai chez l'avocat.** I shall see you at the lawyer's (office).

**Chez**, with persons or a disjunctive pronoun, is also used to translate *with, in, among*.

**Chez lui c'est une habitude.** With him it's a habit.

**La pitié se trouve surtout chez les femmes.** Pity is found mostly in (among) women.

**Chez nous (vous, eux)** may also express *in our (your, their) country*, when countries are compared.

**Cela peut arriver en Chine mais pas chez nous.** That may happen in China but not in our country.

### TO LEAVE: PARTIR, QUITTER, LAISSER

**Partir** is an intransitive verb (conjugated with **être**) meaning *to depart, to go away, to leave (from, for)*. It CANNOT be followed by a direct object.

**Il est parti il y a une heure.** He left an hour ago.

**Nous partons pour Chicago.** We are leaving for Chicago

**Quitter** is a transitive verb meaning *to leave (a place, a person)*; it MUST BE FOLLOWED BY a direct object.

**Il a quitté la ville.** He left the city.

**J'ai quitté ma femme à une heure.** I left my wife at one o'clock.

**Laisser**, also transitive, is used in the sense of *to leave behind*, *to abandon*, *to leave (something)*.

**Il nous a laissé sans argent.**

He left us without money.

**Ne laissez pas votre auto devant la porte.**

Do not leave your car in front of the door.

**Nous laisserons les enfants à la maison.**

We shall leave the children at home.

#### TO GO: S'EN ALLER, PARTIR

*To go*, used in the sense of *to go away* or *to leave* must be translated *s'en aller* or *partir*.

**Pourquoi vous en allez-vous?**

Why are you going (leaving)?

**Est-elle déjà partie?**

Has she gone (left) already?

**Allez-vous-en.**

Go away.

#### WITH: AVEC, DE, À

The translation of *with* often presents difficulty. The definitions below, although not all-inclusive, will be helpful.

**Avec** is used when *with* has the meaning of *together with*, *in the company of*, *the means or tools used*, *in what manner*.

**Elle est venue avec ses amies.**

She came with her friends.

**Il écrit avec mon stylo.**

He is writing with my fountain pen.

**J'ai lu votre article avec intérêt.**

I read your article with interest.

**De** is used when *with* has the meaning of *because of*, *from*, and after adjectives expressing satisfaction or dissatisfaction.

**Il est pâle d'émotion.**

He is pale with emotion.

**Nous mourons d'impatience.**

We are dying with impatience.

**Je suis content de votre travail.**

I am pleased with your work.

**À** is used before a phrase denoting a distinguishing characteristic.

**Regardez cet homme. Lequel?**

Look at that man. Which one?

**Celui au manteau gris.**

The one with the gray overcoat.

**Voyez-vous la maison au toit rouge?**

Do you see the house with the red roof?

## EXERCISE B

1. J'ai l'intention de passer (a few) jours à la campagne. 2. (We shall leave) la ville aussitôt que possible. 3. Ils ont (few) amis et (little) argent. 4. Les plus braves étaient pâles (with) terreur. 5. Nous avons rencontré votre sœur (at the dentist's). 6. J'ai corrigé vos compositions, (some of them) sont excellentes. 7. Voulez-vous (a little) lait et (a few) gâteaux? 8. Il ne pose pas (so many) questions que vous. 9. (She will leave) demain matin de bonne heure. 10. Nous avons (fewer) leçons que la semaine dernière. 11. Nous avons invité (a great many) gens; mais (few) sont venus. 12. (In their country) les salaires sont plus modestes qu'ici. 13. Voulez-vous que nous vous accompagnions (to Peter's house)? 14. La modestie est une qualité qu'on trouve (in) les héros. 15. Monsieur G. (has left) tout son argent aux pauvres. 16. Voulez-vous des cerises? Oui, mais donnez-m'en (very few). 17. J'ai trop de travail, vous n'en avez pas (as much as) moi. 18. Qui est la dame (with) le manteau de fourrure? 19. Savez-vous de quel port le bateau (will leave)? 20. Je lui ai déjà dit trois fois de (go away). 21. J'ai écrit (so many) lettres que je ne sais plus (how many). 22. Pourquoi (have you left) un tel désordre? 23. Aimez-vous les romans de Dumas? J'en aime (a few). 24. Vous avez donné dix bonbons à Jeanne, donnez-m'en (as many). 25. Il était si heureux qu'il pleurait (with) joie.

## TRANSLATION

## LUCIENNE OBERLÉ

Lucienne seule approuvait et soutenait son père. C'était sans doute le résultat de l'éducation toute allemande de la pension Munder d'où elle était sortie il y avait deux ans. Ambitieuse comme son père, entièrement soustraite à l'influence maternelle, Lucienne avait acquis un état d'esprit bien différent de celui de l'Alsace d'autrefois. Rentrée chez ses parents, elle ne comprenait plus le passé de sa race et de sa famille. Tout de suite elle avait pris le parti du père contre sa mère et son grand-père. Mais elle souffrait de la division de sa famille. Aussi était-elle enchantée du retour de Jean. Elle espérait trouver en lui un confident, et, peut-être, un allié.

Aussitôt après le déjeuner, elle alla retrouver Jean qui était descendu fumer son cigare dans le parc. Avec sa décision habituelle elle lui dit:

— Jean, j'ai besoin de m'expliquer avec toi. Nous avons été séparés pendant dix ans, je te connais à peine et tu ne me connais point. Je tiens d'abord à t'exposer ma manière de penser sur un point, et je n'en fais pas mystère: notre situation est intolérable. On ne peut rien dire ici de l'Allemagne ou des Allemands, si ce n'est du mal. Dès qu'un mot d'éloge ou seulement de justice est prononcé à leur égard, maman se mord les lèvres et grand-père me fait honte en public, comme tout à l'heure. Maman n'a aucune intelligence des questions générales. Elle ne voit pas au delà d'Alsheim. Mon père, lui, a beaucoup mieux compris la situation qui nous est faite en Alsace; il a été éclairé par ses relations, par son intérêt commercial et par son ambition. . . .

— De quelle ambition parles-tu?

— Je me doute que nous ne tarderons pas à le voir candidat à la députation.

— C'est impossible, Lucienne.

— Peut-être, mais cela sera certainement. Il sera nommé, parce qu'il est très appuyé par le gouvernement et qu'il y mettra le prix.

— Quelle déception pour maman et grand-père!

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**d'où elle était sortie**, from which she  
had graduated

**il y avait deux ans**, two years before

**soustraite à**, removed from

**d'autrefois**, of old

**tout de suite**, right away, at once

**prendre le parti de**, to take sides with

**aussi** (*conjunction*), thus, and so

**retrouver**, to join (someone)

**s'expliquer**, to have an explanation,  
speak plainly

**exposer**, to state

**tenir à**, to be anxious to

**à leur égard**, in their behalf, about  
them

**faire honte**, to shame, put to shame

**l'intelligence**, understanding

**au delà de**, beyond

**éclairer**, to enlighten

**les relations**, acquaintances

**se douter (de)**, to suspect

**nous ne tarderons pas à**, it won't be  
long before we

**candidat à la députation**, a candidate to  
a seat in the Reichstag

**mettre le prix à**, pay the price for

**être appuyé par**, to be backed by

**la déception**, disappointment

**manquer de**, to lack

**il y a**, ago

**se tromper**, to be mistaken

**avoir l'intention de**, to intend to

**ainsi** (*adverb*), thus

## EXERCISE C

1. John wishes to talk to his sister immediately after lunch. 2. Lucienne is active, frank, and discreet, but too proud. 3. She is anxious to see her brother, for she is not very happy. 4. She has left many friends in Munich, but she hasn't any here. 5. Her mother and her grandfather are no longer her confidants. 6. Grandfather Oberlé has been ill for several months. 7. Many Alsatians refuse to (de) work for Mr. Oberlé. 8. Now, most of her father's friends are German. 9. Lucienne thinks that the family situation is without hope. 10. How many months will John stay at his father's house? 11. He intends to stay in Alsace for a few months. 12. They will understand that we do not want any help. 13. Where is your mother? She left the house an hour ago. 14. Last night they were too tired to take a walk. 15. What do you mean? Are they not satisfied with their work? 16. We have some very good tea; will you have some? 17. I prefer cookies; have you any? Yes, I have a few. 18. We have too many trees and too few flowers in our garden. 19. How much coffee do you want? I want very little. 20. He has neither paper nor ink. Have they any? 21. We doubt that he will leave his house to his children. 22. I cannot find Henry. Where is he? He is at the tailor's. 23. We haven't enough bread for lunch. Will you go buy some? 24. In our country men are free and equal. 25. We are delighted with your return. How long shall you stay with us? 26. Patience is not a quality that one finds in many men. 27. Take more cake; you have very little. You have less than we. 28. We need more chairs and a few tables for our party (*soirée*). 29. We haven't very many, but we shall send a few tonight. 30. I cannot find my bag and I need it.

# LESSON FIVE

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

The position of adjectives used as predicate adjectives following *être, to be; devenir, to become; rester, to remain; sembler, to seem*, etc. is the same as in English.

**Je suis heureux.**

I am happy.

**Il est resté tranquille.**

He remained quiet.

The position of adjectives qualifying a noun is variable and depends often on euphony, rhythm, or the feeling of the speaker. The position of certain adjectives is relatively fixed however, and the following general rules can be applied to the majority of cases.

1. Adjectives qualifying a proper name or a noun followed by a proper name precede the noun.

**mon riche ami Dupré**

my rich friend Dupré

**le subtil Verlaine**

the subtle Verlaine

**l'excellent docteur Fabre**

the excellent Doctor Fabre

2. Adjectives denoting shape, color or other physical characteristics; nationality, religion, class, political group; and past participles used as adjectives, follow the noun they qualify.

**une table ronde**

a round table

**de l'eau chaude**

hot water

**l'industrie américaine**

American industry

**une réunion socialiste**

a socialist meeting

**une porte fermée**

a closed door

3. The following commonly used adjectives precede the noun; but they follow it when modified by any adverb except **assez**, **aussi**, **bien**, **moins**, **plus**, **si**, **très**, or **trop**.

autre *	grand †	mauvais	pire
beau	gros	meilleur	prochain <sup>3</sup>
bon †	jeune	moindre	vieux
dernier ‡	joli	petit	vilain
gentil	long		

son dernier examen

his last examination

la dernière semaine de l'année

the last week of the year

Il est arrivé le mois dernier.

He arrived last month.

Nous viendrons la semaine prochaine.

We shall come next week.

Il partira par le prochain bateau.

He will leave on the next boat.

\* Un autre, une autre (*another*) is written as two words in French.

† Cf. page 51, Section 7.

‡ Dernier with divisions of time follows the noun it qualifies when *last* means *just passed*; but when *last* means *final* or *the last in a series*, it precedes. Prochain with divisions of time follows the noun.

4. Adjectives denoting a distinguishing quality or characteristic follow the noun they qualify.

des femmes charmantes

charming women

un homme sérieux

a serious man

une leçon facile

an easy lesson

des punitions sévères

severe punishments

un homme cruel

a cruel man

5. A number of adjectives, provided that they are not modified by an adverb, may precede the noun:

a. when they are not used as a distinguishing characteristic, but are merely added to the noun as a descriptive epithet: **une charmante femme**, **un excellent homme**, **un magnifique spectacle**, **un célèbre avocat**.

b. when the adjective and noun are associated together by established usage: **une violente tempête**, **un riche banquier**, **une rare occasion**.

However, there are exceptions for reasons of euphony, and it is safer for the student to use these adjectives after the noun, unless he has enough evidence from his reading of French texts to justify changing the usual order.

6. Adjectives having a literal meaning when used after the noun, usually precede it when they have a figurative meaning.

LITERALLY		FIGURATIVELY	
<b>des gants chauds</b>	warm gloves	<b>une chaude réception</b>	a warm reception
<b>une rue sombre</b>	a dark street	<b>un sombre complot</b>	a dark plot

7. Certain adjectives differ in meaning according to whether they follow or precede the noun they qualify. Below are the most common.

	<i>Before the noun</i>	<i>After the noun</i>
	new, newly acquired, new to the owner	new, of the latest style, new on the market
<b>vrai</b>	real, veritable	true, true to fact
<b>certain</b>	certain ( <i>indefinite</i> )	sure, unquestionable
<b>pauvre</b>	poor, to be pitied, of inferior quality	poor, indigent
<b>ancien</b>	former	ancient
<b>simple</b>	simple, mere, just (a)	simple, not complicated
<b>propre</b>	own	clean
<b>cher</b>	dear, beloved	dear, expensive
<b>différent</b>	different, various	different, not alike, not the same
<b>brave</b>	worthy, good	brave
<b>maigre</b>	meager, scanty	thin, lean
<b>sale</b>	nasty, unpleasant, foul	dirty ( <i>literally</i> )

When **bon** precedes the nouns **homme**, **femme**, **garçon**, **filie**, it means *good-natured* but it often implies condescension; after the noun, it means *kind*, *kind-hearted*, *good*.

**Grand** preceding **homme** means *great*; following, it means *tall*. With other nouns **grand** means *big*, *large* when it precedes.

8. When a noun is qualified by more than one adjective, each adjective retains its position according to the rules given above. When



all of them must follow, the adjective immediately preceding the noun in English is the first to follow the noun in French.

<b>une gentille petite fille</b>	a nice little girl
<b>une petite fille intelligente</b>	an intelligent little girl
<b>un manteau noir élégant</b>	an elegant black coat

9. Adjectives joined by a conjunction follow the general rule, except that if one must follow the noun, both must follow.

<b>une femme jolie et charmante</b>	a pretty and charming woman
<b>un homme riche et généreux</b>	a rich and generous man
<b>un petit garçon bien élevé et poli</b>	a well brought up and polite little boy

10. Adjectives followed by a prepositional complement must follow the noun as in English.

<b>un homme facile à contenter</b>	a man easy to please
<b>un élève digne d'éloges</b>	a student worthy of praise

## II. POSITION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs usually retain the position they have in the English sentence.

<b>Il fait <i>déjà</i> nuit.</b>	It is <i>already</i> dark.
<b>Nous arriverons <i>en retard</i>.</b>	We shall arrive <i>late</i> .
<b>Je ne suis pas allé à l'école <i>hier</i>.</b>	I did not go to school <i>yesterday</i> .
<b>Nous sommes <i>très</i> heureux de vous voir.</b>	We are <i>very</i> happy to see you.
<b>Il lui parlera <i>personnellement</i>.</b>	He will speak to him <i>personally</i> .

Note, however, the following restrictions and differences:

1. If an adverb refers to the subject or is set off from it by commas, it can be placed between the subject and the verb as in English.

<b>Jean aussi sait la nouvelle.</b>	John also knows the news.
<b>Lui, cependant, ne comprend pas.</b>	He, however, does not understand.

In other cases the adverb generally must follow the verb in French.

<b>Je vais rarement à Paris.</b>	I seldom go to Paris.
<b>J'entends à peine ce qu'il dit.</b>	I hardly hear what he is saying.

2. **Beaucoup, trop, peu, bien, mal**, and, in general, adverbs of manner are placed immediately after the verb they modify.

<b>Ils grondent trop leurs enfants.</b>	They scold their children too much.
<b>J'aime beaucoup ce film.</b>	I like this film a lot (very much).

3. In compound tenses very commonly used adverbs (listed in Appendix III) are placed, as are a number of English adverbs, between the auxiliary verb and the past participle. Adverbial phrases and many adverbs ending in **-ment** follow the past participle.

<b>Il a très bien parlé.</b>	He spoke very well.
<b>Il est déjà parti.</b>	He has already left.
<b>Elle n'est pas encore arrivée.</b>	She has not arrived yet.
<b>Nous avons presque fini.</b>	We have almost finished.

4. **Assez** always precedes the adjective or adverb it modifies.

<b>Cette maison est assez grande.</b>	This house is large enough.
<b>Parle-t-il assez lentement?</b>	Does he speak slowly enough?

### III. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

1. The comparative is formed by using **plus** (*more*), **moins** (*less*), **aussi** (*as, so*), before the adjective or the adverb. **Si** may be used instead of **aussi** in the negative sentence. *Than* or *as* (the second part of the comparison) are both translated **que**.

<b>Il est plus heureux que nous.</b>	He is happier than we.
<b>Nous le voyons moins souvent.</b>	We see him less often.
<b>Il est aussi grand que son père.</b>	He is as tall as his father.
<b>Vous n'êtes pas aussi (si) généreux que Paul.</b>	You are not so generous as Paul.

## 2. The comparative of some adjectives and adverbs is irregular.

### ADJECTIVES

<b>bon</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>meilleur</b> , <i>better</i>
<b>mauvais</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>plus mauvais</b> or <b>pire</b> , <i>worse</i>
<b>petit</b> , <i>little, small</i>	<b>plus petit</b> , <i>smaller, and</i> <b>moindre</b> , <i>lesser, slighter</i>

### ADVERBS

<b>bien</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>mieux</b> , <i>better</i>
<b>mal</b> , <i>badly</i>	<b>plus mal</b> or <b>pis</b> , <i>worse</i>
<b>peu</b> , <i>little</i>	<b>moins</b> , <i>less</i>

WARNING. In English *better* and *worse* may be adjectives or adverbs according to their use. Be careful to make the distinction in French.

3. The superlative is formed by placing **le**, **la**, **les**, or a possessive adjective before the comparative of the adjective. The superlative of an adverb is formed by placing **le** (invariable) before the comparative of the adverb.

<b>mon plus vieux chapeau</b>	my oldest hat
<b>le moins intéressant</b>	the least interesting
<b>Voici celui que j'aime le mieux.</b>	Here is the one I like best.

**De** is used with the complement of a superlative, regardless of what the English preposition may be.

<b>la plus belle maison de la rue</b>	the prettiest house on the street
<b>le meilleur élève de la classe</b>	the best student in the class
<b>Il marche le plus vite de tous.</b>	He walks the fastest of all.

NOTE 1. Adjectives that follow the noun, must also follow when used in the comparative or superlative.

<b>un élève plus paresseux</b>	a lazier student
<b>mes pensées les plus intimes</b>	my most intimate thoughts

NOTE 2. *More than, less than* before a number are translated **plus de, moins de**: **J'en ai plus (moins) de cent.** I have more (less) than a hundred.

## IV. ANOTHER USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The Subjunctive is used after verbs or expressions denoting an emotion such as joy, sorrow, fear, anger, etc.; and also after verbs of approval or disapproval, preference, consent, or refusal.

Je suis content que vous soyez ici ce soir.	I am glad you are here tonight.
Je regrette que vous partiez.	I am sorry you are leaving.
J'aime mieux qu'il soit présent.	I prefer him to be present. (I prefer that he be present.)
Je n'accepte pas qu'il le fasse.	I do not consent to his doing it.
J'ai peur que nous arrivions trop tard.	I am afraid we shall arrive too late.

NOTE. **Espérer** in a positive statement requires the Indicative. It is not considered as a verb of emotion, but of thinking, like **croire** or **penser**.

Nous espérons qu'il viendra.	We hope he will come.
Nous pensons que M. Oberlé a des ambitions politiques.	We think M. Oberlé has political ambitions.

## VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **plaire**, **mettre** (Table 1); **voir**, **prendre** (Table 2).

What forms of **voir** and **prendre** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

## EXERCISE A

*Place the adjectives and adverbs in parentheses in their proper position.* 1. Regardez cette tapisserie (française, belle). 2. A qui est ce chapeau (grand, rouge)? 3. Je suis allé à votre adresse (ancienne). 4. J'ai acheté un fauteuil (grand, profond et confortable). 5. Il raconte une histoire (longue). 6. C'est un sacrifice (nécessaire). 7. Lisez le chapitre (suivant). 8. Ils tiennent à leurs institutions (républicaines). 9. Ne les laissez pas jouer avec ce chat (pauvre). 10. Avez-vous compris la leçon (bien)? 11. Napoléon était un général (grand). 12. Je vais à la campagne (rarement). 13. Elle a acheté un sac (joli, petit).

14. Je voudrais un dictionnaire (meilleur). 15. J'ai bâti cette maison de mes mains (propres). 16. Il nous affirme que c'est une histoire (vraie). 17. Je vous ai donné mon dollar (dernier). 18. Pourquoi gardez-vous tous ces papiers (inutiles, vieux)? 19. Le train partira dans quelques minutes (prochain). 20. Je ne l'ai pas vu la semaine (dernière). 21. Il a voyagé en Europe (beaucoup). 22. Il n'a peur de rien, c'est un homme (brave, très). 23. Je l'ai regardé sans dire un mot (froidelement). 24. Je vous écrirai la semaine (prochaine). 25. Il lui a donné une couverture (chaude, bonne).

*Change the infinitives in parentheses to the proper form.* 26. J'aime mieux que vous (venir<sup>1</sup>) plus tard. 27. Il n'acceptera jamais que vous (faire<sup>2</sup>) cela. 28. Nous espérons que vous (pouvoir<sup>2</sup>) amener vos amis. 29. Je suis étonné que vous (savoir<sup>2</sup>) cette histoire. 30. Il mérite que vous lui (donner) une récompense.

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

### NEW: NOUVEAU, NEUF

**Nouveau** (before the noun) is used in the sense of new to the owner, recently acquired, different, but not necessarily brand-new. **Neuf** always follows the noun and means new in the sense of brand-new, newly-made. (For **nouveau** after the noun *cf. page 51.*)

**Avez-vous visité son nouvel appartement?**

**Mettra-t-elle sa robe neuve?**

**Il a une nouvelle auto (une auto d'occasion).**

Have you visited his new apartment?

Will she put on her new dress?

He has a new car (a second-hand car).

### TO BE: ALLER, SE PORTER

*To be, to do, referring to health, is translated **aller** or **se porter**.*

**Comment allez-vous (vous portez-vous)?**

**Ma mère va bien (se porte bien).**

How are you (do you do)?

My mother is well.

## TO BE . . . YEARS OLD: AVOIR . . . ANS

In expressions referring to one's age, **avoir . . . ans** is used. The word *old* is not translated; but **an** must always be expressed even when *year* is omitted in English.

Elle a quarante ans.	She is forty years old.
Je n'ai que vingt ans.	I am only twenty.

*How old . . .* is expressed by **quel âge . . .**

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
Quel âge aura-t-il en octobre?	How old will he be in October?

*To be . . . years older (younger)* is expressed by **avoir . . . ans de plus** (de moins) or **être de . . . ans plus (moins) âgé**.

J'ai trois ans de plus que vous.	I am three years older than you.
Elle a cinq ans de moins que sa sœur.	She is five years younger than her sister.
Je suis de dix ans plus (moins) âgé que Jean.	I am ten years older (younger) than John.

NOTE. *To be old (young)* without any mention of years is translated **être vieux, être jeune**.

Il est très jeune.	He is very young.
Il est plus vieux que vous.	He is older than you.

## TIME, O'CLOCK: HEURE

Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?
Savez-vous l'heure qu'il est?	Do you know what time it is?
Il est dix heures.	It is ten o'clock.
Il est l'heure de partir.	It is time (the hour) to leave.

*but*

Il est temps de partir.	It is time to leave (that we leave).
-------------------------	--------------------------------------

*Past (after)* is not translated with minutes; but with **quart** and **demie**, it is expressed by **et**:

trois heures dix	ten minutes past three
trois heures et quart	a quarter past three
trois heures et demie	half past three

*To (of)* in expressions of time is translated **moins**. The articles **le** or **un** are used before **quart**.

<b>trois heures moins le (un) quart</b>	a quarter of three
<b>trois heures moins dix</b>	ten minutes of three

NOTE. In French, **heure** is always expressed, and **minute** is omitted.

A.M. is expressed by **du matin**; P.M.: **de l'après-midi**, **du soir**; *twelve o'clock*, noon: **midi**; *twelve o'clock*, *midnight*: **minuit**. **Douze heures** is not used in French.

<b>onze heures du matin (du soir)</b>	eleven A.M. (P.M.)
<b>midi et quart</b>	a quarter past twelve A.M.
<b>minuit moins dix</b>	ten minutes of twelve P.M.
<b>Il est midi (minuit).</b>	It is noon (midnight).

*Half an hour* is expressed by **une demi-heure**; *quarter of an hour*, by **un quart d'heure**.

#### EXPRESSIONS WITH DATES

Cardinal numbers are used in French with dates except for *the first* which is translated **le premier**. *Of* is not translated.

<b>le vingt juin</b>	the twentieth of June (June 20th)
<b>le premier janvier</b>	the first of January (January 1st)
<b>Quel jour est-ce? or Quel jour sommes-nous?</b>	What day is it?
<b>C'est aujourd'hui lundi.</b>	Today is Monday.
<b>Quel jour du mois est-ce? or sommes-nous?</b>	What day of the month is it?
<b>C'est aujourd'hui le dix.</b>	Today is the tenth.
<b>huit jours or une semaine</b>	a week
<b>d'aujourd'hui en huit</b>	a week from today
<b>quinze jours or deux semaines</b>	two weeks
<b>de mardi en quinze</b>	two weeks from Tuesday
<b>il y a un mois</b>	a month ago
<b>il y a eu un mois hier</b>	a month ago yesterday
<b>il y aura deux mois demain</b>	two months ago tomorrow

NOTE. Months and days of the week are not capitalized in French.

**JOUR, JOURNÉE; MATIN, MATINÉE; SOIR, SOIRÉE**

**Jour, matin, soir** express simple divisions of time; **journée, matinée, soirée** suggest both the duration and the content of a division of time.

Il m'a téléphoné ce matin (ce soir).	He telephoned me this morning (this evening).
La matinée (la soirée) m'a semblé longue.	The morning (the evening) seemed long to me.
J'ai passé la journée à la campagne.	I spent the day in the country.
J'ai passé deux jours à Paris.	I spent two days in Paris.

**AN, ANNÉE**

**An** is used almost solely with a definite number. In other cases **année** is used.

Cette année n'a pas été bonne.	This year has not been good.
plusieurs années	several years
il y a quelques années	a few years ago
il y a cinq ans	five years ago
pendant trois ans	for three years

**UNTIL: JUSQU'À; NOT UNTIL: PAS JUSQU'À, PAS AVANT**

**Jusqu'à** is used to state the time when an activity or state will come (or came) to an end.

Je travaillerai jusqu'à midi.	I shall work until noon.
Il vous a attendu jusqu'à trois heures.	He waited for you until three o'clock.

**Pas jusqu'à** indicates that the action will not be (or has not been) continued up to a stated time.

Je n'ai pas l'intention de rester ici jusqu'à ce soir.	I do not intend to stay here until tonight.
Je ne travaillerai pas jusqu'à midi.	I shall not work until (right up to) noon.

**Pas avant** indicates that an act does not, did not, or will not begin before a stated time. **Pas avant** must be used whenever *not until* has the meaning of *not before*, as in the examples on the following page.



<b>Le train ne part pas avant cinq heures.</b>	The train does not leave until (before) five o'clock.
<b>Je n'irai pas à New-York avant le mois prochain.</b>	I shall not go to New York until (before) next month.
<b>Il n'est pas rentré chez lui avant minuit.</b>	He did not come home before midnight.

## EXERCISE B

1. Savez-vous (how old she was) quand elle s'est mariée? 2. Je crois (that she was twenty). 3. (She is three years younger than) sa sœur. 4. (At what time) vous êtes-vous couchés? 5. Nous nous sommes couchés (at eleven). 6. Et nous nous sommes levés (at half past six). 7. Nous avons quitté la maison (at 25 minutes of eight). 8. Voulez-vous venir passer (the evening) avec nous? 9. (Today is Saturday), nous n'avons pas de classes. 10. (It is twelve o'clock), il faut aller vous coucher. 11. Je demeure ici depuis plusieurs (years). 12. Il n'arrive pas à son bureau (until a quarter after ten). 13. Il partira par le train de (twelve p.m.). 14. Quand (the new maid) arrivera-t-elle? (A week from Monday.) 15. Il nous a parlé au téléphone pendant (half an hour). 16. (What time is it) à Moscou quand (it is noon) à New-York? 17. Avez-vous des nouvelles de Jean? (How is he?) 18. (He is well), merci, il sera de retour dans huit (days). 19. Téléphonez-moi dans le courant de (the morning). 20. Nous serons à Chicago (until March 1st). 21. Ne mettez pas votre (new dress) pour jouer dans le jardin. 22. Il est né (the 20th of April, 1910). 23. Elle est arrivée (at six a.m.) et elle est repartie (at three p.m.). 24. Êtes-vous prêt? Nous partons dans (a quarter of an hour). 25. Ils ont vendu leur maison (three years ago).

## TRANSLATION

LUCIENNE OBERLÉ (*suite*)

— Il faut que tu te rendes compte, mon cher Jean, que nous sommes divisés irrémédiablement.

— Irrémédiablement? J'espère que tu te trompes, Lucienne.

— Non, profite de mon expérience. Tu viens d'arriver. Moi, je suis ici depuis deux ans. Je peux t'assurer que mon père ne changera pas et ne redeviendra pas français, parce que ce serait renoncer à tout avenir et à beaucoup d'avantages commerciaux; maman ne changera pas, parce qu'elle est femme et que, devenir allemande, ce serait abandonner un sentiment qu'elle croit très noble; tu n'as pas la prétention de convertir grand-père? Alors? . . . Alors, mon cher, puisque tu ne peux amener la paix par la douceur, amène-la par la force. Si tu ne manques pas de sens pratique, joins-toi à moi et à mon père, même si tu ne penses pas en toutes choses comme nous. Nous dominerons. C'est tout ce que nous pouvons espérer. Veux-tu? . . . Je sais que tu n'as pas une tendresse très vive pour les Allemands. Mais tu n'as pas d'animosité contre eux? Tu ne quittes pas la pièce lorsque l'un d'eux entre?

— Non. Mais, vois-tu, Lucienne, même si j'agis d'une autre manière que maman et grand-père, parce que mon éducation m'a rendu supportable ce qui leur est odieux, je ne pourrai pas les blâmer. Je leur trouve des raisons touchantes d'être ce qu'ils sont.

— Moi, je les trouve déraisonnables.

Les yeux verts de Jean, les yeux plus clairs de Lucienne s'interrogèrent un instant. Les deux jeunes gens se regardaient avec une expression d'étonnement et de défi. Ce fut Lucienne qui rompit le silence.

— Crois-moi, soyons tout à fait francs l'un envers l'autre. Je n'ai personne à qui me confier entièrement. Tu ne peux pas te douter comme j'en ai souffert. . . . Tu me diras toutes tes pensées, et moi, j'aurai bien des choses à te dire. . . . A quoi penses-tu?

— A cette pauvre maison.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**se rendre compte (de)**, to realize  
**se tromper**, to be mistaken  
**profiter de**, to take advantage of  
**renoncer à**, to give up  
**avoir la prétention de**, to expect to  
**la douceur**, gentleness  
**se joindre à**, to join  
**s'interroger**, to question each other

**défi**, challenge  
**tout à fait**, quite, entirely  
**francs l'un envers l'autre**, frank with each other  
**se confier à**, to confide in  
**vouloir bien**, to be willing, consent  
**aimer mieux**, to prefer  
**tenir à** (*plus a noun*), to be fond of

## EXERCISE C

1. I am very pleased that you know<sup>2</sup> your lesson so well. 2. My brother's house is the largest in the street. 3. She has been talking to John for more than two hours. 4. We are sorry that you cannot<sup>2</sup> accept our invitation. 5. I do not want<sup>2</sup> you to stay at your friend's house until one A.M. 6. They arrived last Monday at 11:30 P.M. 7. I have just seen your grandfather. He is very well, isn't he? 8. Yes, do you know that he will be 85 the 25th of November? 9. I shall not be able<sup>2</sup> [to] come until next week. 10. He will understand better, if you speak more slowly. 11. We spent several pleasant years in the United States. 12. A young and elegant lady wishes [to] see your father. 13. They are afraid that you do not understand<sup>2</sup> the situation. 14. Lucienne is an intelligent girl, but she is not so kind as her brother. 15. She is much younger than John. She is only twenty. 16. Today she is wearing a white dress and a large blue hat. 17. Here is a rich and generous man who will help you. 18. He will take advantage of the fine weather in order to take a walk. 19. We hope that M. Oberlé will give up his political ambitions. 20. They will soon have finished; they are writing<sup>1</sup> the last exercise. 21. We are glad that you do not blame your friend. 22. They will always be frank with each other. 23. Lucienne has beautiful blue eyes and blond hair (*plural in French*). 24. I am going to spend a few days at my former school. 25. We like the beautiful old trees along the road. 26. How old is your brother? Is he younger than you? 27. No, he is older. He is five years older than I (*moi*). 28. Paul is a better student than Henry. Paul is my best student. 29. He always arrives on time. Henry is almost always late. 30. What are they singing? They are singing an old American song.

# LESSON SIX

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. VERBS WITH THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

The reflexive pronoun is used with verbs to represent the pronoun object, direct or indirect, when it is of the same person as the subject (*cf.* Lesson Eight, Table of Reflexive Pronouns). Verbs employing the reflexive pronoun may be classified under three types: reflexive verbs, verbs that are essentially reflexive in French, and reciprocal verbs. For all practical purposes they are identical in form and give no difficulty except in the agreement of their past participle (Section III).

1. Reflexive verbs are used in French to denote, as in English, that the action is performed and borne by the subject. Like all object pronouns, the reflexive pronouns precede the verb (the auxiliary in compound tenses) except in the imperative affirmative when they follow and are joined to the verb by a hyphen.

**Je me blâme.**

I blame myself.

**Il se lave. Lavez-vous.**

He is washing. Wash (yourself).

NOTE. When an action is performed by the subject to a part of his own body, the possessive adjective, used in English, is translated in French by the definite article. Note that the part of the body is the direct object and the reflexive pronoun is an indirect object.

**Je me lave les mains. Je me les lave.**

I wash my hands. (*Literally:* I wash the hands to myself.) I wash them.

**Elle se brosse les cheveux. Elle se les brosse.**

She brushes her hair. She brushes it.

2. Many verbs in French are by nature essentially reflexive and should be learned as such, as: **se souvenir de**, **se moquer de**, **se repentir**, **s'écrier**, **s'en aller**, **s'enfuir**, **s'envoler**, etc.

**Je me souviendrai de cela.**

I shall remember that.

Many verbs change their meaning when used with a reflexive pronoun. They become essentially reflexive verbs and should be learned as idiomatic expressions. Among these are: **se rendre compte de**, *to realize*; **se rappeler**, *to remember*; **se tromper**, *to be mistaken*, etc.

**L'officier a rendu compte de sa mission.** The officer gave a report of his mission.

**Il ne se rend pas compte du danger.** He doesn't realize the danger.

3. Reciprocal verbs express an action shared reciprocally by two or more persons. They, therefore, have a plural subject. In English, the reciprocity is expressed by *each other* or *one another* or it is implied by the context of the sentence. Reciprocal verbs are conjugated in French exactly like the reflexive verbs.

**Jean et Henri ne se parlent plus.** John and Henry no longer speak to each other.

**Paul et ses amis se retrouveront devant le restaurant.** Paul and his friends will meet (one another) in front of the restaurant.

NOTE. The reflexive pronoun and the context generally suffice in French to express the reciprocal action. But when it is not clear if the action is reflexive or reciprocal, then **l'un l'autre** (*each other*, two persons), or **les uns les autres** (*one another*, more than two persons) is added after the verb to avoid ambiguity:

**Ils se blâment.**

They blame themselves.

**Ils se blâment l'un l'autre (les uns les autres).**

They blame each other (one another).

**L'un l'autre** or **les uns les autres** is also used to indicate reciprocal action with essentially reflexive verbs. With intransitive verbs the prep-

osition is placed between *l'un* and *l'autre* and *les uns* and *les autres*: *l'un de l'autre* or *les uns des autres*.

**Elles se moquent les unes des autres.** They make fun of one another.

## II. THE AUXILIARY IN COMPOUND TENSES

1. The compound tenses of all transitive verbs and of most intransitive verbs are formed with **avoir**. (A transitive verb is one that takes a direct object.)

2. The auxiliary **être** is used to form the compound tenses of:

a. Intransitive verbs in the following table.

### REFERENCE LIST OF COMMON VERBS CONJUGATED WITH **être**

aller	entrer	naître	rester	sortir *
arriver	monter *	partir	retourner	tomber
descendre *	mourir	rentrer *	revenir	venir

*and the compounds of venir: devenir, intervenir, parvenir.*

\* Cf. VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS.

**Nous sommes allés en Europe.**

We went to Europe.

**Ils seraient arrivés ce matin.**

They would have arrived this morning.

**Je suis resté à la maison.**

I stayed home.

**Il est mort le mois dernier.**

He died last month.

NOTE. These verbs denote a change of place or location resulting from a motion or they denote a state or change of state. Verbs such as **courir**, *to run*; **marcher**, *to walk*; **sauter**, *to jump* denote a **MODE** of motion and are therefore conjugated with **avoir**.

b. All verbs with a reflexive pronoun:

**Je me suis coupé.**

I cut myself.

**Ils se sont quittés.**

They left each other.

**Elle s'est demandé pourquoi.**

She wondered why.

## III. THE AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

1. The past participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with **être** (cf. page 65) is treated as an adjective and agrees in gender and number with the subject. (A verb is called intransitive when it cannot be followed by a direct object.)

**Il est arrivé.**

**Elle est arrivée.**

**Ils sont arrivés.**

**Elles sont arrivées.**

**Vous êtes arrivé(e)(s).** (Cf. Lesson Four, page 40.)

He (She, They, You) arrived.

2. The past participle of verbs conjugated with **avoir** agrees in gender and number with the PRECEDING DIRECT OBJECT. It never agrees with the direct object FOLLOWING the verb, nor with the indirect object in any position.

**Avez-vous trouvé les fleurs qu'ils  
ont apportées?**

**Je ne les ai pas vues.**

**Quelle robe avez-vous mise?**

*but*

**la dame à qui j'ai parlé**

**Elle ne leur a rien dit.**

**Nous avons vendu notre maison.**

Have you found the flowers  
which they brought?

I did not see them.

What dress did you put on?

the lady to whom I spoke

She did not say anything to  
them.

We sold our house.

NOTE. The past participle does not agree with the pronoun **en**, whatever the gender or number of its antecedent may be. **En** does not represent a direct object.

**Il a demandé de la viande et des  
légumes; lui en avez-vous  
donné?**

He asked for some meat and veg-  
etables; did you give him any?

3. The past participle of **faire** followed by an infinitive and the past participle of all impersonal verbs remain invariable.

<b>La maison qu'il s'est fait bâtir est trop petite.</b>	The house he had built for himself is too small.
<b>Il a pris toutes les précautions qu'il a fallu.</b>	He took all the precautions that were needed.

The past participle of a verb followed by an infinitive may remain invariable in all cases (Decree of 1901).

<b>Les enfants que j'ai vu jouer avaient l'air très heureux.</b>	The children whom I saw playing looked very happy.
--	--

4. *Agreement of the past participle of verbs conjugated with the reflexive pronoun.* To avoid making mistakes in the agreement of the past participle in compound tenses of verbs conjugated reflexively, it is essential that the sentence be analyzed to determine whether the pronoun is a direct or an indirect object in French.

a. If the verb without the reflexive pronoun cannot be followed by a direct object, i.e. is intransitive, the past participle remains invariable when the verb is used with a reflexive pronoun:

<b>Ils se sont parlé.</b>	They spoke to each other.
<b>Elle s'est nuie* en faisant cela.</b>	She harmed herself by doing that.

\* **Nuire** à is intransitive in French.

b. If the verb used with a reflexive pronoun is FOLLOWED BY A DIRECT OBJECT, the past participle remains invariable:

<b>Nous nous sommes acheté une nouvelle auto.</b>	We bought ourselves a new car.
<b>Elle s'est lavé les mains.</b>	She washed her hands.

c. If the verb used with a reflexive pronoun is PRECEDED BY A DIRECT OBJECT, the past participle agrees with the object:

<b>La maison que nous nous sommes achetée est trop petite.</b>	The house we bought is too small.
--	-----------------------------------

d. If the verb is transitive and has no direct object except the reflexive pronoun, the past participle agrees with the pronoun, that is, with the subject, as illustrated in the examples on the following page.



**Elles se sont lavées.**

They washed (themselves).

**Vous êtes-vous rencontrés en France?**

Did you meet each other in France?

**Nous nous sommes tenus prêts.**

We kept ourselves ready.

Note that in the examples above, the reflexive pronoun is the direct object of the verb. Note also that in Sections **c** and **d** just preceding, the agreement of the past participle follows the rule for verbs conjugated with **avoir**; the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object.

e. Verbs which are by nature essentially reflexive or which become essentially reflexive in certain idiomatic expressions (Section 2, page 64) are generally transitive; i.e. the reflexive pronoun is considered as the direct object. The past participle therefore agrees with the subject as in Section **d** just preceding.

**Elle ne s'est pas aperçue de votre arrivée.**

She did not notice your arrival.

**Ils se sont moqués de nous.**

They made fun of us.

**Nous nous sommes trompés.**

We made a mistake.

However, **se rendre compte**, to realize; **se plaire**, to enjoy oneself; **s'imaginer**, to imagine and a few other uncommon verbs, while reflexive in form are intransitive in use, and the participle is therefore invariable:

**Nous nous sommes rendu compte de notre erreur.**

We realized our mistake.

5. For the agreement of the past participle of verbs with multiple subjects or multiple direct objects, use the rule given for adjectives (Cf. Lesson Four, page 40).

**Mon père et ma mère sont partis.**

My father and mother have left.

**Voici la robe et le manteau que vous avez commandés.**

Here is the dress and coat which you ordered.

#### IV. THE INFINITIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS

1. The infinitive, not the present participle, must be used after all prepositions except one: the preposition **en** (*while*), which is followed by the present participle. (Other meanings of **en** are given in Lesson Sixteen.)

Il l'a dit sans réfléchir.	He said it without thinking.
Nous le verrons avant de partir.	We shall see him before leaving.
Je l'ai fait pour vous aider.	I did it in order to help you.

*but*

Il s'est fait mal en jouant.	He hurt himself while playing.
------------------------------	--------------------------------

2. The perfect infinitive (**avoir** or **être** plus the past participle) is required after the preposition **après**.

Nous ferons une promenade après avoir fini nos devoirs.	We shall take a walk after finish- ing our homework.
--	---

A present participle used instead of an active past participle (*having seen*) following a preposition in English, is usually rendered in French by a perfect infinitive.

Il a dû partir avant de l'avoir vu. He had to leave before seeing him.

NOTE. The prepositions **sans**, **avant de**, **pour**, and **afin de** can be followed by an infinitive construction only when the subject of the complementary infinitive is the same as that of the main verb.

#### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **partir**, **sortir**, **naître** (Table 1); **mourir**, **venir** (Table 2).

What forms of **mourir** and **venir** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

#### EXERCISE A

*Change the infinitives in parentheses to the Past Indefinite, using the proper auxiliary, the proper reflexive pronouns, and making the past participle agree wherever necessary; or translate words in parentheses.*

1. Elle (s'amuser) à la soirée que nous (donner). 2. Nous (rentrer) tard et nous (se coucher) tout de suite. 3. Ils (admirer) les belles gravures que vous leur (envoyer). 4. Mme Curie (naître) en Pologne mais elle (vivre<sup>1</sup>) et (mourir<sup>2</sup>) en France. 5. Nous (se raconter) des histoires (instead of working). 6. Lui avez-vous rendu la lampe qu'il vous (prêter)? 7. Ils (partir) de bonne heure (without saying) au revoir. 8. Ces deux enfants (like each other) beaucoup. 9. Elle s'excuse de (having been) si méchante. 10. Ils (se laver) les mains, puis ils (s'habiller). 11. Où sont le fauteuil et la chaise que vous (acheter)? 12. Elles (se douter)

de ce qui (arriver). 13. Jeanne (se brûler) gravement (while playing) avec des allumettes. 14. Nous leur (apporter) des fruits et elles les (accepter) avec plaisir. 15. Après (working) pendant deux heures, elle (aller) se promener. 16. Nous (se souvenir<sup>2</sup>) du conseil que vous nous (donner). 17. Elles (rester) seules toute la soirée. 18. Je vous téléphonerai (before leaving). 19. Jean, dites-moi où vous (aller) ce matin. 20. Henri et sa sœur (arriver) cette nuit. 21. Ils (se rendre compte) de leur impolitesse. 22. Elle (se lever) tôt (in order to take) le premier train. 23. Louise (tomber) et (se casser) le bras. 24. Aime-t-elle les livres que nous lui (envoyer)? 25. Il a répondu (without thinking). 26. Vous avez tort de (blame one another). 27. Avez-vous vu la maison qu'il (se faire<sup>2</sup>) bâtir? 28. (We wrote<sup>1</sup> each other) presque tous les jours. 29. Présentez-moi à la jeune fille avec laquelle vous (danser). 30. Ne leur montrez pas la lettre que nous (recevoir<sup>2</sup>).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

### TO RETURN: RETOURNER, REVENIR, RENTRER, RENDRE

**Rendre** means *to give back*. **Retourner** \* means *to go back* to a place mentioned. **Revenir** \* means *to come back* from or to a place. **Rentrer** \* means *to come (back) home* or *in, to go (back) home*; (**à la maison** or **chez** with a disjunctive pronoun, may be omitted after **rentrer**).

Il veut retourner en Europe.

He wants to return (go back) to Europe.

Il est revenu à New-York la semaine dernière.

He returned (came back) to New York last week.

Nous revenons de France.

We are returning (coming back) from France.

Il va pleuvoir, rentrons (à la maison).

It is going to rain, let us go in (go home).

Elle est rentrée tard hier soir.

She came in late last night.

Vous ne m'avez pas rendu mon dictionnaire.

You did not return (give me back) my dictionary.

\* Conjugated with être.

## TO TAKE; BRING; CARRY: PORTER, MENER

**Porter** and its compounds can only be used in the sense of *carrying*. **Mener** and its compounds mean *to lead, conduct, accompany*, and can apply only to persons or animals.

Portez cette lettre à la poste.

Take this letter to the post office.

Menez Jean chez le tailleur.

Take John to the tailor's.

Menez le cheval à l'écurie.

Take (lead) the horse to the stable.

**Apporter, amener** mean *to bring to, bring*.

Il vous a apporté des pêches.

He brought you some peaches.

Apportez votre violon.

Bring your violin (with you).

Il amènera ses amis.

He will bring his friends (with him).

**Emporter, emmener** mean *to take away, carry away, take with (along)*.

Il a emporté sa valise.

He took his suitcase (with him).

Emportez ces assiettes.

Take those plates away.

Je vous emmènerai au théâtre.

I shall take you (with me) to the theater.

Je vais faire une promenade,  
voulez-vous que j'emmène le  
chien?

I am going to take a walk; do  
you want me to take the dog?

Emmenez ces enfants, ils font  
trop de bruit.

Take those children away; they  
are making too much noise.

NOTE. The difference between **mener** and **emmener** may sometimes appear slight, but the prefix **em-** strongly suggests *away, with, along*. **Mener** cannot be used unless the destination is given in the same clause. Study the examples above and below:

Le colonel a mené son régiment  
au combat.

The colonel led his regiment into  
battle.

Il l'a mené chez le coiffeur.

He took him to the barber's.

J'emmènerai (NOT mènerai) les  
enfants.

I shall take the children (along,  
with me, away).

Si je vais au marché, je vous em-  
mènerai (NOT mènerai).

If I go to the market, I shall take  
you (along) with me.

TO TAKE: **PRENDRE**

*To take* meaning *to seize, lay hold of, appropriate, use, choose, etc.*, and when no motion from one place to another is involved, is translated **prendre**. Except in a few idiomatic uses, **prendre** cannot have a person as a direct object. (For impersonal *it takes*, cf. Lesson Nine, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS.)

**Prenez son chapeau.**

Take his hat.

**Nous prendrons les précautions nécessaires.**

We shall take the necessary precautions.

**Elle m'a pris tout mon argent.**

She took all my money from me.

**Prenez un siège.**

Take a seat.

**MONTÉ, DESCENDRE, SORTIR, RENTRER**

The verbs **monter** and **descendre**, less frequently **sortir**, **rentrer**, and **retourner** may be used as transitive verbs (conjugated with **avoir**) with the following meanings. See page 65 for the use of the words as *intransitive verbs*.

**monter**, to take (bring) up, carry up

**rentrer**, to bring in

**descendre**, to take (bring) down

**retourner**, to turn over

**sortir**, to take out

**Il a monté votre déjeuner.**

He carried up your breakfast.

**Ils ont descendu mon bureau.**

They brought my desk down.

**Elle a sorti son porte-monnaie.**

She took out her purse.

**Avez-vous rentré les chaises?**

Have you brought the chairs in?

**Il va pleuvoir.**

It is going to rain.

**J'ai retourné mon matelas.**

I turned over my mattress.

**TO STOP: S'ARRÊTER, ARRÊTER, CESSER**

**S'arrêter** is a reflexive verb meaning *to stop*. **S'arrêter de** before an infinitive is intransitive and means *to stop* in the sense of ceasing a motion, or an activity which is interrupted for a time. **Arrêter** is transitive and is used when *to stop* is followed by a direct object. It also means *to arrest*. **Cesser** (**de** before an infinitive) is used when *to stop* means *to bring to an end, come to an end, or discontinue*. **Cesser** does not usually apply to a verb of motion.

Nous nous sommes arrêtés au coin de la rue.	We stopped at the corner of the street.
Il s'est arrêté de parler.	He stopped talking.
J'ai arrêté la voiture au coin de la rue.	I stopped the car at the corner of the street.
Ils ont arrêté le voleur.	They arrested the thief.
Cessez de taquiner votre frère.	Stop teasing your brother.
L'orage a cessé.	The storm stopped.

## EXERCISE B

*Translate the English words in parentheses in the following sentences:*

1. Marie, (take) ces paquets à la cuisine. 2. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas (brought) votre femme? 3. Parce que sa mère l'a (taken) à la campagne. 4. Il courait trop vite, il n'a pas pu (stop). 5. M. Benoit est-il (returned) en Europe? 6. Oui, mais il n'a pas (taken) sa famille. 7. Demandez à Pierre de (bring down) mes valises. 8. Si vous êtes pressé, (take) un taxi. 9. Voulez-vous nous (bring) des serviettes? 10. Si vous allez à New-York, quand (will you return)? 11. (Do not take) ce chapeau, ce n'est pas le vôtre. 12. (We shall stop) de travailler à six heures. 13. Pouvez-vous m'aider à (carry up) ce fauteuil? 14. Le professeur (takes) souvent ses élèves au musée. 15. Il n'a pas (returned) les livres qu'il a empruntés. 16. Voulez-vous (stop) chez Jean en (returning) du bureau? 17. J'ai oublié de (bring up) le courrier du directeur. 18. Votre mère (has not come down) de sa chambre ce matin. 19. Ils sont (returned) de Boston par avion. 20. Je vous ai demandé de (take away) ces journaux. 21. (They have not brought down) leurs bagages. 22. Puisque vous allez en ville, (take) les enfants. 23. Vous ne devinerez jamais à quelle heure ils sont (come home). 24. Vous devriez (stop) de fumer. 25. Vous auriez dû (stop) la pendule avant de partir.

## TRANSLATION

## ODILE BASTIAN

Odile: toute l'enfance de Jean était pleine de ce nom-là. La fille de M. Bastian avait été la compagne de jeu de Lucienne et de Jean.

autrefois, quand l'évolution de M. Oberlé n'était point encore établie et connue dans le pays. Lorsque M. Oberlé se fut rallié tout à fait à l'administration allemande, les Bastian furent parmi ceux qui jugèrent le plus sévèrement sa conduite.

Mme Bastian surtout, qui avait eu trois frères tués au service de la France, ne pouvait pardonner à Joseph Oberlé d'avoir renié son passé et son pays, et d'avoir fait élever ses enfants en Allemagne.

A l'école et plus tard à l'université, Odile était la vision charmante qu'il revoyait lorsqu'il pensait à Alsheim. Jean l'avait quittée comme il avait quitté l'Alsace, sans pouvoir l'oublier. Il avait pensé: « Si elle se marie, ce sera la preuve qu'elle n'a jamais songé à moi. » Elle ne s'était pas mariée. Mais peut-être était-elle fiancée, rien ne l'indiquait cependant. Un peu inquiet tout de même, Jean se rendit chez les Bastian.

M. Bastian était sur le seuil de sa porte. En reconnaissant Jean il eut un geste de surprise. Il pensait: « Voilà près de dix ans que ta famille et la mienne ne se voient plus. » Néanmoins il fit entrer Jean au salon où une femme d'une cinquantaine d'années était assise et cousait. En voyant entrer Jean, elle avait laissé tomber son ouvrage, muette de surprise, se demandant pourquoi son mari amenait chez elle le fils d'un père renégat.

M. Bastian s'excusa:

— On m'a dit que Jean était de retour à Alsheim et que nous avions lieu de nous en réjouir; on me l'a représenté comme un des nôtres. . . .

Les lèvres silencieuses de l'Alsacienne eurent un vague sourire d'incrédulité qui mourut aussitôt. Et elle se remit à coudre.

Jean se détourna, et, pâle, plus malheureux qu'irrité, dit à demi-voix à M. Bastian:

— Je savais que nos deux familles étaient divisées, mais pas au point où je le vois. . . . Pardonnez-moi d'être venu.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**enfance**, childhood

**compagne de jeu**, playmate

**se marier**, to marry, get married

**tout de même**, just the same

**se rendre**, to go

**près de**, near, nearly

**faire entrer**, to show in

**cinquantaine**, about fifty

**se demander**, to wonder (*literally* to ask oneself; *intransitive in French*)  
**s'excuser (de)**, to apologize (for)  
**se réjouir de**, to rejoice, be glad of  
**se remettre à**, to start again, resume  
**se détourner**, to turn away  
**à demi-voix**, in an undertone

**se coucher**, to go to bed, lie down  
**se perdre**, to get lost  
**regretter (de)**, to be sorry (to)  
**se souvenir de**, to remember  
**au lieu de**, instead of  
**avoir lieu de**, to have cause to

## EXERCISE C

*Use the Past Indefinite for the past tenses unless otherwise directed.*

1. John hopes that Odile has not married during his absence. 2. He wonders whether she will recognize her former friend. 3. M. Bastian and M. Oberlé no longer speak to each other. 4. Mme Bastian has remained faithful to old Alsace. 5. Three of her brothers died in the service of France. 6. She is surprised that her husband should bring John into her house. 7. Odile was (*imperfect*) not in the living-room when John came in. 8. Mme Bastian and John did not say anything to each other. 9. John apologized for having come without being invited. 10. I fear that you will get lost if you go out alone. 11. If you wish, I shall take Mary with me; she knows the way. 12. We are sorry that you cannot return to Europe now. 13. Why did you take away the lamp which I brought down from my room? 14. After finishing our lessons, we went into the garden. 15. At what time did they come home and when did they go to bed? 16. We said frankly to each other what (*ce que*) we thought (*imperfect*). 17. He never returned the table which he had borrowed from (*à*) Paul. 18. She fell and broke her arm while going down the stairs. 19. Have you taken the gloves which I left on my desk? 20. My mother went to New York but did not take my sisters. 21. Louise and Henry returned from Chicago a week ago. 22. She said that she wanted (*imperfect*) new shoes; did she buy any? 23. They began to play instead of doing their homework (*cf. VOCABULARY*). 24. After leaving our friends, we went back to our house. 25. Louise, it is time to take the children to school. 26. Before going to school, let us take a walk in the park. 27. We shall not take a trunk, for we shall be back in a few days. 28. I want you to take this chair to (*dans*) your father's room. 29. We are glad that you can<sup>2</sup> bring your friends to our party. 30. Louise is twenty; she has become a very serious young girl.



# LESSON SEVEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE PAST INDEFINITE AND THE IMPERFECT

1. The Past Indefinite, or **passé composé**, denotes an action which took place and was completed in the past, but the effect of which is still felt. The action is viewed by the speaker as being related to the present time, or as having taken place in a period which extends into the present.

The Past Indefinite is used:

a. To translate the English Present Perfect, *to have* + past participle.

**Nous avons fini nos devoirs.** We have finished our homework.

**Nous n'avons pas encore lu ce roman.** We have not read this novel yet.

**L'avez-vous vu aujourd'hui?** Have you seen him today?

b. To denote that an action or a succession of actions took place and were completed at a given or implied moment in the past.

**Ils ont acheté une maison.** They bought a house.

**Quand l'ont-ils achetée?** When did they buy it?

**Ils l'ont achetée le mois dernier.** They bought it last month.

**Ils sont partis le 15 et sont revenus le 20.** They left the 15th and came back the 20th.

**Elle a fini ses devoirs de bonne heure et est allée au cinéma.** She finished her homework early and went to the movies.

c. To denote that an action was performed, or a condition existed, within a specified and limited period of time. Both the beginning and the end can be visualized. Compare the examples on the next page.

<b>Nous avons travaillé tout l'été.</b>	We worked the whole summer.
<b>Ils ont passé deux ans au Portugal.</b>	They spent two years in Portugal.
<b>J'ai été très occupé le mois dernier.</b>	I was very busy last month.

d. To denote that the same action was repeated a given number of times within a limited period expressed or implied by the speaker.

<b>Pendant notre séjour à Paris nous avons écrit trois fois à nos parents.</b>	During our stay in Paris we wrote three times to our parents.
<b>A-t-il téléphoné à Paul? Oui, il lui a téléphoné plusieurs fois.</b>	Did he telephone Paul? Yes, he telephoned him several times.

2. The main characteristic of the Imperfect is that neither the beginning nor the end of the past action or state is visualized.

The Imperfect is used:

a. To denote that an action was going on, or that a state was already in existence at a given moment in the past.

<b>Il travaillait encore à minuit.</b>	<i>He was still working at midnight.</i>
<b>Que disiez-vous quand je suis entré?</b>	<i>What were you saying when I came in?</i>
<b>Il faisait beau quand je suis arrivé à New-York.</b>	<i>The weather was fine when I arrived in New York.</i>

NOTE. The English progressive form of the Imperfect, *was (were) + present participle*, is translated by the Imperfect.

b. To describe a state, state of mind, characteristics, conditions, or circumstances existing in the past without any indication of a beginning or an end. Thus, in narratives, the Imperfect is used for the description of the characters and of the background for the action. The action, in formal narrative, is usually expressed by the Past Definite; in informal narrative by the Past Indefinite. Note also the next page.

<b>Il était tard et cependant nous ne voulions pas dormir.</b>	It was late and yet we did not want to sleep.
<b>Il n'était plus jeune, mais il était toujours vigoureux.</b>	He was no longer young, but he was still vigorous.

**Je ne savais pas la nouvelle.**

**Il monta sur le pont au petit jour.**

**Il était environ quatre heures du matin, une brume épaisse couvrait le fleuve; le flot mugissait; la voix du vieux Rhin racontait l'éternelle légende des générations éteintes. M. Furbach, ayant tourné la tête, aperçut un sombre amas de ruines sur la rive droite du fleuve. . . .** (*Formal narrative*)

**Hier nous sommes allés à la pêche. Il faisait froid, la mer était agitée, le poisson ne mordait pas. Au bout de deux heures nous avons décidé de rentrer.** (*Informal narrative*)

**I did not know the news.**

**He went up on deck at daybreak** (*action*). It was about four in the morning, a thick mist covered the river; the waves roared; the voice of the old Rhine told the eternal legend of extinct generations (*description*). Mr. Furbach, having turned his head, saw a mass of ruins on the right bank of the river (*action resumed*).

**Yesterday we went fishing** (*action*). It was cold, the sea was rough, the fish were not biting (*description*). At the end of two hours we decided to return (*action*).

NOTE. Verbs like **penser, espérer, savoir, vouloir, pouvoir** generally indicate a state of mind for which no beginning or end can be visualized, and therefore are frequently used in the Imperfect. But if the beginning or the end of the act is visualized, the Past Indefinite is used.

**J'espérais vous voir hier.**

**Il croyait que vous étiez ici.**

**Elle voulait s'en aller.**

**Il savait que j'avais raison.**

**Je pensais à vous quand votre lettre est arrivée.**

**I hoped to see you yesterday.**

**He thought you were here.**

**She wanted to go away.**

**He knew that I was right.**

**I was thinking of you when your letter arrived.**

*but*

**J'ai pensé à vous hier soir.**

**I thought of you last night.**

c. To describe an action or a condition that was customary and that recurred with sufficient regularity to be considered a habit.

**Quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais souvent au théâtre.**

**A la pension nous nous levions tous les jours à 6 heures.**

**When I was in Paris, I used to go to the theater often.**

**At boarding school we used to get up every day at 6 o'clock.**

<b>Pendant notre séjour à Paris</b>	During our stay in Paris we wrote
<b>nous écrivions à nos parents</b>	(used to write) our parents
<b>trois fois par semaine.*</b>	three times a week.
<b>Cet été je lisais toute la matinée,</b>	This summer I used to read all
<b>et l'après-midi je faisais de</b>	morning, and in the afternoon
<b>longues promenades.</b>	I would take long walks.

\* In this sentence, a habitual or recurring weekly action in the past is implied; the additional information **trois fois** does not affect the meaning which is one of regular weekly recurrence.

If the Past Indefinite were used, it would present the number of separate acts as a single unit and not as a series of occurrences constituting a habit.

NOTE. The English past form *used to* or *would* + infinitive is translated by the Imperfect. (Do not confuse *would* indicating past recurrence with *would* used for the Conditional.)

3. From the preceding examples (Sections 1 and 2) it appears that, whereas certain verb forms in English have only one possible translation, others are translated sometimes by the Imperfect, sometimes by the Past Indefinite.

There is no hesitation for the following English forms:

<i>Perfect:</i> I have spoken.	<i>Past Indefinite:</i> J'ai parlé.
<i>Imperfect:</i> { I was speaking.	<i>Imperfect:</i> Je parlais.
{ I used to speak.	
{ I would speak.	

But there might be some hesitation with the following forms which may express either the Perfect or the Imperfect:

I spoke.	{ (?) J'ai parlé.
	or
	{ (?) Je parlais.
I did not speak.	{ (?) Je n'ai pas parlé.
	or
	{ (?) Je ne parlais pas.
Did I speak?	{ (?) Ai-je parlé?
	or
	{ (?) Parlais-je?

The kind of past action expressed by the English verb is clear from the context, but the proper tense must be used in French to express that past action, following the rules given in Sections 1 and 2.

A safe rule of thumb is to substitute for the doubtful verb the form *was (doing)*, *used to (do)*, or *would (do)*. If the substitution is possible, and consistent with the meaning of the sentence (never mind if it sounds clumsy), use the Imperfect in French. Otherwise use the Past Indefinite:

When I *saw* her, she *wore* her new coat.

We *did not go* to the movies last Saturday.

When she was in college, she *spoke* French very well, but she *did not speak* so fluently as her brother.

This morning, every time I *tried* to read, someone *interrupted* me.

saw = was seeing, used to see?

No. Then the Past Indefinite is used. Wore = was wearing?

Yes. Then use the Imperfect.

Did not go = were not going, did not used to go? No. Then the Past Indefinite.

Spoke = used to speak? Yes.

Then the Imperfect. Did not speak = did not used to speak?

Yes. Then the Imperfect.

Tried, interrupted = would try, would interrupt? Yes. Then the Imperfect.

4. *The Imperfect in conditional sentences.* The Imperfect must be used in a *si* clause in French if the result clause is expressed in the Present of the Conditional. The Conditional CANNOT be used in the *si* clause in French.

**Si vous étiez riche, que feriez-vous?**

**Si vous lui donniez votre montre, il en prendrait bien soin.**

If you were rich, what would you do?

If you gave (should, were to give) him your watch, he would take good care of it.

#### 5. *The past tenses with depuis*

a. With **depuis** or **il y avait . . . que** the Imperfect is used to translate the English Progressive Pluperfect. The Imperfect shows that an action or a condition which had begun in the past was still going on, or in existence, at a given moment in the past. See top of the next page.

<b>Depuis quand l'attendiez-vous?</b>	How long (since when) had you
<b>Depuis deux heures et demie.</b>	been waiting for him? Since half past two.
<b>Il y avait deux heures que je</b>	I had been reading for two hours
<b>lisais quand il est arrivé.</b>	when he arrived.
<b>Elle était malade depuis une se-</b>	She had been ill for a week when
<b>maine quand nous avons fait</b>	we sent for the doctor.
<b>venir le médecin.</b>	

b. In Lesson One, we saw that the Present is used with **depuis** and its synonyms when an action which began in the past is still going on in the Present.

But the Past Indefinite must be used:

(1) When the action has ceased to take place for, or since, a stated time.

<b>Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis une se-</b>	I have not seen him for a week.
<b>maine.</b>	
<b>Il y a deux mois que nous n'avons</b>	We have not received any letters
<b>pas reçu de lettres.</b>	for two months.

(2) When the action which began in the past is not carried through to the present, or has occurred at intervals, that is, has not been continuous.

<b>J'ai été très occupé depuis que</b>	I have been very busy since we
<b>nous nous sommes vus.</b>	saw each other (but not con-
	tinuously and no longer so).
<b>Je l'ai vu trois fois depuis son re-</b>	I have seen him three times since
<b>tour.</b>	his return.

## II. THE PAST DEFINITE

The Past Definite (**passé simple**) (*cf.* Appendix I), like the Past Indefinite, denotes that an action took place and was completed in the past, but with this difference, that the action is viewed as having no effects in the present time.

The Past Definite is used in narratives when presenting a series of events which took place in a period wholly in the past. It is seldom

used in conversation or informal writing, especially in the first and second persons, since in such cases we generally deal with events whose effects extend into the present time. (*Cf.* preceding examples for the Past Indefinite.)

But, when the speaker (or writer) relates events of his own life sufficiently remote that he may consider them objectively, the Past Definite may be used even in the first person. In such a case the speaker considers the events as belonging to a period of his life entirely past, with no relation to the present.

The Past Indefinite is used rather than the Past Definite to state isolated facts, whether they are related or not to the present.

Où Napoléon est-il mort?  
Il est mort à Ste Hélène.

Where did Napoleon die?  
He died at St. Helena.

*Example of a formal narrative with the Past Definite and the Imperfect:*

Dès la gare, ils furent consternés par la bousculade des gens dans la salle des bagages, et le tumulte des voitures enchevêtrées devant la sortie. Il pleuvait. On ne pouvait trouver de fiacre. Il fallut courir loin, les bras cassés par les paquets trop lourds. Aucun cocher ne répondait à leurs appels. Enfin, ils réussirent à en arrêter un, qui menait une vieille patache d'une saleté repoussante. En hissant leurs paquets, ils laissèrent tomber un rouleau de couvertures dans la boue.

Right from the station, they were dismayed by the jostling crowd of people in the baggage room, and the noise of tangled vehicles in front of the exit. It was raining. They could not find a cab. They had to run a long distance, their arms broken by the too heavy bundles. No driver would answer their calls. Finally, they succeeded in stopping one, who drove a rickety old coach of a repelling filthiness. While loading their bundles, they dropped a roll of rugs in the mud.

Il pleuvait, on ne pouvait trouver, ne répondait, qui menait describe the conditions and circumstances of the background of the action; ils furent consternés, il fallut courir, ils réussirent, ils laissèrent tomber, express the action.

In the exercises the student will use the Past Definite only when directed to do so, but he **MUST** learn the conjugation of that tense in order to be able to identify it in his reading.

### III. THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

In a subordinate clause requiring the Subjunctive, the Perfect Subjunctive (*cf.* Appendix I, Section I) translates the English Past and Future Perfect, or an English Subjunctive when the main clause is in the Present Indicative. The time expressed by the verb in the Subjunctive (or by the verb and an expression of time) is therefore past or future perfect in relation to the tense of the verb in the main clause.

<b>Je suis heureux que vous soyez venu.</b>	I am happy that you came.
<b>Il craint que vous n'ayez pas compris.</b>	He fears that you did not understand.
<b>Je doute qu'ils aient fini quand vous arriverez.</b>	I doubt that they will have finished when you arrive.

### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **connaître**, **sentir** (Table 1); **savoir**, **pleuvoir** (Table 2).

What forms of **savoir** cannot be derived from the past participle?

What are the endings of the Imperfect and the Conditional?

From what principal part is the Imperfect derived? The Conditional?

### EXERCISE A

*Translate the words in parentheses or change the infinitives to the proper tenses.* 1. A-t-elle trouvé ce qu'elle (chercher)? 2. Il (pleuvoir) quand je me (lever) hier matin. 3. Combien de fois (did you go) au cinéma cette semaine? 4. Il (espérer) que vous auriez fini. 5. Nous parlions de vous quand vous (entrer). 6. (Did they come?) à votre conférence? 7. Quand je n'étais pas sage, mon père me (punir). 8. Ils (partir) de bonne heure hier matin. 9. Je (dormir) depuis à peine quelques minutes



quand il m'a appelé. 10. Si vous (listened), vous sauriez de quoi il s'agit. 11. De temps en temps (he would look at) Jeanne et lui (sourire). 12. (He has not gone back) en France depuis plus de trois ans. 13. Elle m'a dérangé pendant que je (préparer) mes leçons. 14. Je regrette que vous (perdre) votre porte-monnaie. 15. Si (he should arrive) maintenant, je ne pourrais pas le recevoir. 16. Pourquoi n'a-t-elle pas acheté le chapeau qu'elle (désirer)? 17. Parce qu'elle (décider) qu'il (être) trop cher. 18. (I have been waiting) depuis une heure. Que (were you doing)? 19. (We used to see<sup>2</sup>) votre sœur très souvent. 20. Je suis très heureux que (you have received<sup>2</sup>) de leurs nouvelles. 21. Ce pauvre homme (has not eaten) depuis trois jours. 22. Que feriez-vous si (you were) à ma place? 23. Il nous a grondés parce que nous ne (savoir<sup>2</sup>) pas nos leçons. 24. Je (croire) au contraire que vous aviez bien travaillé. 25. Qu'est-ce qu'il vous (raconter) quand je suis entré? 26. Si je vous le (dire), vous ne le croiriez pas. 27. Enfin, vous voici! Je (commencer) à être inquiet. 28. L'année dernière nous (aller) trois fois à New-York. 29. Il (vivre) à Paris depuis dix ans quand la guerre (éclater). 30. Je le (connaître<sup>1</sup>) très bien il y a quelques années.

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

### TO KNOW: SAVOIR,<sup>2</sup> CONNAITRE

**Savoir** is used when *to know* means *to know about, be aware of, know by heart, know through study*. It is not generally used when talking of persons, animals, or concrete objects.

**Il sait sa leçon.**

He knows his lesson.

**Nous savons ce qu'il a fait.**

We know what he has done.

**Je sais la réponse à cette question.**

I know the answer to that question.

**Connaître** is used when *to know* means *to be acquainted or familiar with, to recognize*.

**Connaissez-vous cette dame?**

Do you know that lady?

**Je connais cet opéra.**

I know this opera. (It's familiar.)

**Je ne connaissais pas ce jardin.**

I did not know that garden.

*To know how:* *How* is not translated when *to know how* means ability to do something. But when *how* means in what way or manner, by what means, it is translated **comment**.

Elle sait chanter.

She knows how to sing.

*but*

Je sais comment vous avez déchiré votre pantalon.

I know how you tore your trousers.

Note that, in the second example, *how* does not modify *know* but *tore*, as it would in: How did you tear your trousers?

#### CAN: SAVOIR, POUVOIR <sup>2</sup>

When *can* means *to know how*, it is translated by **savoir**, otherwise, by **pouvoir**.

Savent-ils jouer au tennis?

Can they (do they know how to) play tennis?

Oui, mais ils ne peuvent pas jouer ce matin.

Yes, but they cannot (are unable to) play this morning.

#### TO HAPPEN: SE PASSER, ARRIVER

**Se passer** refers to an unspecified happening. It also suggests that the happening extends over a period of time. **Se passer** cannot be followed by an indirect object.

**Se passer** is generally used with the impersonal subject **il**, or when **ce qui** (*what = that which*) is the subject.

Il se passe quelque chose.

Something is happening (going on).

Dites-moi ce qui s'est passé pendant mon absence.

Tell me what happened during my absence (*i.e.* the various events at various times).

Que se passe-t-il?

*or*

Qu'est-ce qui se passe?

What is happening (going on)?

Note that the essentially reflexive verb **se passer de** does not mean *to happen*, but *to go without*.

**Arriver** is used when speaking of a specific happening. **Arriver**, not **se passer**, must be used when *to happen* has an indirect object.

**Arriver** is generally used with the impersonal subject **il**, or when **ce qui** (*what = that which*) is the subject. It may also be used as in English with the happening as a subject.

Il est arrivé un accident à Paul.	An accident happened to Paul.
Un accident est arrivé devant notre porte.	An accident happened in front of our door.
Il a appris ce qui est arrivé.	He has learned what happened (referring to one particular and specific event).

**TO EXPECT: S'ATTENDRE À, COMPTER, AVOIR L'INTENTION DE, ATTENDRE**

**S'attendre à** can only be used when the event is beyond the control of the speaker.

Il ne s'attendait pas à être renvoyé.	He did not expect to be dismissed.
Elle s'attend à de mauvaises nouvelles.	She is expecting bad news.

When the event depends on the speaker's will or decision, **compter** or **avoir l'intention de** must be used. **Compter** is also used when *to expect* expresses the speaker's wish, hope, or anticipation.

Je compte (j'ai l'intention d') aller en Europe.	I expect (intend) to go to Europe.
Je compte le voir ce soir.	I expect (hope) to see him to-night.

**Attendre** is used when *to expect* has a direct object denoting a person or a material thing. The context usually shows whether **attendre** means *to expect* or *to wait for*.

Êtes-vous surpris de me voir?	Are you surprised to see me?
Non, je vous attendais.	No, I was expecting you.
J'attends un télégramme cet après-midi.	I am expecting a telegram this afternoon.
J'attends votre réponse.	I am waiting for your answer.

NOTE. When the subject of a subordinate clause following **s'attendre à** is different from the subject of the main clause, it must be introduced by **ce que** or **ce qui**. (The use of the Indicative or the Subjunctive after **s'attendre à** will be discussed in Lesson Fourteen.)

<b>Elle ne s'attendait pas à ce que</b>	She did not expect you would
<b>vous lui écriviez.</b>	write her.

#### TO TELL: RACONTER, DIRE

**Raconter** is used to translate *to tell about* and also when *to tell* means to tell a story, relate in detail, give an account. In other cases *to tell* is translated **dire**.

<b>Racontez-nous vos aventures.</b>	Tell us about your adventures.
<b>Il leur a raconté une histoire.</b>	He told them a story.

*but*

<b>Lui avez-vous dit que nous étions</b>	Did you tell him that we had
<b>arrivés?</b>	arrived?

#### TO BE: FAIRE

**Faire** with the impersonal subject **il** is used to translate *to be* in expressions describing weather, atmospheric, or light conditions.

<b>Quel temps fait-il?</b>	What is the weather?
<b>Il fait beau (mauvais).</b>	The weather is fine (bad).
<b>Il fait chaud.</b>	It is hot.
<b>Il faisait du brouillard.</b>	It was foggy.
<b>Il ne fait pas de vent.</b>	It is not windy.
<b>Il fait jour.</b>	It is light (daylight).
<b>Fait-il sombre (noir)?</b>	Is it dark?

NOTE 1. The following adjectives used with *to be* are translated by **faire** + a partitive noun: *sunny*, **du soleil**; *windy*, **du vent**; *stormy*, **de l'orage**; *foggy*, **du brouillard**; *lightning*, **des éclairs**.

NOTE 2. *To rain*, *to snow*, and *to freeze* are translated **pleuvoir** (Appendix), **neiger**, and **geler**. *To thunder* is **faire du tonnerre** or **tonner**.

<b>Il pleuvait.</b>	It was raining.
<b>Il fait du tonnerre (il tonne).</b>	It is thundering.
<b>Il a beaucoup plu cette année.</b>	It rained a lot this year.

## EXERCISE B

1. (I expect) aller lui faire visite cet après-midi. 2. (Tell) à Jean tout ce qui (happened) pendant son absence. 3. Nous espérons qu' (the weather will be fine) demain. 4. Je crains qu' (it will be cold) et qu' (it will snow). 5. Lui avez-vous (told) que j'avais téléphoné? 6. (We expect that) il soit en retard. 7. Quel (weather will it be) demain? Je crois qu' (it will rain). 8. Qu'est-ce que c'est que tout ce bruit? Allez voir ce qui (is happening). 9. (She knows how) lire et écrire à l'âge de cinq ans. 10. N'allez pas sur le lac; (it is too windy). 11. (Do you know) cet homme? (Do you know) où il demeure? 12. J'avais prévu depuis longtemps ce qui (happened) à votre cousin. 13. Vous trouverez une situation facilement si vous (can) parler espagnol. 14. (It happens) quelquefois que les plus braves aient peur. 15. (I do not know) quelle actrice je préfère. 16. Voulez-vous (know how) j'ai fait cette erreur? 17. (I cannot) lire le nom de cette rue; (it is too dark). 18. (We expect to) recevoir un télégramme. (*Two ways*) 19. (You know) les œuvres de Shakespeare, n'est-ce pas? 20. (Do not tell) à mon père ce qui m' (happened). 21. (I cannot) vous aider, je suis trop fatigué. 22. Pourquoi ces gens courent-ils? Qu'est-ce qui (is going on)? 23. Mettez votre imperméable; (it is raining and it is windy). 24. (I do not know) cette symphonie, (do you know) qui l'a composée? 25. Je (can) jouer du piano, mais (I cannot) jouer ce morceau; il est trop difficile.

## TRANSLATION

ODILE BASTIAN (*suite*)

— Au revoir, M. Bastian, je comprends que je suis de trop ici, je ne veux pas rester plus longtemps, je m'en vais.

— Tout à l'heure, mon garçon. Tu ne peux pas refuser la politesse que je fais à tous ceux qui entrent ici. Accepte de boire avec moi, Jean Oberlé, ou bien nous ne nous reverrons plus.

Et M. Bastian appela:

— Odile, apporte-nous du meilleur vin que j'aie ici.

Odile était entrée. Elle était bien la même jeune fille qui vivait dans le souvenir de Jean depuis des années, et le suivait à travers le monde. Elle était belle, d'une beauté forte et lumineuse. Elle ressemblait aux statues de l'Alsace qu'on voit dans les monuments et dans les images du souvenir français.

Elle avait souri en reconnaissant Jean, puis le sourire s'était effacé, quand elle avait vu sa mère penchée sur son travail, muette. Alors les mots qu'elle allait dire s'étaient arrêtés avant d'arriver à ses lèvres, et Odile Bastian avait simplement et silencieusement obéi. . . .

M. Bastian leva son verre et dit sérieusement :

— Je bois à ta santé, Jean, à ton retour à Alsheim !

Mais Jean, sans répondre directement, et dans le silence de tous, regardant Odile, dit à haute voix :

— Moi, je bois à la terre d'Alsace !

Et quelqu'un avait compris que la terre d'Alsace était ici personnifiée et présente. Les yeux d'Odile eurent une lueur vive.

Et ce fut tout. Madame Bastian n'avait pas même levé la tête. Odile n'avait pas dit une parole. Jean salua et sortit.

M. Bastian le rejoignit dehors :

— Il ne faut pas en vouloir à ma femme à cause de l'accueil qu'elle t'a fait. Jusqu'à ce que le doute qui pèse sur toi soit levé, tu es celui qui a été élevé par l'Allemagne. . . .

— Vous me connaîtrez plus tard, dit Jean.

Pendant le reste de l'hiver il n'avait revu Odile qu'à l'église. Le dimanche, dans la nef blanchie à la chaux, il attendait l'arrivée de la jeune fille. Pour gagner le banc réservé à sa famille, elle devait passer tout près de Jean. Elle passait, mais celle dont les yeux ne parlaient jamais en vain, ne le regardait pas. Elle n'avait pas l'air de se douter qu'il était là.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**je suis de trop**, I am not wanted  
**tout à l'heure** (*as used in the text*), just  
 a moment  
**faire une politesse**, to extend a courtesy  
**ou bien**, or else

**les monuments et les images du sou-**  
**venir français**, *i.e.*, French monu-  
 ments and pictures in the minds of  
 Frenchmen who remember  
**s'effacer**, to fade, vanish

à haute voix, aloud  
 en vouloir à, to feel resentful towards,  
     he angry with  
 à cause de, because of  
 le doute, suspicion  
 blanchie à la chaux, whitewashed

gagner, to reach  
 avoir l'air (de), to seem; (*with an ad-*  
     *jective*) to look  
 se douter (de), to suspect  
 s'agir de, to be a matter of  
 faire visite à, to pay a visit to, call on

## EXERCISE C

1. When he went to call on Mr. Bastian, John hoped to see Odile.  
 2. Formerly, his family used to see <sup>1</sup> the Bastians very often. 3. Odile's mother was sewing <sup>1</sup> when they entered the living-room. 4. Mrs. Bastian did not say a single word during John's visit. 5. He did not expect such a (**un tel**) welcome and was very embarrassed. 6. Mr. Bastian tried to explain that she had no grudge against John. 7. John read in Odile's eyes that she did not share her mother's feelings. 8. She understood what (**ce que**) he meant when he drank to Alsace. 9. He did not know that his family and the Bastians no longer saw each other. 10. Now he realizes that many things happened during his absence. 11. He looked sad and discouraged when he left the house. 12. We are sorry that he was unable <sup>2</sup> to speak to Odile. 13. Have you received <sup>2</sup> any news from your mother since she left? 14. No, we have not received anything for a week. 15. The sun shone, the sky was blue, birds sang, she was happy. 16. She was resting under a tree and thought that life was beautiful. 17. How long had you been waiting when Henry came home? 18. You told Mr. Dupuis that I can speak French, didn't you? 19. She has not bought any new clothes since last spring. 20. What happened to Paul? Why didn't he come to our party last night? 21. We did a lot of errands while we were in town yesterday. 22. Can we repeat to Mary what you said? Does she know how to keep a secret? 23. Several years ago, I used to play (**au**) tennis every day. 24. Yes, and I remember that you did not play very well. 25. Yet, sometimes I would beat your brother who played better than you. 26. He does not know how to announce the bad news to his friend. 27. What was the weather in Boston? It was cold and it was raining. 28. By the way, tell us about your trip; did you have a good time? (*Cf. VOCABULARY.*) 29. She remembered that she needed some stamps and stopped at the post office. 30. If you should tell that story, nobody would believe you.

# LESSON EIGHT

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

TABLE OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

<i>Subject</i>		<i>Direct Object</i>		<i>Indirect Object</i>		<i>Reflexive (direct or indirect object)</i>	
<b>je</b>	I	<b>me</b>	me	<b>me</b>	to me	<b>me</b>	myself
<b>tu</b>	thou	<b>te</b>	thee	<b>te</b>	to thee	<b>te</b>	thyself
<b>il</b>	he	<b>le</b>	him, it	<b>lui</b>	to him	<b>se</b>	himself (it-)
<b>elle</b>	she	<b>la</b>	her, it	<b>lui</b>	to her	<b>se</b>	herself (it-)
<b>on *</b>	one						
<b>nous</b>	we	<b>nous</b>	us	<b>nous</b>	to us	<b>nous</b>	ourselves
<b>vous</b>	you	<b>vous</b>	you	<b>vous</b>	to you	<b>vous</b>	yourselves
<b>ils</b>	they	<b>les</b>	them	<b>leur</b>	to them	<b>se</b>	themselves
<b>elles</b>	they	<b>les</b>	them	<b>leur</b>	to them	<b>se</b>	themselves

and the conjunctives **y** and **en**

\* The pronoun **on** is used to translate the indefinite *one, we, you, they, people* when there is no definite antecedent mentioned.

**On n'est pas toujours heureux.** One is not always happy.  
**On ne sait jamais.** You never know. (One never knows.)

#### A. Personal Pronoun Objects

1. Pronoun objects and reflexive pronouns immediately precede the verb except in the imperative affirmative. They retain the same position whether the verb is in the interrogative or in the negative. In compound tenses the pronouns precede the auxiliary verb.

**Je le vois.**

I see it (him).

**Je ne le vois pas.**

I do not see it (him).



<b>Ne le voyez-vous pas?</b>	Don't you see it (him)?
<b>Je lui ai parlé.</b>	I spoke to him (to her).
<b>Ne leur avez-vous pas parlé?</b>	Didn't you speak to them?
<b>Ne nous dérangez pas.</b>	Do not disturb us.
<b>Se blâme-t-elle?</b>	Does she blame herself?

2. When two pronoun objects, both of the third person, are governed by the same verb, the direct object precedes the indirect: **le lui**, *it to him*; **la leur**, *it to them*; etc.

<b>Nous le lui donnons.</b>	We give it to him.
<b>Il ne les leur a pas donnés.</b>	He did not give them to them.

But, if the pronouns are of different persons, they are placed in the order of precedence, *i.e.*, first or second before third: **me le**, *it to me*; **vous les**, *them to you*; etc. This rule applies only when the direct object is in the third person.

<b>Il nous les donnera.</b>	He will give them to us.
<b>Vous les a-t-il donnés?</b>	Did he give them to you?

WARNING. Remember that *to* is frequently omitted in English with an indirect object pronoun.

<b>Lui donnerez-vous cet argent?</b>	Will you give <i>him</i> this money? (give this money <i>to</i> him?)
--------------------------------------	--

3. The reflexive pronouns, direct or indirect object, precede **le**, **la**, **les**.

<b>Ils se les lavent. (les mains)</b>	They are washing them. ( <i>their hands</i> )
<b>Nous nous les sommes montrés.</b>	We showed them to each other.

#### B. Y and en

The conjunctives **y** and **en** follow all the other pronoun objects and **en** always comes last.

<b>Nous lui en enverrons.</b>	We shall send him some.
<b>Je les y ai vus.</b>	I saw them there.
<b>Nous y en avons mis.</b>	We put some there.
<b>Ils nous y en enverront.</b>	They will send us some there.

1. **Y** as an adverb means *there*. It refers to a place mentioned or replaces a noun preceded by a preposition of place such as **à, sur, dans, contre**, etc. **Y** must be used in French whether *there* is expressed or understood in English.

**Viendrez-vous à New-York?**

Will you come to *New York*?

Oui, j'y viendrai la semaine prochaine.

Yes, I shall come (*there*) next week.

Alors je vous y verrai.

Then I shall see you *there*.

Êtes-vous dans votre chambre?

Are you *in your room*?

J'y suis.

I am (*there, in it*).

Êtes-vous allé en Europe?

Did you go to *Europe*?

Non, je n'y suis pas allé.

No, I did not (*go there*).

Je les y enverrai.

I shall send them *there*.

NOTE 1. Notice that in English the auxiliary verb is sufficient in an answer to a question, but in French the complete verb must be repeated with the necessary conjunctive pronouns.

**Resterez-vous à Boston?**

Shall you stay in *Boston*?

J'y resterai.

I shall.

Ont-ils apporté mon complet?

Did they bring my suit?

Oui, ils l'ont apporté.

Yes, they did.

Sont-ils arrivés?

Have they arrived?

Non, ils ne sont pas arrivés.

No, they have not.

NOTE 2. **Y** is omitted before the Future of **aller** for reasons of euphony.

**Nous n'irons pas.**

We shall not go.

*But:* **Nous y allons.**

We are going.

NOTE 3. When *there* has no antecedent **là** must be used instead of **y**.

**Je l'ai mis là.**

I put it *there*.

2. **Y** is a pronoun when it stands for **à** plus a complement in certain idiomatic expressions not referring to place; **y** is not used when the antecedent is a person (*cf.* Section 3 on the next page).

**Quelle surprise! Je ne m'y attendais pas. (= à cette surprise)**

What a surprise! I did not expect it.

Je ne tiens pas à le voir; y tenez-vous?

C'était un beau mariage; y avez-vous assisté? (= à un beau mariage)

Ce chien a l'air méchant, ne vous y fiez pas. (= à ce chien)

I am not anxious to see him. Are you?

It was a fine wedding. Were you present at it?

This dog looks mean; do not trust it.

3. The pronoun **y** is also used as the indirect object for things only. **Lui** and **leur** refer to persons or animals and are only exceptionally used for things.

Ajoutez-vous un chapitre à votre composition? Je n'y ajouterai rien.

A-t-il répondu à votre lettre? Oui, il y a répondu.

Shall you add a chapter *to your composition*? I shall add nothing *to it*.

Has he answered *your letter*? Yes, he answered *it*.

4. **En** stands for **de** plus a complement with verbs followed by **de** and in certain idiomatic expressions. **En** is not generally used for persons (*cf.* Section 3 just preceding) except collectively or with plural nouns taken in an indefinite manner.

Avez-vous parlé de vos projets? Non, je n'en ai pas parlé.

Il est tard, vous en rendez-vous compte? (= de ce qu'il est tard)

Je ne peux pas vous le prêter, je m'en sers. (se servir de)

Voyez-vous ce groupe d'hommes? Ne vous en approchez pas.

Avez-vous besoin de domestiques? Je n'en ai pas besoin.

Did you speak *of your plans*? No, I did not (*speak of them*).

It is late; do you realize *it*?

I cannot lend it to you; I am using *it*.

Do you see *that group of men*? Don't go near *them*.

Do you need *servants*? I do not need *them*.

NOTE. **En** as a partitive pronoun (*cf.* Lesson Six, Section II) can refer to either persons or things.

Avez-vous des amis? J'en ai.  
Veut-il du thé? Oui, il en veut.

Have you *any friends*? I have.  
Does he want *some tea*? Yes, he does.

## C. Pronoun Objects with the Imperative Affirmative

All the pronoun objects follow the verb in the imperative affirmative. The direct object precedes the indirect, *y* and *en* come last.

*Me* and *te* become *moi* and *toi*; but when followed by *y* or *en*, they become *m'* and *t'*.

<b>Donnez-le-moi.</b>	Give it to me.
<b>Donnez-les-nous.</b>	Give them to us.
<b>Donnons-leur-en.</b>	Let us give them some.
<b>Donnez-m'en.</b>	Give me some.
<b>Regardez-les.</b>	Look at them.
<b>Regardez-moi.</b>	Look at me.

## II. NOUN OBJECTS

Noun objects follow the verb. The direct object comes before the indirect, unless the direct object is qualified by a clause.

<b>Avez-vous prêté votre plume à Jean?</b>	Did you lend John your pen? (Did you lend your pen to John?)
<b>Prêtez à Jean la plume dont vous ne vous servez pas.</b>	Lend John the pen which you are not using.

Remember that with nouns also, *to* is frequently omitted in English with the indirect object, when a direct object follows.

## III. THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

TABLE OF DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<b>moi</b>	me (I)	<b>nous</b>	us (we)
<b>toi</b>	thee (thou)	<b>vous</b>	you (you)
<b>lui, elle</b>	him, her (he, she)	<b>eux, elles</b>	them (they)
<b>soi *</b>	oneself, himself		

\* *Soi* corresponds to the indefinite *oneself*, *himself*, *ourselves*, etc.

<b>On ne pense qu'à soi.</b>	We think only of ourselves. (One thinks only of oneself.)
<b>Chacun pour soi.</b>	Each one for himself.

The disjunctive pronouns were originally stressed forms of the personal pronouns, and they are used today in the following ways:

1. As object of a preposition.

<b>après lui, devant elle, pour eux,</b>	after him, in front of her, for
<b>avec nous, sans moi</b>	them, with us, without me

2. When the verb is understood.

<b>Qui est là? Moi, nous, eux.</b>	Who is there? I, we, they.
<b>Qui punirez-vous? Elle.</b>	Whom will you punish? Her.
<b>Qui a fait cela? Pas moi.</b>	Who did that? Not I.

3. As subject, when qualified or separated from the verb.

<b>Moi aussi je le sais.</b>	I also know it.
<b>Lui seul peut vous aider.</b>	He alone can help you.
<b>Eux, si patients d'ordinaire, (ils)</b> <b>se sont fâchés.</b>	They, so patient usually, got angry.

NOTE. The subject is repeated in the form of a regular pronoun subject, except in the third person when its repetition is not compulsory.

4. To stress the subject. (The emphatic subject in English will be shown in italics.) Cf. the note above for repetition of the subject.

<b>Moi, j'avais deviné juste.</b>	<i>I</i> had guessed right.
<b>Vous, vous n'avez pas compris.</b>	<i>You</i> did not understand.
<b>Lui, il le sait. Lui le sait.</b>	<i>He</i> knows it.

5. For persons after **à** or **de** whenever verbs and idiomatic expressions require **à** or **de** before their complement, or with verbs of motion.

<b>Je m'intéresse à lui.</b>	I am interested in him.
<b>Il se souvient de moi.</b>	He remembers me.
<b>J'ai besoin d'elle.</b>	I need her.
<b>Il est venu à moi.</b>	He came to me.

*but* (cf. Section I, B: 2 and 4 on pages 93 and 94)

<b>Je m'y intéresse.</b>	I am interested in it.
<b>Je m'en souviens.</b>	I remember it.
<b>J'en ai besoin.</b>	I need it.

## VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **vivre**, **nuire** (Table 1); **recevoir**, **pouvoir** (Table 2).

What forms of **recevoir** and **pouvoir** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

## EXERCISE A

*Answer the questions, substituting pronouns for the nouns. Answer odd-numbered questions in the affirmative, even-numbered ones in the negative.* 1. Avez-vous écrit à vos parents? 2. S'intéresse-t-il à son travail? 3. Êtes-vous allé en Europe? 4. A-t-il prêté son stylo à son frère? 5. A-t-elle beaucoup de travail? 6. Ont-ils envoyé des cadeaux à leurs amis? 7. A-t-elle porté les lettres à la poste? 8. Se moquent-ils de leurs cousines? 9. Voulez-vous que nous vous débarrassions de ces livres? 10. Donnerez-vous ces fleurs à Marie? 11. Se brosse-t-elle les cheveux? 12. Ont-ils assisté à la conférence?

*Translate the words in parentheses.* 13. Nous ne partirons pas sans (them, *fem.*). 14. Il a accepté, (*I refused*). 15. Nous resterons ici avec (him). 16. Je n'en sais rien, (*he will be able*) vous le dire. 17. Asseyez-vous à côté de (me). 18. Il vous a insulté, (*he*) votre meilleur ami! 19. Qui a fait cela? (*He and I*). 20. Vous avez raison, (*they are wrong*). 21. Elle n'a plus d'argent, (*send her some*). 22. Voici le prix, (*shall we give it to you*)? 23. Non, (*don't give it to me, give it to her*). 24. Pourquoi (*haven't you given it to them*)? 25. Ils n'aiment pas les gâteaux, (*don't give them any*).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## TO THINK OF: PENSER À, PENSER DE

**Penser à** is used when *to think of* means *to bear in mind*, *to think about*. Note examples on this and the following page.

Pensez-vous à votre sœur? Je pense souvent à elle.	Are you thinking of your sister? I often think of her.
Pense-t-il à ses leçons? Il y pense.	Does he think of his lessons? He thinks of them.

Note that **penser** is not used with an indirect object pronoun but with **à** + disjunctive pronoun for persons, while the pronoun **y** is used for things.

**Penser de** is used when *to think of* means *to have an opinion of*.

<b>Que pensez-vous de cette pièce?</b>	What do you think of that play?
<b>Je vous dirai ce que j'en pense.</b>	I shall tell you what I think of it.
<b>Connaissez-vous le Dr. G.? Que pensez-vous de lui?</b>	Do you know Dr. G.? What do you think of him?

#### COMPLEMENTS OF VERBS

A certain number of verbs require a direct object in French and an indirect object in English, and vice versa. The most common of these verbs are listed below.

1. Verbs requiring a preposition in English which are used with a direct object in French:

to wait for	<b>attendre</b>	to forgive for	<b>pardonner</b> <sup>1</sup>
to look for	<b>chercher</b>	to pay for	<b>payer</b> <sup>2</sup>
to ask for	<b>demander</b> <sup>1</sup>	to look at	<b>regarder</b>
to listen to	<b>écouter</b>	to reproach for	<b>reprocher</b> <sup>1</sup>
to send for	<b>envoyer chercher</b>		

<sup>1</sup> Cf. next section.

<sup>2</sup> **Payer pour quelqu'un**: *to pay for someone*, in the sense of *to pay instead of*. Also cf. next section.

<b>Je n'ai pas assez d'argent, pouvez-vous payer pour moi?</b>	I have not enough money; can you pay for me (instead of me)?
--	--

*but*

<b>Combien avez-vous payé ce tapis?</b>	How much did you pay for this rug?
---	------------------------------------

2. Verbs which in French require an indirect object of the person spoken to or referred to:

to forbid someone	<b>défendre à</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>quelqu'un</b>
to advise “	<b>conseiller à</b>	“
to ask “	<b>demander à</b> <sup>2</sup>	“
to permit “	<b>permettre à</b> <sup>2</sup>	“
to promise “	<b>promettre à</b> <sup>2</sup>	“

<sup>1</sup> **Défendre** meaning *to defend* takes a direct object. <sup>2</sup> See note on following page.

to order someone	<b>ordonner à quelqu'un</b>
to pay " "	<b>payer à</b> <sup>3</sup> " "
to forgive " "	<b>pardonner à</b> <sup>2</sup> " "
to reproach " "	<b>reprocher à</b> <sup>2</sup> " "

<sup>2</sup> Observe the construction when these verbs are used with both the direct and the indirect objects.

<b>Demandez un verre à la bonne.</b>	Ask the maid for a glass.
<b>Il a reproché leur paresse à ses enfants.</b>	He reproached his children for their laziness.
<b>J'ai promis un voyage à ma femme.</b>	I promised my wife a trip.
<b>Je lui ai demandé un conseil.</b>	I asked him for advice.

<sup>3</sup> **Payer à quelqu'un** is used only when the verb has both the direct and the indirect object; otherwise: **payer quelqu'un**.

<b>payer quelque chose à quelqu'un</b>	to pay someone for something
<i>but</i>	
<b>payer quelqu'un (no other object)</b>	to pay someone
<b>payer quelqu'un pour faire quelque chose</b>	to pay someone to do something

NOTE. **Défendre, conseiller, demander, permettre, promettre, ordonner, pardonner, reprocher** require **de** before an infinitive.

3. Verbs taking a direct object in English which require an indirect object in French:

to hurt	<b>faire mal à</b>
to obey (disobey)	<b>obéir (désobéir) à</b>
to harm	<b>nuire à</b>
to please (displease)	<b>plaire (déplaire) à</b>
to answer, reply	<b>répondre à</b> <sup>1</sup>
to resemble (look like)	<b>ressembler à</b>

<sup>1</sup> In the sense of *to say something*, **répondre** takes a direct object.

<b>Il n'a pas répondu à ma lettre.</b>	He did not answer my letter.
<i>but</i>	
<b>Répondez quelque chose.</b>	Answer (say) something.



Verbs and idiomatic expressions requiring different complements in English and in French, such as: **dépendre de**, *to depend on*; **réussir à**, *to succeed in*; **servir de**, *to serve as*; etc. will be found under **IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY**, as well as in the general vocabulary.

### EXERCISE B

*Translate words in parentheses.* 1. Voulez-vous (wait for me) dans le jardin? 2. Il ne sait pas ce qu'il dit; (do not listen to him). 3. (He was looking for you); où étiez-vous? 4. Combien (did you pay for) cette cravate? 5. (They look at him) avec surprise. 6. Il est très brun; (he looks like) son père. 7. Je ne réussis pas à (please her). 8. (We shall not permit the children) de sortir ce soir. 9. S'il vous fait des excuses, (shall you forgive John)? 10. (Promise him) de ne pas vous fâcher. 11. Si vous voulez savoir la vérité, (ask Mary for it). 12. Il vous parle; pourquoi (don't you answer him)? 13. (He did not think of) votre anniversaire; (forgive him). 14. Son père (forbids him) de fumer, mais (he does not obey him). 15. (Have you answered the letters) que vous avez reçues ce matin? 16. Dites-moi ce que (you think of me). 17. (We advised your brother) de partir tout de suite. 18. (You think of him) quand vous le voyez. 19. (Wait for your mother); elle sera prête dans un instant. 20. Je n'ai pas assez d'argent pour (pay him for his work). 21. Il ne voudra plus vous aider si (you do not pay him). 22. (I promised Mary) de venir la voir aujourd'hui. 23. (He does not allow them) de se servir de son auto. 24. (We ordered Paul) de se coucher à 10 heures. 25. (I forbade the students) d'écrire dans leurs livres.

### TRANSLATION

#### FIANCÉS?

Jean ne pensait qu'à revoir Odile. Mais où trouver l'occasion de lui parler librement? Souvent, il se promenait dans le petit sentier à travers bois qui menait au domaine des Bastian, espérant y rencontrer Odile.

Un jour il l'aperçut qui sortait de chez elle et se dirigeait de son

côté. Il l'attendit dissimulé derrière un buisson, et quand elle fut près de lui il se montra.

Odile s'arrêta, surprise.

— Comment, dit-elle, c'est vous ?

Et elle s'approcha de l'endroit où se tenait Jean.

— Je ne puis plus entrer librement chez vous, comme autrefois, dit-il. Alors je suis venu vous attendre. . . . Je voulais vous parler.

— Comme vous dites cela sérieusement ! . . .

Elle essaya de sourire. Mais ses lèvres s'y refusèrent. Ils devinrent tous deux pâles. Ils étaient maintenant tout près l'un de l'autre.

— Odile, vous avez été l'amie de ma première jeunesse. . . . Je voudrais que vous fussiez celle de toujours.

Elle, le regard perdu à présent dans le lointain, tremblait un peu en répondant :

— Avez-vous songé ? . . .

— A tout !

— Même à ce qui peut nous séparer ?

— Que voulez-vous dire par là ? De quoi avez-vous peur ? Serait-ce d'entrer dans une famille désunie ? Vous la réconciliez, j'en suis sûr. Est-ce l'opposition de mon père ou du vôtre qui sont devenus ennemis ?

— Cela pourrait se vaincre, dit la jeune fille.

— Alors c'est votre mère ?

— Elle sera plus lente à croire en vous que je ne l'ai été moi-même. Mais elle reviendra de ses préventions. J'ai peur seulement de ce que je ne connais pas, du moindre incident qui viendrait aggraver, demain, un état si troublé.

— Je comprends, dit Jean ; vous craignez l'ambition de mon père. Elle nous a déjà bien fait souffrir. Mais il est mon père. Quand il apprendra que je vous ai choisie, Odile, s'il a des projets personnels qui briseraient notre union, il consentirait au moins à les ajourner. N'ayez pas même cette crainte-là. Nous vaincrons. Vous rendrez douce ma vie qui serait difficile, peut-être impossible, si vous n'étiez pas là. C'est pour vous que je suis rentré au pays. . . . Je vous aime, Odile !

Il prit la main d'Odile qui répondit :

— Dieu m'est témoin que je vous aime aussi, Jean.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**se diriger**, to proceed, walk  
**de son côté**, in his direction  
**se tenir**, to stand  
**première jeunesse**, early childhood  
**songer à**, *synonym of penser à*  
**par là (cela)**, by that  
**elle reviendra de ses préventions**, she  
 will forget her prejudices

**je suis rentré au pays**, I came back to  
 my home town  
**se servir de**, to use  
**se rendre compte de**, to realize  
**se moquer de**, to make fun of  
**se débarrasser de**, to get rid of

## EXERCISE C

1. We are late, but I hope that he will wait for us. 2. They have been here for two hours; I cannot get rid of them. 3. I shall tell it to you, if you will not repeat it. 4. Why don't you give it to him? He has asked you for it several times. 5. I have received an interesting letter. I shall show it to you. 6. We looked for your keys in your room, but they were not there. 7. She is afraid that her mother will not permit her to go out. 8. I am sorry that he refuses to obey him. 9. Do you remember him? What do you think of him? 10. He did not write her, but he thinks of her all the time. 11. I recognized him immediately. He looks like his brother. 12. I also think that he resembles him a great deal. 13. Are you using my dictionary? Yes, I am; do you want it? 14. You do not need your fountain pen. Lend it to me. 15. Thank you. I shall return it to you tomorrow morning. 16. Will you come with me, or will you stay with them? 17. I am not interested in sports; are you? 18. While I think of it, ask them to spend the day with us. 19. Your brother is an intelligent boy. Don't make fun of him. 20. I asked you for my notebooks. Why didn't you send them to me? 21. Forgive him; he will send them to you as soon as he can. 22. Your cousin wrote you several times. Why don't you answer her? 23. John had been thinking of Odile all the time since his last visit. 24. He wanted to see her again and to speak to her. 25. He did not dare go to her house, nor write her. 26. One day he met her in the wood near her house. 27. Odile did not expect it and was a little surprised. 28. He asked her to be his friend. What did he mean? 29. Will they be able to marry? Will Mme Bastian consent to it? 30. Of what is Odile afraid? Jean knows, but *she* does not know.

# LESSON NINE

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. ADDITIONAL USES OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

The disjunctive pronouns are used:

1. As predicate nominatives of **être**, in comparisons, and after **ne . . . que**.

**C'est moi (lui, elle, etc.).**

It is I (he, she, etc.).

**Nous sommes plus riches qu'eux.**

We are richer than they.

**Je n'ai vu que lui.**

I saw only him.

2. In compound subjects. When these compound subjects are of different persons, they are usually summed up by a plural conjunctive pronoun subject. (*See NOTE after next section.*) They must always be summed up when the verb is in the interrogative.

**Vous et moi nous le ferons.**

You and I shall do it.

**Vous, lui et moi, nous le savons.**

You, he, and I know it.

**Vous et eux, avez-vous compris?**

Did you and they understand?

**Paul et elle iront à Paris.**

Paul and she will go to Paris.

**Marie et lui, partiront-ils?**

Will he and Mary leave?

3. For compound objects. These compound objects are usually summed up in a plural conjunctive pronoun object placed before the verb.

**Il nous l'a dit, à vous et à moi.**

He said it to you and (to) me.

**Je vous regarde, vous et lui.**

I am looking at you and at him.

**Je les vois, eux et leurs sœurs.**

I see them and their sisters.

**Vous parle-t-il, à vous et à elle?**

Does he speak to you and (to) her?

NOTE. The compound subjects or objects are summed up in the order of precedence of persons: first, second, third.

<b>Vous + moi (nous) = nous</b>	} First + second (+ third) = first
<b>Vous + lui * + moi (nous) = nous</b>	
<b>Vous + lui * = vous</b>	

\* or *elle, eux, elles*, or a noun.

4. When **me, te, se, nous, vous** are direct objects, a disjunctive pronoun is used to express the indirect object.

<b>Ils nous a adressés à vous.</b>	He sent us to you.
<b>Il m'a présenté à elle.</b>	He introduced me to her.

*but*

<b>Nous vous l'avons adressé.</b>	We sent him to you.
<b>Il me l'a présentée.</b>	He introduced her to me.

5. The emphatic pronouns *myself, himself, ourselves*, etc. are translated by a disjunctive pronoun + **-même(s)**: **moi-même, lui-même, nous-mêmes**, etc.

<b>Il le dira lui-même.</b>	He will say it himself.
<b>Ils ont bâti leur maison eux-mêmes.</b>	They built their house themselves.

NOTE. Do not confuse the emphatic *myself, himself*, etc. with the reflexive pronouns indicating that the subject is receiving the action of the verb: *He hurt himself*.

## II. THE NEUTER CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN LE

**Le**, invariable, is used as in the following examples. Its antecedent may be a complementary infinitive, a clause used as a direct object, a predicate adjective, or an unqualified noun used as an adjective. (Cf. Lesson Three, page 26.)

<b>Lui avez-vous demandé de venir?</b>	Did you ask him to come.
<b>Oui, je le lui ai demandé.</b>	Yes, I asked him.

Savez-vous <i>ce qui se passe</i> ? Je le sais.	Do you know <i>what is going on</i> ? I know (it).
Lui avez-vous dit <i>que je suis ici</i> ? Je ne le lui ai pas dit.	Did you tell him <i>I was here</i> ? I did not (tell him it).*
Savent-elles <i>qu'elles sont jolies</i> . Elles le savent.	Do they know <i>that they are pretty</i> ? They know it.
Sont-ils <i>pauvres</i> ? Ils le sont.	Are they <i>poor</i> ? They are (so).
Êtes-vous français? Nous le sommes.	Are you French? We are.

\* Cf. NOTE 1, Lesson Eight, page 93.

### III. THE PLUPERFECT

1. The Pluperfect (*cf.* Appendix I, Section I) is used, as in English, to express a past action or state prior to another past action or state.

Il était tôt et j'avais déjà fini mes devoirs.	It was early and I had already finished my homework.
--	--

2. We saw in Lesson Seven that the Imperfect is used with **depuis** or **il y avait . . . que**, when an action which had begun in the past was still going on at a given moment in the past.

Je lisais depuis une demi-heure quand ils sont arrivés.	I had been reading for half an hour when they arrived.
---	--

But the Pluperfect is used with **depuis** or **il y avait . . . que** when the action had ceased prior to another past action.

Ils n'avaient pas mangé depuis deux jours quand nous les avons retrouvés.	They had not eaten for two days when we found them.
Il y avait deux ans que je ne l'avais pas vu.	I had not seen him for two years.
Il me disait qu'il avait fait beaucoup de visites depuis son retour.	He was telling me that he had paid many calls since his return.

3. The Pluperfect is used in the **si** clause in French when the result clause is in the Past Conditional.

Je vous aurais écrit si vous m'aviez donné votre adresse.	I would have written to you if you had given me your address.
---	---

## IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER IMPERSONAL VERBS

The Subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause after impersonal verbs expressing:

Necessity or compulsion: *il est nécessaire, il faut (must).*

Opinion as to fitness, suitability: *il est juste, il est essentiel, il est temps, il convient (it is proper), il vaut mieux (it is better), il est heureux (it is fortunate), il est raisonnable, etc.*

Possibility: *il est possible, il est impossible, il est rare, etc.*

Doubt: *il est douteux.*

Emotion: *il est surprenant, c'est dommage (it is too bad).*

**Il faut que vous le fassiez.\***

You must (have to) do it.

**Il n'est pas juste qu'il soit puni.**

It is not just (right) for him to be punished (that he should be punished).

**Il est temps que vous partiez.†**

It is time for you to leave.

**Il est possible qu'elle soit arrivée.**

It is possible that she has arrived.

**Il est étonnant que vous ayez compris.**

It is surprising that you understood.

\* Note that the subject of *must (have to)* becomes, in the French sentence, the subject of the subordinate clause.

**Il faut que Jean travaille.**

*John must work.*

† WARNING. The English construction *for me (you, him, etc. or a noun)* plus the infinitive must be translated in French by a subordinate subjunctive clause.

Verbs expressing certainty, conviction, evidence, probability, are followed by the indicative.

**Il est certain qu'il viendra.**

It is certain that he will come.

**Il est visible que vous êtes souffrant.**

It is obvious that you are ill.

**Il est probable qu'il le sait.\***

It is probable that he knows it.

**Il paraît qu'il est parti.†**

It seems that he has left.

\* **Probable** in French expresses the conviction of the speaker, hence the Indicative.

† **Paraître** implies no doubt or uncertainty.

## VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **mentir**, **craindre**, **rire** (Table 1); **valoir** (Table 2).

What change occurs in the stem of the present participle of **craindre**?  
What other verbs are conjugated in the same manner?

## EXERCISE A

1. (You and I shall go<sup>1</sup>) nous promener. 2. Nous sommes plus avancés (than they). 3. (I asked him and you) de ne pas faire de bruit. 4. (You and Paul are) trop impatientes. 5. J'aime mieux le faire (myself). 6. Ces oranges sont-elles bonnes? (No, they are not.) 7. (We must return) à la maison tout de suite. 8. Vous a-t-il dit que son frère était ici? (Yes, he did.) 9. Il vaut mieux que (you come<sup>1</sup>) plus tard. 10. Elle vient de téléphoner qu'elle viendra (herself). 11. Il n'est pas naturel qu' (he has) tant d'argent. 12. (You, she, and I shall play) dans le jardin. 13. Il est évident que (you cannot<sup>2</sup>) partir maintenant. 14. Nous serions venus si (you had invited us). 15. Il est étonnant qu' (they have not found) Pierre chez lui. 16. Je connais cette dame, (I shall introduce you to her). 17. (He has written<sup>1</sup>) plusieurs fois avant de venir. 18. Il est regrettable qu' (he has not succeeded). 19. Est-ce vous qui avez cassé ce verre? Ce n'est pas (I), c'est (he). 20. (Have he and you understood) ce que j'ai dit? 21. Il est possible que (we shall arrive) en retard. 22. Savez-vous ce qu'il a dit de vous? (No, I do not). 23. Il nous disait qu' (he had not seen you) depuis deux mois. 24. Nous aurions compris si (you had spoken) plus clairement. 25. Il est probable que (we shall not know) ce qui s'est passé. 26. C'est dommage que (you did not come) sooner. 27. Il paraît que vous (have not learned) vos leçons. 28. (He had not written) à sa femme depuis trois semaines. 29. Ces robes sont-elles chères? Non, (they are not). 30. Il est possible que (he and I shall buy) une auto.

3. Je valais mieux aller à l'école à l'heure.

4. Paul et Marie s'aiment.

5. Marie même.

6. Elles ne le font pas.

7. Il faut que nous nous entraînions.

8. Oui, il me l'a dit.

9. Vous venez.

10. Elle même.

14. Je vous aime moi.

15. Ils m'ont aimé.

travaux pas.

16. Je vous présente.

à elle.



## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## AVOIR IN IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

1. *Avoir* plus a noun is used in the following expressions denoting physical, mental, or moral feelings *experienced* by the subject.

<b>avoir faim, soif, sommeil, chaud,</b>	to be hungry, thirsty, sleepy,
<b>froid</b>	warm, cold
<b>avoir peur (de)</b>	to be afraid (of, to)
<b>avoir honte (de)</b>	to be ashamed (of, to)
<b>avoir envie de</b>	to feel like, long for
<b>avoir hâte de</b>	to long to, be eager to
<b>avoir confiance (en)</b>	to trust, have confidence (in)
<b>avoir besoin (de)</b>	to need
<b>avoir l'intention (de)</b>	to intend, have the intention (to)

NOTE. Literally these expressions mean: *to have* (experience) hunger, thirst, heat, fright, desire, need, etc.

But when a *state* or a *quality* is expressed, the verb *être* and an adjective are used. Cf. the English expression *to be* and an adjective.

<b>La soupe est chaude.</b>	The soup is hot.
<b>Il était froid et hautain.</b>	He was cold and haughty.
<b>Elle est trop confiante.</b>	She is too confident.
<b>Je suis fatigué.</b>	I am tired.

2. *Avoir quelque chose*: *to be the matter*.

## USED PERSONALLY

<b>Avez-vous quelque chose?</b>	Is something the matter with you?
<b>Qu'avez-vous?</b>	What is the matter with you?
<b>Je n'ai rien.</b>	Nothing is the matter with me.
<b>Jean a quelque chose.</b>	Something is the matter with John.

## USED IMPERSONALLY

<b>Qu'y a-t-il (qu'est-ce qu'il y a)?</b>	What is the matter?
<b>Y avait-il quelque chose?</b>	Was something the matter?
<b>Il n'y avait rien.</b>	Nothing was the matter.

3. avoir l'air (de): *to appear, seem, look, look like*

Avoir l'air, without *de*, is used before an adjective. Avoir l'air *de* is used before an infinitive or a noun.

Vous avez l'air fatigué.

You look tired.

Elle a l'air d'une folle.

She looks like a madwoman.

Il n'a pas l'air de comprendre.

He does not seem to understand.

Est-il content? Il n'en a pas l'air.\*

Is he pleased? He does not look it (so).

Vous avez l'air d'avoir faim.†

You seem (to be) hungry. (You look hungry.)

\* *En* is used in all cases, whether the antecedent is a noun, an infinitive, or an adjective.

† Note that after *avoir l'air de*, *avoir* must be retained before *faim*, *soif*, *froid*, etc.

NOTE. When *to seem* is used with a person as indirect object, *sembler*, or *paraître* must be used, not *avoir l'air*.

La situation me semble embrouillée.

The situation seems confused to me.

Il semblait à Paul que son travail s'améliorait.

It seemed to Paul that his work was improving.

#### IL Y A, VOILÀ: THERE IS, THERE ARE; VOICI: HERE IS, HERE ARE

Il y a states the existence. Voilà points out.

Il y a des fleurs sur la table.

There are flowers on the table.

Y avait-il beaucoup de monde?

Were there many people?

Il n'y aura personne.

There will be nobody there.

Voilà votre père.

There is your father.

#### LE VOICI (VOILÀ): HERE (THERE) HE (IT) IS; EN VOICI: HERE IS SOME

Voici and voilà being contractions of *vois ici* and *vois là* (*see here, see there*), a direct object pronoun or *en* is used for the object pointed out, in the same position as with a verb.

Les voici, nous voici, la voilà.

Here they are, here we are, there she is.

Vous voulez une plume? En voici une. En voilà une autre.

You want a pen? Here is one. There is another.

En voici plusieurs.

Here are several.

## EXERCISE B

1. Vous n'êtes pas venu hier. (Was anything the matter with you)?  
2. Vous devriez vous coucher; (you look tired). 3. (She is not afraid to) sortir seule la nuit. 4. (I feel like) faire une promenade. 5. (There is John), allez le rejoindre. 6. (He seems to) croire que vous pourrez l'aider. 7. (There are not) beaucoup d'élèves dans cette classe. 8. (Here are) des pommes, en voulez-vous une? 9. (They looked like) garçons intelligents. (Cf. Lesson Four, page 38.) 10. Pourquoi ne venez-vous pas? (What is the matter)? 11. Je crois qu'ils seront en retard; non, (there they are). 12. (If you are hungry), je vous ferai un sandwich. 13. Voulez-vous que je ferme la fenêtre? (You look cold). 14. Non, au contraire, (I am hot and I am thirsty). 15. Vous n'avez plus de papier? (Here is some). 16. Couvrez-vous bien, le vent (is very cold). 17. (She is longing to) retourner chez elle. 18. (Were there) des gens intéressants? 19. (Are they not ashamed of) leur négligence? 20. (Here we are)! Êtes-vous content de nous voir? 21. Si vous voulez du lait, (there is some) dans la glacière. 22. (We are afraid of) nous perdre dans cette ville. 23. Ce livre (does not seem to me) intéressant. 24. Êtes-vous souffrant? Non, (nothing is the matter with me). 25. (Something is the matter with Jane), elle est toute pâle.

## TRANSLATION

## FIANCÉS!

— Bonsoir, Jean, as-tu passé une bonne après-midi à Strasbourg?

— Mais oui, ma chère Lucienne. D'abord j'ai passé trois heures dans les bureaux de la conservation des forêts. . . .

— Tu diras ça à mon père. Raconte-moi donc une nouvelle de Strasbourg, une jolie robe, une conversation avec quelqu'un d'intéressant?

— Eh, bien, j'ai rencontré une ancienne connaissance de Munich, un lieutenant de hussards.

— M. de Farnow?

— Lui-même; le lieutenant Wilhelm von Farnow; tu le connais? Mais qu'as-tu?

Lucienne, brave et provocatrice comme toujours, croisa les bras et dit, calmant sa voix:

— Il y a qu'il m'aime.

— Lui?

— Et que je l'aime.

— Ce n'est pas possible!

— Et pourquoi donc?

— Mais Lucienne, parce qu'il est allemand, prussien, officier!

— Crois-tu que je n'ai pas réfléchi? Je sais tout ce qu'on peut dire. Mais je te préviens que tous les arguments sont inutiles. Je l'aime. Ce n'est pas à faire, c'est fait. Et je n'ai qu'un désir: savoir si tu seras pour ou contre moi.

— Oh! mon Dieu, mon Dieu! fit Jean, en se cachant la figure dans ses mains.

— Je ne croyais pas que cela pût te faire tant de peine. Tu es plus pâle que moi, qui suis cependant seule en cause.

— Tu te trompes: nous sommes tous deux en cause, Lucienne! L'un contre l'autre, parce que moi aussi, j'ai un amour à t'avouer: j'aime Odile Bastian!

— Mon pauvre Jean, la fatalité nous poursuit... Odile Bastian et l'autre. Deux amours qui s'excluent...

— Oui: la mère d'Odile Bastian n'acceptera jamais que sa fille devienne la belle-sœur d'un officier prussien... Et mon père, sait-il? Consent-il?

— Oui!

— Les autres?

— Ignorent tout. Et ce sera terrible, tu penses bien! Ma mère, grand-père! J'espérais ton appui, Jean...

Jean songea un moment. Puis, ramenant son regard sur Lucienne qui, suppliante, inquiète, guettait ses mots:

— Tu ne peux pas savoir combien je souffre!

— Mon pauvre cher, je l'ignorais, ton amour.

— Et moi, je ne me sens pas le courage de détruire le tien...

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**se perdre**, to get lost  
**d'abord**, first, first of all  
**conservation des forêts**, forestry service  
**raconte-moi donc**, but tell me  
**provocatrice**, *f.* aggressive  
**prévenir**, to warn, notify  
**faire**, *used for dire in parenthetical clauses*

**être en cause**, to be concerned  
**se tromper**, to be mistaken  
**avouer**, to confess  
**ignorer**, not to know  
**tu penses bien**, you may well imagine  
**guetter**, to watch *or* await anxiously  
**se sentir**, to feel  
**aller se promener**, to go for a walk

## EXERCISE C

1. It is possible that he and I shall take <sup>2</sup> a trip next month. 2. He and his wife had already left when I telephoned. 3. I asked you and your friend to make less noise. 4. Why do you scold me? He makes <sup>2</sup> more noise than I. 5. It is better that you do <sup>2</sup> your lessons (**devoirs**) now. 6. We should have helped you if you had called us. 7. They had already left Europe when the war broke out. 8. Mary is more skillful than I; she makes her dresses herself. 9. It is surprising that you did not understand him. 10. What is the matter with him? Why does he look angry? 11. I cannot introduce you to her; I do not know her. 12. It is not necessary for you to wait any longer. 13. The wind is very cold; I want <sup>2</sup> him to wear a coat. 14. There was nobody in (**à**) the house when I returned last night. 15. What was the matter? Had all your family gone out? 16. If you are hungry, there is cold meat in the icebox. 17. You must write <sup>1</sup> to him that you cannot <sup>2</sup> come to his evening party. 18. Something is the matter with her; she looks very sad. 19. The weather is fine; I feel like going for a walk. 20. We must return him his books before half past one. 21. You look thirsty; ask the maid for a glass of water. 22. I have learned [a piece of] good news (*cf. vocabulary*), I shall tell it to you and to him. 23. If I see Professor Giraud, I shall recommend you to him. 24. Lucienne was afraid to (**de**) confess her love to her mother. 25. It is impossible that she should consent to this marriage. 26. And it is certain that the grandfather never will (*cf. Lesson Eight, Note 1, page 93*). 27. He will not permit her to (**de**) receive Farnow in his own house. 28. Lucienne did not know <sup>2</sup> that John had seen Odile since his return. 29. It is not right that he should give up his own love. 30. It is probable that there will be many obstacles to her marriage.

# LESSON TEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

TABLE OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS

qui	subject of the verb, <i>who, which</i>
que	direct object of the verb, <i>whom, which</i>
lequel, laquelle	} object of a preposition, <i>whom, which</i>
lesquels, lesquelles	
qui	
quoi	} <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
dont	

1. **Qui** and **que**: *cf.* Lesson One.

2. **Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles** agree in gender and number with their antecedent. **Lequel, lesquels** (-lles) contract with the preposition **à** into **auquel, auxquels** (-lles); with the preposition **de** into **duquel, desquels** (-lles).

For persons *only*, **qui** may be used instead of **lequel, laquelle**, etc.

<b>l'homme avec lequel (qui) je parle</b>	the man with whom I am talking
<b>la table sur laquelle vous avez laissé votre montre</b>	the table on which you left your watch
<b>les amis auxquels (à qui) j'ai écrit</b>	the friends to whom I wrote

3. **Quoi** for things, **qui** for persons, are used when no antecedent is mentioned with the statement, or in indirect questions (see also next page).

<b>Je sais à qui vous pensez.</b>	I know of whom you are thinking.
<b>Nous devinons sur quoi vous comptez.</b>	We guess on what you are depending.

Dites-moi de quoi vous avez besoin.	Tell me what you need.
Je lui ai demandé de quoi (de qui) il se plaignait.	I asked him of what (of whom) he complained.

4. **Dont** is used to translate *whose*, *of whom*, *of which*. (**Dont** is never used as an interrogative pronoun.)

la jeune fille dont vous connaissez le frère	the girl whose brother you know
l'étudiant dont nous parlons	the student of whom we are speaking
la pièce dont il s'agit	the play of which it is a question

EXCEPTION. **Dont** is not used when the antecedent of the relative pronoun is followed by a preposition.

Voici l'homme avec le fils duquel vous passerez vos vacances.	Here is the man with whose son you will spend your vacation.
Quelle est la forêt au milieu de laquelle vous vous êtes perdus?	What is the forest in the middle of which you got lost?

NOTE 1. *Be careful.* The order of words in the relative clause must be **dont** (or **duquel**, **de laquelle**, etc.) + SUBJECT + VERB + OBJECT. In sentences with the relative *whose*, to avoid mistakes, replace *whose* by *of whom* or *of which*; this will give you the correct order of words for the translation into French. Cf. examples above.

*the girl whose brother you know* = *the girl of whom you know the brother.*

*the man with whose son . . .* = *the man with the son of whom . . .*

un livre dont j'ai oublié le titre	a book whose title I have forgotten (a book of which I have forgotten the title)
------------------------------------	--

NOTE 2. Remember to use **dont** to translate *which* or *whom* when the French verb or verbal expression in the relative clause requires **de** before its complement, i.e., **avoir besoin de**, **se servir de**, etc.

les domestiques dont nous avons besoin	the servants whom we need ( <i>literally</i> : of whom we have need)
--	--

le crayon dont je me sers

the pencil which I am using (*literally*: of which I make use)

5. When in English, *in* (*to*, *at*, *on*) which refers to a place, it is translated by **que** if it is the direct object of the French verb.

la maison que j'habite

the house in which I live

If the relative pronoun is governed in French by the prepositions **dans**, **à**, or **sur**, it may be rendered by **où** (for **dans lequel**, **auquel**, **sur lequel**, etc.); by **d'où**, *from which* (for **duquel**, **de laquelle**, etc.); by **par où**, *through which* (for **par lequel**, **par laquelle**, etc.).

la maison où je demeure

the house in which I live

la ville par où il est passé

the city through which he passed

**Où** is also used to translate *that* or *when* as a relative.

**l'année où nous sommes allés en France** the year when we went to France

## II. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

1. The conditional sentence in French, as in English, is composed of two parts: the **si** clause (*if* clause in English) expressing a condition, a supposition, or an eventuality, and the clause expressing the result or conclusion.

It should be noted that the Conditional is a mood and has two tenses: the Present and the Past. The Present Conditional may occasionally convey the idea of futurity as well as that of present time.

**IMPORTANT.** It should be remembered that in the **si** clause the verb is always in the Indicative and that **si** is never followed by a future tense, even though future time may be implied, nor is it ever followed by a Conditional or a Subjunctive.

The student should understand clearly the nature of the conditional sentence in order to use the proper sequence of tenses. The table of the most common types of conditional sentences, given on page 116, should be studied carefully. Cf. examples following the table.



If the condition, supposition, or eventuality is considered as	The tense in the <i>si</i> clause will be	The tense in the result or conclusion will be
--	---	---

a. A real possibility in the present or future	Present Indicative	Future Indicative, Imperative, or Present Indicative
b. A real possibility in the past	Past Indefinite	Present Indicative, Future Indicative, or Imperative
c. Unreal or unlikely in the present or future	Imperfect Indicative	Present Conditional
d. Unrealized or contrary to facts in the past	Pluperfect Indicative	Past Conditional or Present Conditional

a.

Si nous lui téléphonons, il nous attendra.

If we telephone to him (*now*), he will wait for us.

Si vous avez besoin d'argent, je vous en prêterai.

If you need (will need) money, I shall lend you some.

S'il vient, dites-lui de m'attendre.

If he comes, tell him to wait for me.

Si cela arrive, je ne vous reverrai jamais.

If that happens (will happen), I shall never see you again.

Si c'est la vérité, je le déplore.

If this is (be) the truth, I deplore it.

b.

S'ils ont reçu votre lettre, ils savent où vous trouver.

If they have received your letter, they know where to find you.

Si vous lui avez laissé votre adresse, il vous écrira.

If you left him your address, he will write to you.

Si vous avez appris ce qui s'est passé, n'en dites rien.

If you have learned what happened, say nothing about it.

c.

Je ne vous le dirais pas si je n'en étais pas sûr.

I should not tell it to you if I were not sure of it (*but I am*).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Si j'étais riche, je voyagerais.  | If I were rich ( <i>but I am not</i> ), I should travel.   |
| Si vous aviez besoin d'argent pendant votre voyage, je vous en prêterais. (Future idea) | If you should need (needed) money during your trip ( <i>but it is unlikely</i> ), I should lend you some.                |
| Si vous aviez très faim, mendieriez-vous?   | If you were very hungry, should you beg? ( <i>A rhetorical question; the supposition is unreal at the present time</i> ) |
- d.
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Si nous lui avions dit où nous allions, il aurait pu nous rejoindre.        | If we had told him where we were going, he could have joined us ( <i>but we did not tell him</i> ). |
| S'il n'avait pas manqué son train, il serait déjà ici.                      | If he had not missed his train, he would be already here ( <i>but he did miss his train</i> ).      |
| S'ils nous avaient écrit, nous irions (future idea) les voir cette semaine. | If they had written to us ( <i>but they did not</i> ), we should go to see them this week.          |

The following examples of other types of conditional sentences are given for reference.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Si vous le saviez, vous auriez dû nous le dire.                           | If you knew it, you should have told us.   |
| S'il n'a pas téléphoné à trois heures, nous partirons.                    | If he has not telephoned ( <i>future eventuality</i> ) by three o'clock, we shall leave. |
| Si vous aviez l'intention de venir, pourquoi ne nous l'avez-vous pas dit? | If you intended to come, why did you not tell us?  |

All the preceding examples show that the idea to be expressed and the time relationship determine the sequence of tenses in conditional sentences. The present and past tenses of the Conditional are reserved generally to express a logical but unreal conclusion resulting from an unreal or unrealizable supposition. If the suppositions are considered as real or realizable, the Indicative Mood is generally used.

The sequence of tenses is in most cases alike in both languages except that the Conditional, the Subjunctive, or the Future may be used in the English *if* clause, but not in the French *si* clause. When these forms occur in the English sentence, the following table may be consulted to determine what forms of the verb can be substituted in the French *si* clause.

When the English <i>if</i> clause contains	And the verb of the result clause is in the	The verb of the French <i>si</i> clause will be in the
A Conditional or a Subjunctive	Present Conditional	Imperfect Indicative
A Future or a Subjunctive	Future, Present Indicative, or Imperative	Present Indicative

WARNING. Do not confuse *si* introducing a supposition with the conjunction *si* when it stands for *whether* (or *if* meaning *whether*). It is then not restricted to certain tenses of the Indicative.

**Je ne sais pas si j'aurais pu venir plus tôt.** I do not know if (whether) I could have come earlier.

2. Other uses of the Conditional correspond in most cases to the English to express a possibility, an eventuality (not introduced by *si*), to attenuate a statement, etc.

**Il aurait été heureux de savoir cela.** He would have been happy to know that.  
**Comment saurais-je ce qu'il a dit?** How should I know what he said?  
**Au cas où il viendrait, je vous appellerais.** In case he should come, I should call you.  
**Je ne l'aurais pas cru si intelligent.** I should not have believed him so intelligent.

3. The tenses of the Conditional are also used as tenses to express future time relative to a past action, *i.e.* a future in the past.

**Je ne croyais pas qu'il viendrait.** I did not think he would come.  
**J'étais sûr qu'il aurait fini avant notre arrivée.** I was sure he would have finished before our arrival.

Note that in this use after a verb in a past tense the Present Conditional and Past Conditional correspond respectively to the Future and the Future Anterior if the verb of the main clause were changed to the present. Compare the preceding examples with the following:

**Je ne crois pas qu'il viendra.**

I do not think he will come.

**Je suis sûr qu'il aura fini avant  
notre arrivée.**

I am sure he will have finished  
before our arrival.

NOTE 1. Be careful to distinguish between *could* = *should be able*, the Conditional of *to be able to*, and *could* = *was able*, a Past of the verb *to be able*. *Could*, conditional, is translated by the Present of the Conditional of **pouvoir**, *could have* + Past Participle by the Past of the Conditional of **pouvoir** + Infinitive. *Could*, Past, is translated by a past tense of **pouvoir**.

I could do it tomorrow.

**Je pourrais le faire demain.** (*Conditional Present*)

He could have done it sooner.

**Il aurait pu le faire plus tôt.**  
(*Conditional Past*)

I could not understand.

**Je ne pouvais pas comprendre.**  
(*Imperfect*)

They could not come yesterday.

**Ils n'ont pas pu venir hier.** (*Past Indefinite*)

NOTE 2. Be careful to distinguish between *would* used as an auxiliary to form the tenses of the Conditional (or the Imperfect, cf. Lesson Eight) and *would* meaning *willingness*, which is expressed by **vouloir**.

He would write to you if he had the time.

**Il vous écrirait s'il avait le temps.**  
(*Conditional*)

Last summer I would (used to) get up at five every morning.  
(*Imperfect of get up*)

**L'été dernier je me levais à cinq heures tous les matins.**

I told him that several times, but he would not listen. (*wasn't willing*)

**Je lui ai dit cela plusieurs fois mais il ne voulait pas écouter.**

NOTE 3. Be careful to distinguish between *should* used as an auxiliary to form the tenses of the Conditional or the Subjunctive, and *should* used as a synonym of *ought to* (cf. page 123, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS).

I should think rather that he was wrong.      Je croirais plutôt qu'il avait tort.

You should (ought to) accept.      Vous devriez accepter.

### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate *servir*, *se taire* (Table 1); *devoir*,  *falloir* (Table 2).

What forms of *devoir* cannot be derived from the principal parts?

### EXERCISE A

*Translate words in parentheses.* 1. Présentez-moi aux jeunes filles (to whom) vous venez de parler. 2. Dites-lui où se trouve le magasin (in which) vous achetez vos chapeaux. 3. Voici un homme (for whom) j'ai beaucoup de respect. 4. Quel est le théâtre (of which) vous parliez. 5. Nous vous <sup>donner</sup>prêterons l'argent (which) vous avez besoin. 6. C'est un homme (of whom) j'ai peur. 7. Je ne vois pas l'élève (to whom) j'ai donné ma grammaire. 8. Est-ce la maison (in front of which) il doit nous attendre? 9. C'est un homme en (whose honesty) je n'ai pas confiance. 10. Vous ne m'avez pas dit (to whom) vous avez téléphoné. 11. Où avez-vous mis la lampe (which) nous avons envoyée? 12. Quel est l'étudiant (whose father) est mort? 13. Il ne veut pas dire (of what) il se plaint. 14. C'est l'époque (when) nous prenons nos vacances. 15. Qui est le jeune homme (with whom) elle dansait? Qui

*Change the infinitives in parentheses to the proper tense.* 16. Si vous lui (écrire<sup>2</sup>), il vous répondra. 17. S'il avait su cela, il (venir<sup>2</sup>). 18. Si vous aviez de l'argent, que (faire<sup>2</sup>)-vous? 19. Je me demande s'il (pouvoir<sup>2</sup>) partir la semaine prochaine. 20. Il vous aurait téléphoné s'il (avoir) le temps. 21. Nous (pouvoir) sortir si nous avions voulu. 22. Si vous lui (écrire) la semaine dernière, il doit avoir reçu votre lettre. 23. Je viendrai vous voir demain s'il (faire) beau. 24. S'il (aller) à Boston, il a dû parler à votre frère. 25. Il se fâcherait si vous lui (dire) cela. 26. Je ne peux pas vous dire si nous (venir) demain. 27. Il (pouvoir) venir la semaine dernière s'il avait voulu. 28. Attendez-moi, même si je (être) en retard. 29. S'il (partir) hier soir, il arrivera cette après-midi. 30. Vous voilà enfin! Je me demandais si vous (venir).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## DEVOIR AND FALLOIR

1. Devoir with a direct object means *to owe*.

Je lui dois une visite. I owe him a visit.

Devoir followed by an infinitive expresses a moral obligation, a duty, but not a compulsion imposed from without.

Je dois vous avouer que je ne sais pas. I must confess to you that I do not know.

Je dois lui écrire. I must (I am supposed to) write to him.

Devoir also expresses a conjecture, an intention, or a scheduled action, and is used to translate *am to*, *was to*, *must have*, etc.

Nous devons les voir ce soir. We are to see them tonight.

Il devait arriver ce matin. He was to arrive this morning.

Il a dû se douter que vous ne viendriez pas. He must have suspected that you would not come.

2. Falloir expresses a strong necessity or obligation. **Falloir** and **devoir** (in the sense of duty, moral obligation) sometimes overlap in meaning, but **falloir** must be used when the compulsion needs to be stressed.

Il faut que je le voie demain. I must (have to) see him tomorrow.

Il faut que nous partions tout de suite. We must leave immediately.

Il faudra qu'il lui en parle quand il le verra.\* He must (will have to) speak to him about it when he sees him.

Il ne faudra pas lui en parler quand vous le verrez.† You must not speak to him about it when you see him.

\* Future of **falloir** must be used when the obligation is given as a future one.

† In direct address **il faut** may be used with the Infinitive. **Vous le verrez** are the only words needed to indicate the person addressed.

NOTE. The negative of **falloir** can only mean *must not*. *Not to have to* meaning *not to be compelled to* must be translated **ne pas être obligé de**, or **il n'est pas nécessaire que**, or **n'avoir pas besoin de**.

<p><b>Vous n'êtes pas obligé de le faire.</b>  <b>Il n'est pas nécessaire que vous</b>  <b>le fassiez.</b></p>	}	You don't have to do it.
--	---	--------------------------

### 3. Avoidance of **falloir que**

To avoid the awkwardness and unnaturalness of an Imperfect Subjunctive in the subordinate clause, one of the following constructions must be used.

**a. Falloir** with an indirect object pronoun plus an infinitive. The pronoun object takes the place of the subject.

<b>Il leur a fallu écrire.</b>	They had to write.
(instead of <b>il a fallu qu'ils écrivissent</b> ).	

**b. Devoir** plus Infinitive. This construction is required when the subject is a noun or a pronoun.

<p><b>Ils ont dû écrire.</b>  <b>Jean a dû écrire.</b></p>	}	They had to write.
(instead of <b>il a fallu qu'ils écrivissent</b> ).		

**4. Il faut** with an infinitive is used in an impersonal statement to translate *one must*.

<b>Il faut être charitable.</b>	One must be charitable.
<b>Il faut travailler pour réussir.</b>	One must work in order to succeed.

**Il faut**, or another tense of **falloir** with an indirect object pronoun, and followed by a partitive or an expression of quantity, is used instead of **avoir besoin** to stress the need. The indirect object pronoun corresponds to the subject of *to need* in English.

<b>Il nous faut de la patience.</b>	We need (must have) patience.
<b>Il lui faudra beaucoup d'argent</b> <b>pour ce voyage.</b>	He will need (will have to have) a lot of money for this trip.

**Il faut** or another tense of **falloir** is used also when it has the meaning of *to take, to require*.

<b>Il ne faut qu'une heure pour aller d'ici à New-York.</b>	It takes only one hour to go from here to New York.
<b>Combien de temps vous faudrait-il pour finir vos leçons?</b>	How long will it take you to finish your lessons?
<b>Il faudra beaucoup d'argent.</b>	It will take (require) a lot of money.

### OUGHT TO, OUGHT TO HAVE

*Ought to (should)* is translated by the Conditional of **devoir**. *Ought to have (should have)*, by the Past Conditional of **devoir**.

<b>Vous devriez lui dire de se taire.</b>	You ought to (should) tell him to keep quiet.
<b>Vous auriez dû le faire il y a longtemps.</b>	You should have (ought to have) done it a long time ago.

### WOULD LIKE: VOULOIR, AIMER, DÉSIRER

*Would like (should like)* in English is used to express a wish or a desire. It may be translated in four ways:

1. By the Present of **vouloir** to express a wish or want.

<b>Je veux une tasse de café.</b>	I want a cup of coffee.
<b>Voulez-vous une tasse de thé?</b>	Would you like (Do you want) a cup of tea?

2. By the Present Conditional of **vouloir** to express a request politely.

<b>Je voudrais que vous le fassiez maintenant.</b>	I should like you to do it now.
--	---------------------------------

3. By **désirer** in the Present Indicative or Present Conditional to express a wish or request still more politely or courteously.

<b>Je désire une tasse de thé.</b>	I should like a cup of tea, (please).
<b>Je désirerais que vous partiez.</b>	I should like you to go.
<b>Je désire que vous partiez.</b>	I wish you would go. (Please go.)



4. By the Present Conditional of *aimer* when *would like* has the meaning of *would find pleasing*.

Je savais que vous aimeriez cette robe.

I knew you would like (would be pleased with) this dress.

#### EXERCISE B

Translate the words in parentheses. 1. (We are to) partir vers trois heures. 2. (They will have to arrive) de bonne heure. 3. (You ought to) prendre votre manteau. 4. (He must have) manqué son train. 5. Quel train (was he to) prendre? 6. (He ought to have taken) le train de 9 heures. 7. (He should) être ici maintenant. 8. Combien de temps (will it take her) pour venir? 9. (It takes) un peu plus de vingt minutes par l'express. 10. (Paul must work) dur l'hiver prochain. 11. (He should have worked) davantage l'hiver dernier. 12. Il ne sait jamais ses leçons, (he must be) paresseux. 13. (He will need) beaucoup de courage. 14. Je me suis trompé (I owe you) des excuses. 15. Je suis à peu près sûr que (you must know him). 16. (I should like) que vous portiez ce paquet au bureau de poste. 17. (It will take me) du temps et de la patience. 18. Dites à votre cousine que (we must leave) immédiatement. 19. (Should you like) venir avec nous dans le parc? 20. (They must have) beaucoup d'argent pour vivre ainsi. 21. (One must not be) impatient avec les enfants. 22. (It will require) plusieurs années d'efforts. 23. (You don't need to learn) ce poème par cœur. 24. (They had to work) pendant leurs vacances. 25. (You must eat) si vous avez faim.

#### TRANSLATION

##### LE LIEUTENANT FARNOW

Pour faire plaisir à son père et à sa sœur, Jean a consenti à les accompagner à la soirée donnée par le conseiller Brausig.

Pendant le dîner une discussion s'est élevée, et Jean a répondu avec passion aux attaques dirigées contre la France et l'Alsace par un des

convives allemands. Aussitôt après le dîner le lieutenant Farnow a emmené Jean à l'écart :

— Qu'aviez-vous ce soir, mon cher, je trouve que vous avez été bien violent; j'ai été vingt fois tenté de vous répondre, mais j'ai mieux aimé attendre. C'est un peu pour moi tout ce que vous avez dit, n'est-ce pas ?

— Beaucoup pour vous. J'ai voulu vous dire très nettement ce que j'étais, et vous le dire devant témoins : car il faut que vous sachiez que, si je ne peux pas m'opposer aux volontés de mon père, je ne veux pas que l'on puisse confondre mes idées et les siennes.

— Je l'ai bien compris. Vous avez dû apprendre, évidemment, que j'aime votre sœur.

— Oui.

— Est-ce tout ce que vous trouvez à me répondre ? Reconnaissez-vous que ma famille est de bonne noblesse et que c'est un honneur, pour une femme, d'épouser un officier de cavalerie allemande ?

— Si cette femme n'est pas une Alsacienne, oui. Je vous estime beaucoup, Farnow; mais votre mariage avec Lucienne atteindrait trois personnes chez nous. Et songez à ce qui arriverait à notre pauvre famille, si cette cause de division était ajoutée aux autres.

— Nous nous éloignerons, fit l'officier, je quitterai Strasbourg.

— Ma mère n'acceptera jamais ce mariage.

D'un mouvement de la main, Farnow montra qu'il écartait l'objection.

— Il y a aussi mon grand-père, celui que l'Alsace avait élu pour protester, et qui ne peut pas, aujourd'hui, renier tout son passé.

— Je ne dois rien à M. Philippe Oberlé, interrompit Farnow. Dans quelques jours mon oncle M. de Kasewitz ira demander officiellement la main de Mlle Oberlé pour son neveu. Il l'obtiendra parce que Mlle Lucienne et moi nous nous aimons, parce que votre père m'a déjà accepté, et surtout, parce que je le veux, moi, Wilhelm von Farnow !

— Reste à savoir si vous aurez bien agi. . .

— Selon ma volonté, cela me suffit.

— Que d'orgueil il y a dans votre amour, Farnow !

— Il y en a dans tout ce que je fais, Oberlé.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**faire plaisir**, to please  
**la soirée**, (evening) party  
**s'élever**, to arise  
**à l'écart**, aside  
**aimer mieux**, to prefer  
**j'aimerais mieux**, I would rather  
**s'opposer**, to oppose, resist  
**de bonne noblesse**, of noble blood  
**atteindre**, to affect painfully

**s'éloigner**, to move away  
**écarter une objection**, to dismiss an objection  
**celui que (qui)**, he whom, (who)  
**reste à savoir**, it remains to be seen  
**s'agir de**, to be a question of  
**faire savoir**, to inform, let know  
**avoir lieu**, to take place

## EXERCISE C

1. If Lucienne should marry Farnow, the grandfather would never forgive her. 2. If she were a true Alsatian, she would not marry a German officer. 3. Farnow ought to know that Mme Oberlé will not give her consent. 4. If she can prevent it, the marriage will not take place. 5. Farnow, whose regiment is in Strasbourg, offers to move away. 6. But he must know that Lucienne would rather live near Alsheim. 7. I must tell you that the marriage will be a cause of discord in the family. 8. A discussion arose about (**au sujet de**) French civilization. 9. The arguments which they used were too violent. 10. Everybody could see that something was the matter with John. 11. We can guess of what and of whom he was thinking. 12. The house in which we live is very old. 13. Here is the girl with whose sister you danced last night. 14. The man whose car you repaired wants to speak to you. 15. It will take several months to complete this house. 16. We do not know whether they will be able to come. 17. If they have bought a new car, I am sure they will come. 18. If you had invited them, they would not have accepted. 19. We admire the patience with which you listened to them. 20. If you have found my overcoat, send it to me right away. 21. It will require a lot of money to build this monument. 22. The student whose room you share is my best friend. 23. It is possible that they are in Paris, but I doubt it. 24. If I should lend you my fountain pen, I am sure you will break it. 25. Have you sent them the money which they need for their trip? 26. He must be blind if he does not see his mistakes. 27. You ought not to have consented to dine with them. 28. You will have to work much better next term. 29. You could have helped them to (**à**) do their homework.

# LESSON ELEVEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

<i>Masc. sing.</i>	<b>ce (cet)</b>	this or that
<i>Fem. sing.</i>	<b>cette</b>	this or that
<i>Plural</i>	<b>ces</b>	these or those

**Cet** is used before a singular masculine noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

**-ci** or **-là** are added after the noun to distinguish between *this, these* (**-ci**) and *that, those* (**-là**), when things or persons designated are contrasted, or when the distinction seems to be essential for clarity.

**-ci** or **-là** are usually omitted when things or persons designated are followed by a distinguishing complement, or if there is no possibility of confusing them with others of their kind.

**Ces robes-ci sont jolies, mais  
celles-là sont plus légères.**

These dresses are pretty, but  
those are lighter.

**Ne prenez pas ce livre-là, prenez  
celui-ci.**

Do not take that book, take this  
one.

**Reposons-nous sous cet arbre-ci.** )  
(*the nearest of several trees*)

Let us rest under this tree.

**Reposons-nous sous cet arbre.**  
(*a tree in the immediate vicinity*)

**Qu'est-ce que c'est que cette  
foule au bout de la rue? (au  
bout de la rue, distinguishing  
complement)**

What is that crowd at the end  
of the street?

**-là** is used with periods of time when the period is entirely passed, or has not yet begun. **-ci**, indicating the current period of time, is usually omitted except with **mois** and **heure**.

Il avait l'air fatigué ce soir-là.	He looked tired that evening.
Ne venez pas lundi, je serai absent ce jour-là.	Do not come Monday; I shall be absent that day.
Je ne l'ai pas vu cette semaine.	I have not seen him this week.
Je resterai ici cette année.	I shall stay here this year.
Nous le ferons ce mois-ci.	We shall do it this month.
Où serez-vous demain à cette heure-ci?	Where shall you be tomorrow at this hour?

## II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

TABLE OF VARIABLE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Masc. sing.	<b>celui</b>	} this, that, the one
Fem. sing.	<b>celle</b>	
Masc. plur.	<b>ceux</b>	} these, those, the ones
Fem. plur.	<b>celles</b>	

**-ci** and **-là** are added after the demonstrative pronouns only when they are not followed by a relative clause, or by a prepositional complement: **celui-ci**, *this one*; **celui-là**, *that one*; *etc.*

J'aime votre manteau, mais je préfère celui que vous portiez hier.	I like your coat, but I prefer the one (which) you wore yesterday.
De quelle tante parlez-vous? De celle avec qui je suis allé en Europe.	Of which aunt are you speaking? Of the one with whom I went to Europe.
Quelle route prendrons-nous? Celle-ci ou celle-là?	Which road shall we take? This one or that one?
Ces élèves-ci travaillent mieux que ceux-là.	These students work better than those.
J'ai trouvé votre maison, mais pas celle de votre frère.*	I found your house, but not your brother's.

\* Observe that the English possessive *your brother's* is rendered: *that (the one) of your brother*.

**Celle-ci est-elle à vendre? \*** Is this one for sale?  
 (Est-ce que celle-ci est à  
 vendre?)

\* Note that in questions having a demonstrative pronoun as the subject, the construction of the sentence is the same as if the subject were a noun.

**Celui-ci, celle-ci**, etc., are used also to translate *the latter*, *i.e.* the antecedent nearest the pronoun; **celui-là, celle-là**, etc., *the former*, *i.e.* the antecedent farthest from the pronoun.

**J'ai rencontré Marie et sa cousine. Celle-ci vient d'arriver.** I met Mary and her cousin. The latter has just arrived.

#### TABLE OF INVARIABLE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

<b>ce</b>	this, that, it
<b>ceci</b>	this, it
<b>cela</b>	( <i>ça in informal speech</i> ) that, it

1. **Ce** is used as the subject of **être** (or **devoir** + **être**) followed by an adjective, when *this, that, it* refer:

a. to a thing pointed out but not named.

<b>C'est très lourd.</b>	It (this) is very heavy.
<b>C'est trop difficile.</b>	It's too difficult.
<b>Ce doit être intéressant.</b>	It must be interesting.

b. to a statement.

<b>Vous avez essayé, c'est possible, mais vous n'avez pas réussi.</b>	You have tried, it is possible, but you have not succeeded.
<b>Je ne trouve pas mon chapeau, c'est étrange.</b>	I do not find my hat; it (this) is strange.

c. When the antecedent is **ceci** or **cela**.

<b>Goûtez ceci, c'est très bon.</b>	Taste this; it's very good.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------

d. When **être** is followed by an adverb or a prepositional complement.

<b>C'est trop.</b>	That's too much.
<b>C'est pour vous qu'il parle.</b>	It is for you that he is talking.

WARNING. When *it* has a definite noun for its antecedent it must be translated *il, elle*.

<b>Pourquoi ne finissez-vous pas votre leçon?</b>	<b>Elle est trop difficile.</b>	Why don't you finish <i>your lesson</i> ?	It is too difficult.
<b>Que pensez-vous de mon manteau?</b>	<b>Il est très beau.</b>	What do you think of <i>my coat</i> .	It is very beautiful.

When *it* is the subject of an impersonal adjective expression introducing a subordinate clause (*cf.* Lesson Nine, page 106), the impersonal *il* is used.

<b>Il est possible qu'il vienne.</b>	It is possible that he will come.
<b>Il est certain que vous avez raison.</b>	It is certain that you are right.

2. *Ceci* and *cela* are used:

a. to designate a thing pointed out but not named.

<b>Prenez ceci; donnez-moi cela.</b>	Take this; give me that.
--------------------------------------	--------------------------

b. to refer to a statement or to a thought. *Cela* refers to what precedes, *ceci*, to what follows.

<b>Marchons plus vite; cela nous réchauffera.</b>	Let us walk faster; it (that) will warm us up.
<b>Écoutez ceci: ne comptez pas sur lui.</b>	Listen to this: Do not depend on him.
<b>Vous n'auriez pas dû faire cela.</b>	You should not have done that.

c. as subject of any verb but *être*. Their use with *être* is limited as stated in 3 and 4 following.

<b>Ceci vous intéressera.</b>	This will interest you.
<b>Cela ne fait rien.</b>	It (that) does not matter.
<b>Ceci vous convient-il?</b>	Does this suit you?

3. *Ceci* and *cela* must be used with *être* to contrast *this* and *that*.

<b>Cela est trop lourd; ceci ne l'est pas.</b>	That is too heavy; this is not.
<b>Ceci est trop facile; lisez cela.</b>	This is too easy; read that.

4. **Ceci** and **cela** may be used instead of **ce** for emphasis.

<b>Ceci est beaucoup trop facile.</b>	<i>This is much too easy.</i>
<b>Cela est incroyable.</b>	<i>That is unbelievable.</i>

5. **Ce** is used before **qui**, **que**, and **dont** as follows:

<b>ce qui</b> as subject of the verb	} <i>what, that = that which</i>
<b>ce que</b> as object of the verb	
<b>ce dont</b>	<i>what = that of which</i>

**Ce dont** is used if the French verb requires a preposition before a noun complement. **Ce dont** replaces **de** + whatever the complement might have been.

<b>Je ne sais pas ce qui l'intéresse.</b>	I don't know what (that which) interests him.
<b>Il s'intéresse à ce qui se passe.</b>	He is interested in what is happening.
<b>Je vous donnerai ce que vous voulez.</b>	I shall give you what you want.
<b>Tout ce que vous dites est faux.</b>	All that you say is false.
<b>Je vous donnerai ce dont vous avez besoin. (<i>avoir besoin de</i>)</b>	I shall give you what you need.
<b>Ce dont nous parlons ne vous regarde pas.</b>	What we are talking about does not concern you. ( <i>that of which we are talking</i> )

NOTE 1. Observe the construction in the following sentences.

<b>Ce qui me plaît, c'est de le voir travailler.</b>	What pleases me is to see him working.
<b>Ce que je veux, c'est une nouvelle maison.</b>	What I want is a new house.
<b>Tout ce que j'ai dit, c'est que vous ne viendriez pas.</b>	All I said is that you would not come.

**Ce = it** is generally used as italicized above if **être** is followed by a predicate noun or a clause used as a predicate nominative. It is not used if **être** is followed by a predicate adjective.

<b>Ce que vous dites est drôle.</b>	What you say is funny.
-------------------------------------	------------------------



NOTE 2. Since **de quoi** is used for questions, it is also used in indirect questions (*cf.* Lesson Ten, page 113).

**Elle sait de quoi il parle.**

She knows what he is talking about (of what he is talking).

**Demandez-lui de quoi il a besoin.**

Ask him what he needs.

### III. THE NEUTER PRONOUN **CE**

The neuter pronoun **ce** anticipates the logical subject. It is used with a third person form of **être** followed by a noun or pronoun, or by an adjective in the superlative which refers to a previously named person or thing. **Ce** translates *he, she, they, it, this, that* when they are followed by a form of *to be* and a predicate nominative.

**Je connais Mme G., c'est une amie de ma mère.**

I know Mrs. G.; she is a friend of my mother.

**Qui frappe? Est-ce le facteur? Oui, c'est lui.**

Who is knocking (at the door)? Is it the postman? Yes, it is (he).

**C'est une histoire intéressante.**

It is an interesting story.

**C'était une mauvaise excuse.**

It was a poor excuse.

**C'est vous qui nous avez dit cela.**

It is you who told us that.

**Est-ce vos plumes qui sont sur la table? Oui, ce sont celles que j'ai achetées ce matin.**

Are those pens on my table yours? Yes, they are the ones I bought this morning.

**Est-ce que ce sont vos amis qui sont arrivés? Ce sont eux.**

Are they your friends who have arrived? They are.

**Regardez ce timbre, c'est le plus beau de ma collection.**

Look at this stamp; it is the finest in my collection.

**Ce** may also be followed by a form of **devoir** plus **être**.

**Ce doit être votre tour.**

It must be your turn.

NOTE. In his reading, the student may find a personal pronoun sometimes used instead of **ce**, especially if a person has already been identified. However, it is safer for the student to apply the above rules.

## IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS

1. The Subjunctive is used after certain conjunctions indicating
  - a. *a purpose*: **pour que, afin que, de sorte que**, in order that, so that;
  - b. *a condition*: **pourvu que**, provided that;
  - c. *a concession*: **bien que, quoique**, although;
  - d. *a restriction*: **à moins que**, unless.

It is also used after **de crainte que, de peur que**, for fear that.

<b>Je parle lentement pour que vous compreniez mieux.</b>	I speak slowly in order that you may understand better.
<b>Je le ferai pourvu que vous m'aidiez.</b>	I shall do it provided you help me.
<b>Elle vous le donnera bien que vous ne le méritiez pas.</b>	She will give it to you although you do not deserve it.
<b>Je viendrai à moins qu'il pleuve.</b>	I shall come unless it rains.
<b>Il parle lentement de crainte que nous ne comprenions pas.</b>	He speaks slowly for fear that we may not understand.

NOTE. Do not confuse *may* expressing possibility with *may* expressing authorization. The latter is rendered by the verb **pouvoir**.

<b>You may come in.</b>	<b>Vous pouvez entrer.</b>
<b>Do not make any noise so that your mother may sleep.</b>	<b>Ne faites pas de bruit afin que votre mère puisse dormir.</b>

2. The Subjunctive is used after the conjunctions of time **jusqu'à ce que, until; en attendant que, until** meaning *while waiting*; **avant que, before** (see Lesson Five, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS for the translation of *not until*).

<b>Je resterai ici jusqu'à ce que vous reveniez.</b>	I shall remain here until you come back.
<b>Je lirai en attendant que vous ayez fini.</b>	I shall read until you have finished.
<b>Il faudra que je parte avant que vous reveniez.</b>	I shall have to leave before you come back.

NOTE. Other conjunctions of time, such as **après que, pendant que aussitôt que**, etc. are followed by the Indicative.

3. The Subjunctive is used after the conjunction **sans que**, *without*.

<b>Faites-le sans que Paul le sache.</b>	Do it without Paul's knowing it.
<b>Oui, faisons-le sans qu'il s'en aperçoive.</b>	Yes, let us do it without his noticing it.

NOTE. Do not confuse the conjunctions **pour que**, **afin que**, **avant que**, **sans que**, etc. with the prepositions **pour**, **afin de**, **avant**, **sans**, etc. which are used before an Infinitive when its subject is the same as that of the main verb (*cf.* Lesson Six, page 68).

<b>Il est parti avant de manger.</b>	He left before eating.
<b>Il est entré sans dire un mot.</b>	He came in without saying a word.
<b>Nous avons couru pour nous réchauffer.</b>	We ran in order to get warm.

4. The Subjunctive is used after **soit que . . . soit que** (or **ou que**) . . ., *whether . . . or whether . . .*; **que . . . ou non**, *whether . . . or not*.

<b>Soit que vous consentiez, soit que (ou que) vous refusiez, cela ne fait rien.</b>	Whether you consent or whether you refuse, it does not matter.
<b>Je le ferai, que vous le vouliez ou non.</b>	I shall do it, whether you wish it or not.

5. **De sorte que**, **de telle sorte que**, **de manière que**, meaning *in such a way that* and introducing, not a purpose, but a result, take the Indicative. When these conjunctions introduce a purpose they require the Subjunctive.

<b>J'ai parlé de (telle) sorte qu'ils ont compris.</b>	I spoke in such a way that they understood.
<b>Je partirai de bonne heure de sorte que j'arriverai à temps.</b>	I shall leave early so that I shall arrive on time.

*but*

<b>Je parle lentement de sorte que vous compreniez.</b> (purpose of the speaker)	I speak slowly so that you may understand.
--	--

## VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **distraire**, **fuir** (Table 1); **s'asseoir**, **cueillir** (Table 2).

What forms of **s'asseoir** and **cueillir** are not derived from the principal parts?

## EXERCISE A

*Translate the English words in parentheses, or replace the dash by a demonstrative adjective plus the noun in parentheses at the beginning of the sentence, adding -ci or -là when necessary. (Be prepared to explain the use or omission of -ci, -là.)*

1. (la phrase) Traduisez — en français.
2. (les maisons) Pouvez-vous me dire laquelle de — est à louer?
3. (This one) est à louer, (that one) est à vendre.
4. (les deux demoiselles) Connaissez-vous — qui causent avec Paul?
5. (l'exercice) — est plus difficile que (that one).
6. (la robe) Je prendrai — ; les autres sont trop chères.
7. Vous n'avez pas apporté (what) je vous ai demandé.
8. (le monsieur) Qui est — ? (He is) notre professeur d'histoire.
9. Ne répétez pas (that); (it is) un secret.
10. Dites-lui (what) s'est passé hier.
11. (la dame) Voyez-vous — près de la fenêtre? (She is) ma tante.
12. Vous ne m'aviez pas dit (that). (It is) très intéressant.
13. (la plume) Ne prenez pas — ; prenez (that one).
14. Ne lui dites pas (what) nous avons fait; (it) le fâcherait.
15. Il nous a apporté (what) nous avons besoin.
16. Il a parlé trop vite, de sorte que (we did not understand).
17. Il viendra nous voir avant que (we go<sup>2</sup>) à la campagne.
18. Il le fera quoiqu' (he is<sup>2</sup>) très fatigué.
19. Il ne viendra pas à moins que vous (invite him).
20. Lisez les journaux pendant que (I am finishing) cette lettre.
21. Je sortirai pour que vous (may<sup>2</sup>) travailler en paix.
22. Je resterai avec les enfants jusqu'à ce que (you come back).
23. Il l'a deviné (without our telling him) ce qui est arrivé.
24. J'ai dû marcher vite afin d' (arrive) à l'heure.
25. Prenez ces livres. Lesquels? (These or those?)
26. Je vous écrirai pourvu que (you leave me) votre adresse.
27. Je ne vous dirai pas (what) se passe, ni (what) il a dit.
28. Je ne viendrai pas (unless you need me).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## TO MEET: RENCONTRER, RETROUVER, FAIRE LA CONNAISSANCE DE

**Rencontrer** means *to meet by chance, to encounter*. **Retrouver** means *to meet at a prearranged time or place*. **Faire la connaissance de** means *to meet in the sense of to make the acquaintance of*.

**Rencontrer** and **retrouver** are used reflexively in the plural when *to meet* means *to meet each other*.

J'ai rencontré un ancien ami.

I met a former friend.

Nous nous sommes rencontrés  
dans le train.

We met on the train.

Je vous retrouverai devant la  
bibliothèque.

I shall meet you in front of the  
library.

Nous nous retrouverons à midi.

We shall meet at noon.

Connaissez-vous Mme G.? Vou-  
lez vous faire sa connais-  
sance? \*

Do you know Mrs. G.? Would  
you like to meet her?

J'ai fait la connaissance de mon  
nouveau professeur.

I met my new professor.

\* Note the use of the possessive adjective with **faire la connaissance**.

## TO MISS: MANQUER, MANQUER À

**Manquer** means *to miss* in the sense of *fail in a purpose*.

Il a manqué l'autobus.

He missed the bus.

**Manquer à quelqu'un** means *to be missed by someone*. Observe the following constructions:

Il manque à son frère.

His brother misses him. (He is  
missed by his brother.)

STEP 1. The English object *him* becomes the French subject **il**.

STEP 2. The English subject *his brother* becomes the French indirect object **à son frère**. In the sentence: *He misses me*: *me* becomes **je**, *he* becomes **lui**: **Je lui manque**.

Sa femme lui manque.

He misses his wife.

Vous manquez à vos amis.

Your friends miss you.

**TO PLAY: JOUER DE, JOUER À, JOUER**

**Jouer de** is used in the sense of *to play an instrument*; **jouer à** in the sense of *to play games*; and **jouer** alone is used in all other cases.

Savez-vous jouer du violon?	Can you play the violin?
Il joue au golf et au tennis.	He plays golf and tennis.
Il joue bien son rôle.	He plays his part well.

*To play, have a game of*, in the sense of a set, a round, a hand of is translated *faire une partie*.

Faisons une partie de tennis.	Let us have a game of tennis.
Je ferai une partie d'échecs.	I shall play a game of chess.

**TO SIT: S'ASSEOIR, ÊTRE ASSIS**

**S'asseoir** expresses an action: *to sit down*; **être assis** expresses a state, refers to the position. **Assis** is a past participle used as an adjective, translating *seated* or *sitting*.

Asseyez-vous, je vous prie.	Please sit down.
Elle était assise dans le jardin.	She sat (was sitting) in the garden.

**TO STAND UP: SE LEVER; TO STAND: ÊTRE (SE TENIR) DEBOUT, RESTER DEBOUT**

**Se lever** is used to denote the act of standing up.

Il s'est levé quand nous sommes entrés.	He stood up (rose, got up) when we entered.
---	---

**Être debout** denotes *to stand* in the sense of *to be standing, to be on one's feet*. **Se tenir debout** denotes *to stand motionless*. **Rester debout** denotes *to stand* in the sense of *to remain standing*. **Debout** is an adverb and is therefore invariable.

Est-il assis? Non, il est debout.	Is he sitting? No, he is standing.
Je les ai trouvés debout devant la cheminée.	I found them standing in front of the fireplace.
Ne restez pas debout.	Don't remain standing.
Elle est restée debout pendant tout le trajet.	She stood during the whole trip.

NOTE. If the context clearly indicates whether a person is sitting or standing, *assis* or *debout* may be omitted. Without specific reference in the context, *se tenir* and *rester* alone mean only *to stay* or *to remain*.

Il s'est tenu sous un arbre pendant l'orage.	He remained under a tree during the storm.
Il est resté toute la journée dans son bureau.	He stayed all day in his office.

### TO BE COMFORTABLE: ÊTRE COMFORTABLE; ÊTRE BIEN

*Être confortable* is used in referring to things; *être bien* is used in referring to persons.

Cette chaise n'est pas confortable.	This chair is not comfortable.
Je suis très bien où je suis.	I am very comfortable where I am.

### EXERCISE B

1. (I met) votre frère, il m'a dit que vous aviez été malade. 2. Pouvez-vous venir (play bridge) avec nous ce soir? 3. (We missed) l'occasion de le voir pendant qu'il était ici. 4. Vous avez l'air d'avoir froid; (sit) près du feu. 5. (Are you comfortable) dans ce fauteuil? 6. (They stood) devant moi, sans oser dire un mot. (*Two ways*). 7. Nous pourrions danser si quelqu'un savait (play the piano). 8. Moi, j'aime mieux (play a game of chess) with Paul. 9. (I shall meet him) au restaurant à midi. 10. Connaissez-vous la dame (sitting) à côté de votre mère? 11. Si vous voulez (meet her), je vous présenterai. 12. (They remained standing) sur le trottoir pendant la revue. 13. Paul et Henri (played a game of tennis) avant le déjeuner. 14. Ma sœur est partie, (I miss her) beaucoup. 15. Je ne veux pas (sit down), je préfère (remain standing). 16. (We met) Mme Duval dans le parc, elle ne nous a pas reconnus. 17. Il est bien élevé, (he stands up) quand une dame entre. 18. Je serai content quand vous serez parti, (I shall not miss you). 19. (I met) une femme charmante chez les Dubois. (*Two ways*) 20. Dépêchez-vous, ou vous allez (miss) le train. 21. Il y avait tellement de monde que j'ai dû (to stand). 22. Jeanne s'ennuie, (she misses her husband). 23. (We shall meet) à cinq heures chez moi. 24. Elle a envie de se promener, elle est restée (sitting) toute la journée. 25. (Did you miss me) pendant mon absence?

## TRANSLATION

## DÉCISION

La visite de M. de Kasewitz n'eut pas lieu à la date que Farnow avait annoncée. Vers la fin de juin, au moment où le haut fonctionnaire s'apprêtait à venir à Alsheim demander la main de Lucienne pour son neveu, une dépêche l'avait prié d'attendre quelques jours. L'état de M. Philippe Oberlé s'était subitement aggravé.

Le vieillard, qu'il avait fallu prévenir de ce qui se passait dans la maison, venait d'apprendre la vérité. Le soir même, la fièvre se déclarait, et bientôt, par sa persistance inquiétait les Oberlé.

Quant à Mme Oberlé, la pauvre femme, menacée d'une séparation par son mari, avait fini par lui céder et avait promis de ne pas s'opposer au mariage.

Vers le milieu d'août la fièvre qui épuisait M. Philippe disparut. Il fut bientôt certain que la robuste constitution du malade aurait raison de la crise.

Le 22 août, après le dîner, dans le salon où Victor venait d'apporter le café, l'industriel dit à sa femme :

— Mon père est désormais en convalescence. Il n'y a plus de raison pour retarder la visite de M. de Kasewitz. Je vous avertis donc, Monique, qu'elle aura lieu la semaine prochaine. Vous voudrez bien l'annoncer à mon père.

Jean écrivit, le lendemain, à son oncle Ulrich, chez qui il ne pouvait aller :

« Mon oncle, la visite est décidée. Mon père n'en fait aucun mystère, pas même devant les domestiques. Le mariage de ma sœur empêchera le mien. Mais je veux quand même demander celle à qui j'ai dit que je l'aimais. Je veux être sûr de ce qui me brise le cœur. Vous irez \* chez M. Bastian; vous lui parlerez pour moi. Vous lui direz que c'est le petit-fils de M. Philippe Oberlé qui aime Odile. Je veux savoir s'il refuse à tout jamais sa fille au beau-frère de Farnow, ou s'il a le courage de mépriser le scandale que causera le mariage de ma sœur ».

\* **vous irez, vous parlerez:** *futures used as imperatives, you shall go, you shall speak.*



## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

au moment où, at the time when  
 s'apprêter à, to get ready to  
 s'aggraver, to grow worse  
 prévenir, to warn, inform  
 avertir, to announce, inform, notify  
 se déclarer, to develop  
 quant à, as for  
 finir par + *infinitive*, to finally . . .  
 aurait raison de, would overcome

la crise, attack (of illness)  
 vous voudrez bien, be so good as to  
 désormais, henceforth  
 retarder, to postpone  
 quand même, nevertheless, however  
 à tout jamais, once and for all, for all  
 time  
 s'intéresser à, to be interested in

## EXERCISE C

1. Do you know Doctor Duval? Yes, he is our best friend. 2. I shall take this coat; that one is too expensive. 3. My house is not so large as my father's. 4. I refuse to (de) lend you this umbrella; you would lose it. 5. I shall remember that when you ask me for something. 6. Do you see that gentleman in front of the library? 7. He is my history professor. Would you like [to] meet him? 8. Is he the one who gives a course in (de) modern history? 9. I shall help you although I have a lot of work myself. 10. I shall never finish this lesson unless you help me. 11. Is it your father who gave you that new chair? Yes, it is he. 12. What do you think of these two cars? 13. I like the color of this one, but that one looks more comfortable. 14. It is a chair that used to belong to my grandfather. 15. They will come<sup>2</sup> early so that we may<sup>2</sup> take a walk together. 16. I shall meet you at two o'clock, provided I do not miss the train. 17. Pay attention to what he says; it is very important. 18. What interests me is this: Where did you find that money? 19. We have not seen her for a long time. We miss her. 20. You ought to learn to (à) play tennis or golf. 21. Do not stand like that in the middle of the room. Sit down. 22. Mr. Oberlé will have to tell his father what is happening. 23. Lucienne cannot marry without his knowing<sup>2</sup> it. 24. He has already notified his wife of de Kassewitz's visit. 25. She asks her husband to postpone this visit. 26. He consents to wait until his father is better. 27. John wants his Uncle Ulrich to go (to) see Mr. Bastian. 28. The former will ask for Odile's hand for John. 29. Will Mr. Bastian refuse his daughter to the grandson of his old friend?

# LESSON TWELVE

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
<b>mon</b>	<b>ma</b>	<b>mes</b>	my
<b>ton</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>tes</b>	thy
<b>son</b>	<b>sa</b>	<b>ses</b>	his, her, or its
<b>notre</b>		<b>nos</b>	our
<b>votre</b>		<b>vos</b>	your
<b>leur</b>		<b>leurs</b>	their

1. Possessive adjectives agree in gender and in number with the object possessed. They agree only in person and number with the possessor. For reasons of euphony **mon**, **ton**, **son** are used instead of **ma**, **ta**, **sa** before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or a mute h. The adjectives must be repeated before each noun.

<b>mon frère, ma sœur, mes amis</b>	my brother my sister, my friends
<b>son père, sa mère, ses enfants</b>	his (her) father, mother, children
<b>Je lui ai donné ma plume et mon crayon.</b>	I gave him my pen and pencil.

NOTE. When, to avoid ambiguity, it becomes necessary to indicate the gender of the possessor, a disjunctive pronoun is added after the noun.

<b>J'ai vu Marie et Henri; son père à elle est très malade.</b>	I saw Mary and Henry; her father is very ill.
<b>J'ai déjeuné chez M. et Mme Dubois. Son frère à lui était là aussi.</b>	I had lunch at Mr. and Mrs. Dubois'. His brother was there also.

2. The definite article is used instead of the possessive adjective with parts of the body, provided that (a) the possessor is clearly indicated, (b) the part of the body is not accompanied by a qualifying adjective or qualifying phrase. This does not apply to **droit** (*right*) and **gauche** (*left*).

Carefully observe the following constructions:

a. When the subject performs an action *with* a part of his body, the construction is the same as in English, except that the definite article replaces the possessive adjective. The subject indicates the possessor.

**Elle a baissé les yeux.**

She lowered her eyes.

**Le cheval a dressé les oreilles.**

The horse pricked up his ears.

**Il a levé la main droite.**

He raised his right arm.

b. When the action is performed by the subject *on* a part of his own body, intentionally or not, a verb with a reflexive pronoun is used. The possessor of the part receiving the action is indicated by the reflexive pronoun.

**Elle se lave la figure.**

She washes her face.

**Je me suis cassé la jambe.**

I broke my leg.

**Il s'est fait mal à la main.**

He hurt his hand.

c. When an action is performed on (to) a part of *another person's body*, an indirect noun or pronoun object (*see NOTE*) is used to indicate who receives the action.

**Le coiffeur m'a lavé les cheveux.**

The hairdresser washed my hair.

**Je lui ai fait mal à la main.**

I hurt his hand.

**Elle lave les mains à son petit frère.**

She is washing her little brother's hands.

NOTE. Compare the preceding sentence with the following. Note that **à** followed by a noun as an indirect object is used only if a part of the body receives a direct physical action.

**Elle regardait les yeux de sa mère.**

She was looking at her mothers' eyes.

d. The possessive adjective, however, must be used when the part of the body is qualified by an adjective other than **droit** or **gauche**, or by a phrase.

(1) If the action is performed by the subject on himself, the construction is the same as in English.

**Il lave ses mains tachées d'encre.**      He washes *his* hands stained with ink.

(2) If the action is performed to another person, and the part of the body is qualified by an adjective or a phrase, the indirect object pronoun is retained to show the possessor.

**On lui a coupé ses longs cheveux blonds.**      They cut her long blond hair.

(3) But if the possessor is expressed by a noun, the possessor is preceded by **de** plus the definite article.

**Il a baisé la belle main blanche de la marquise.**      He kissed the beautiful white hand of the marchioness.

3. The definite article is used when referring to parts of the body with idiomatic expressions such as **avoir chaud (froid) à**. **Avoir mal à** means *to have a . . . ache, to have a sore . . .*

<b>Paul a froid aux mains.</b>	Paul's hands are cold.
<b>Avez-vous chaud aux pieds?</b>	Are your feet warm?
<b>Il a mal à la tête.</b>	He has a headache.
<b>J'ai mal à la gorge.</b>	I have a sore throat.

4. Descriptions of qualities which are characteristic of parts of the body are usually introduced in a construction with the verb **avoir**.

**Elle a un joli teint.**      She has a pretty complexion.

Although the construction with the verb **être** is also grammatically correct as in **Son teint est joli**, the construction with **avoir** is more idiomatic and generally preferred. This construction requires in French the use of an article. The choice between the definite or indefinite

article is frequently a matter of too subtle distinction to be fully discussed here. At this stage the following rules will be sufficient to enable the student to use the correct construction without getting into subtleties.

a. When the noun is preceded by an adjective or by one of several adjectives, use **un, une** for the singular, **de** for the plural.

<b>Cyrano avait un grand nez.</b>	Cyrano had a big nose.
<b>Les Gaulois avaient de longues moustaches.</b>	The Gauls had long moustaches.
<b>Elle a de grands yeux bleus.</b>	She has large blue eyes.

b. When the noun is followed by a single adjective, or by two adjectives joined by a conjunction, it is possible to use **le, la, les** or **un, une, des**. **Le, la, les** are usually used rather than **un, une, des** when the quality is a distinguishing characteristic such as color or texture.

<b>Cyrano avait un nez remarquable.</b>	Cyrano's nose was remarkable.
<b>Elle a les cheveux blonds.</b>	She has blond hair.
<b>Elle a les cheveux blonds et bouclés.</b>	She has blond and curly hair.
<b>Elle a des (les) yeux brillants.</b>	Her eyes are shining.

c. When the noun is followed by a qualified adjective **un, une, des** are used:

<b>Elle a des cheveux noirs magnifiques.</b>	She has magnificent black hair.
--	---------------------------------

Note that **Il a des cheveux blancs** conveys a different meaning from **Il a les cheveux blancs**. The last sentence might be translated *He has hair that is white* or *His hair is all white* while the first means *He has (some) white hair* or *His hair is turning white*.

5. When there are several possessors, each possessing one object of the same kind, the objects possessed are expressed in French by the singular, quite contrary to English usage. Note that the possessive

adjective agrees in gender and number with the object possessed and in person and number with the possessor.

<b>Ils ont vendu chèrement leur vie.</b> (Each had but one life.)	They sold their lives dearly.
<b>Ils ont levé la main tous ensemble.</b> (Each raised one hand.)	They all raised their hands together.
<b>Les élèves n'ont pas préparé leur leçon de français.</b> (Each one had the same lesson to prepare.)	The pupils have not prepared their French lessons.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<i>Masc. Sing.</i>	<i>Fem. Sing.</i>	
<b>le mien</b>	<b>la mienne</b>	mine
<b>le tien</b>	<b>la tienne</b>	thine
<b>le sien</b>	<b>la sienne</b>	his, hers, or its
<b>le nôtre</b>	<b>la nôtre</b>	ours
<b>le vôtre</b>	<b>la vôtre</b>	yours
<b>le leur</b>	<b>la leur</b>	theirs

The plural is formed by adding an **s** to the above forms and using the plural article **les**: **les miens**, **les miennes**, etc. **De** and **à** contract in the usual way with **le** and **les** into **du** and **des**, **au** and **aux**.

Note the circumflex accent over **le (la) nôtre**, **le (la) vôtre**, and **les vôtres**. Do not confuse the possessive pronouns with the possessive adjectives which have no accent.

1. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with their antecedent, and in person and number with the possessor.

<b>Voici votre chapeau mais je ne trouve pas le mien.</b>	Here is your hat, but I do not find mine.
<b>Je préfère votre maison à la leur.</b>	I prefer your house to theirs.
<b>Moi je préfère la sienne.</b>	I prefer his (or hers).
<b>Voici vos livres, les nôtres sont là-bas.</b>	Here are your books; ours are over there.

2. When attributing, or inquiring about, ownership, use the construction **être à** + a disjunctive pronoun. **Être à** in such a case is the equivalent of **appartenir à** (*to belong to*).

**A qui est ce manteau? Il est à moi.** Whose coat is this? It is mine.  
(It belongs to me.)  
**Cette montre est-elle à vous?** Is this watch yours?

NOTE. A possessive pronoun may also be used instead of the above construction.

**Lesquels de ces livres sont les vôtres?** Which of these books are yours?  
**Ceux-ci sont les miens, ceux-là sont les vôtres.** These are mine; those are yours.

3. The interrogative construction with a possessive pronoun as subject is the same as that with a noun as subject.

**Les vôtres sont-ils sur la table?** Are yours on the table?

4. The English construction *a book of mine* must be translated **un de mes livres** = *one of my books*.

### III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS

The Subjunctive is used after the following conjunctions expressing a concession or restriction: **quoi que**, *whatever*; **quel que**, *whatever* with an antecedent; **qui que**, *whoever*; **si** + adjective + **que**, *however* + adjective or adverb; **quelque** + adjective + **que**, *however*; **où que**, *wherever*.

**Quoi qu'il dise, je ne le crois pas.** Whatever he may say, I don't believe him.  
**Quelles que soient vos raisons, vous avez tort.** Whatever your reasons may be, you are wrong.  
**Qui qu'ils soient, ils ne peuvent pas faire cela.** Whoever they may be, they cannot do that.  
**Si patient que je sois, je ne tolérerai pas cela.** However patient I may be, I shall not tolerate that.  
**Quelque fort que vous soyez, vous ne réussirez jamais.** However strong you may be, you will never succeed.

NOTE 1. Do not confuse **quoi que**, *whatever* (two words) with **quoique**, *although* (one word).

NOTE 2. For the translation and the use of the indefinite pronouns *whoever*, *whatever*, see VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS, page 149.

### VERB REVIEW

Conjugate **suivre**, **vaincre**, **conduire** (Table 1); **conquérir** (Table 2).  
What forms of **conquérir** cannot be derived from the principal parts?

### EXERCISE A

1. Avez-vous parlé à (his) sœur? 2. Nous avons rencontré (her) oncle et (her) père. 3. Où avez-vous laissé (your) chapeau et (your) gants? 4. (Whatever we do), il n'est jamais content. 5. Voici Henri et Louise, (her) frère n'a pas pu venir. 6. La manucure lui a poli (her) ongles. 7. (However strong you may be), je n'ai pas peur de vous. 8. Je ne trouve pas (my) encre, prêtez-moi (yours). 9. Il a perdu (his) bras droit pendant la guerre. 10. (His) mère et (mine) sont des amies intimes. 11. Donnez-moi (your) main pour traverser la rue. 12. Paul, vous êtes-vous lavé (your) dents ce matin? 13. (His) maison est plus grande que (ours). 14. Faites attention, vous m'avez marché sur (my) pied. 15. Ne prenez pas ce livre, il est (mine). 16. (A cousin of mine) est parti pour l'Afrique. 17. (Whatever your curiosity may be), ne la laissez pas voir. 18. Je n'aime pas (her) cheveux si courts. 19. Oui, c'est dommage qu'elle ait coupé (her) longues boucles. 20. Il m'a donné une tape amicale sur (my) épaule. 21. Nous comparions (your) chevaux (to his). 22. Ils n'ont pas écouté (her) histoire. 23. Parce que (yours) était plus intéressante que (hers). 24. Je n'ai pas commencé (my) devoirs et ils ont fini (theirs). 25. (His) femme est arrivée, (yours and mine) seront en retard. 26. (However rich they may be), ils ne sont pas heureux. 27. Les autruches se cachent (their heads) dans le sable. 28. Quelles fleurs sont les plus belles? (His or mine?) 29. Voulez-vous lui laver (his) figure et (his) mains? 30. (Whoever you are), il faut obéir à la loi.



## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## TOUT, TOUTE; TOUS, TOUTES

1. The adjective **tout, tous** (*masc.*); **toute, toutes** (*fem.*) means *all, the whole*.

<b>Toute ma maison est à vous.*</b>	All my house is yours.
<b>Il a mangé tout le pain.</b>	He ate all the bread.
<b>Toute la famille est ici.*</b>	All the family is here.
<b>Tous mes amis sont partis.</b>	All my friends have left.
<b>Toutes nos fleurs sont fanées.</b>	All our flowers are wilted.

\* The article or its equivalent (a possessive or demonstrative adjective) is placed between **tout** and the noun.

Used before periods of time **tous les, toutes les** mean *every*.

<b>Il vient toutes les semaines.</b>	He comes every week.
<b>Il va en ville tous les jours.</b>	He goes to town every day.

**Tout, toute**, singular, used without an article before the noun (except periods of time) mean *every, any, all*.

<b>Tout homme doit se rendre utile.</b>	Every man must make himself useful.
<b>Il a perdu tout courage.</b>	He lost all courage.
<b>J'ai toute raison de croire que vous réussirez.</b>	I have every reason to believe that you will succeed.

2. **Tout** used as a pronoun has the same forms as the adjective. The feminine singular **toute** is seldom used. The neuter pronoun **tout** is invariable and means *anything, everything*.

Note the constructions carefully.

<b>Tout est très cher.</b>	Everything is very expensive.
<b>Ils sont tous venus. (Tous sont venus.)</b>	They all came (all of them came).
<b>Nous partirons tous.*</b>	All of us will leave.
<b>Je les ai tous invités.</b>	I have invited them all (all of them).

\* When **tous** (**toutes**) refers to a first- or second-person subject, it cannot begin the sentence.

<b>Tous ont bien travaillé (ils ont tous bien travaillé).</b>	All of them worked well (they all worked well).
<b>Il les connaît toutes.</b>	He knows them all (he knows all of them, every one of them).

**QUICONQUE: WHOEVER, ANYONE WHO; CELUI QUI: THE ONE WHO, HE WHO; N'IMPORTE QUI: ANYONE; N'IMPORTE QUOI: ANYTHING**

The above words are indefinite pronouns. **Quiconque** and **celui qui** are used as subjects of a verb. Note that in a relative clause used as object of a verb, they are the subjects of the relative clause.

<b>Quiconque a dit cela a menti.</b>	Whoever said that lied.
<b>Je punirai quiconque n'arrivera pas à l'heure.</b>	I shall punish anyone who does not arrive on time.
<b>Celui qui a dit cela est un menteur.</b>	He who said that is a liar.

**N'importe qui**, *anyone*, is used as subject or object of a verb or following a preposition. In a relative clause *whoever*, *anyone who* (subject) must be translated **quiconque**; *anyone whom* or *whomever* (object) is generally expressed by **qui**.

<b>N'importe qui pourrait le faire.</b>	Anyone could do it.
<b>Elle aime n'importe qui.</b>	She likes anyone (at all).
<b>Ces enfants jouent avec n'importe qui.</b>	These children play with anyone.
<b>Donnez-le à quiconque le mérite.</b>	Give it to whoever deserves it.
<b>Amenez qui vous voulez.</b>	Bring whomever you wish.

**N'importe quoi**, *anything*, is used as subject or object of a verb or following a preposition. *Anything* or *everything* (*whatever*) in a relative clause is generally expressed by **tout ce qui** as the subject of the relative clause, **tout ce que** as the object.

<b>N'importe quoi me conviendra.</b>	Anything will suit me.
<b>J'ai si faim que je mangerais n'importe quoi.</b>	I am so hungry that I would eat anything (at all).
<b>Je fais tout ce qui me plaît.</b>	I do whatever (everything) that pleases me.
<b>Faites tout ce que vous voulez.</b>	Do whatever (anything) you want.

**WARNING.** When *anyone* or *anything* have in English the meaning *someone* or *something*, they are translated by **quelqu'un** and **quelque chose**. Do not confuse *anyone* with *anyone* (at all) which is translated **n'importe qui**, nor *anything* with *anything* (at all) which is translated **n'importe quoi**. *Nothing* (not *anything*) is translated **ne . . . rien**.

**Avez-vous vu quelqu'un?**

Have you seen anyone (someone)?

**J'irai avec n'importe qui.**

I shall go with anyone (at all).

**Je mangerai n'importe quoi.**

I shall eat anything (at all).

**Ils n'ont rien acheté.**

They did not buy anything.

**N'IMPORTE QUEL: ANY, ANY . . . AT ALL, WHATEVER; QUELCONQUE: WHATEVER, ANY . . . WHATSOEVER**

The above expressions are used as indefinite adjectives. **N'importe quel** is placed before the noun and **quel** agrees with the noun it qualifies. **Quelconque** is placed after the noun and is invariable.

**Prenez n'importe quelle chaise.**

Take any chair (at all).

**Je vous donnerai n'importe quels livres dont vous avez besoin.**

I shall give you whatever books you need.

**Achetez-moi un journal quelconque.**

Buy me any newspaper whatsoever.

**N'importe**, by itself, is an adverbial expression meaning *it doesn't matter, it is all the same*, etc. In addition to its uses above, it is also used in the adverbial expressions: **n'importe où**, *anywhere, no matter where*; **n'importe quand**, *any time, no matter when*; **n'importe comment**, *anyhow, however, etc.*

The following indefinite pronouns must take **de** before an adjective.

**quelqu'un de charitable**

someone charitable

**quelque chose de bon**

something good

**rien de sûr**

nothing sure

## EXERCISE B

1. Connaissez-vous (all) ces jeunes filles? 2. Oui, je les connais (all). 3. J'ai perdu (all) mon argent. 4. Ils vont au théâtre (every) samedis. 5. (All) espoir est perdu. 6. (Everything) était très intéressant. 7. Il a trouvé ce que (all of them) cherchaient. 8. Je ne connais (anyone) dans cette ville. 9. Nous faisons une promenade (every) jours. 10. (Whoever) a fini peut quitter la classe. 11. Vous n'avez pas de goût, vous achetez (anything at all). 12. Donnez-lui (something hot) à boire. 13. Je voudrais bien connaître (the one who) a dit cela. 14. Je donnerai une récompense à (whoever) retrouvera mon stylo. 15. Je n'aime pas que vous sortiez avec (anyone at all). 16. (Anyone) dans le village vous montrera le chemin. 17. Donnez ces vêtements à (anyone) vous voulez. 18. Je les donnerai to (anyone who) en a besoin. 19. (The whole) ville avait assisté à la cérémonie. 20. Le médecin m'a permis de manger (anything) ce que je veux. 21. J'ai causé avec (someone interesting) ce matin. 22. Nous allons au bord de la mer (every) étés. 23. Ils ont passé (all the) année au Canada. 24. (All of you know) ce que je veux dire, n'est-ce pas? 25. Venez nous voir (any day).

## TRANSLATION

## AUTRE DÉCISION

Quelques semaines plus tard, M. Ulrich était venu chez son neveu Jean.

Les jours approchaient où le jeune homme allait entrer au régiment. Il fallait le prévenir de l'insuccès de la démarche faite auprès du père d'Odile Bastian. M. Ulrich, après avoir longtemps hésité, trouvant plus dur de détruire un amour jeune que de partir pour la guerre, lui avait tout dit.

— Pleure, mon petit, disait l'oncle. Pleure, mais ne te laisse pas abattre. Il faut que tu sois vaillant. Songe que dans trois semaines tu seras à la caserne. Eh bien! l'année passera, tu reviendras parmi nous, et, qui sait?

Jean passa la main sur ses yeux, et dit, résolument :

— Non, mon oncle.

— Quoi, non ?

— Non, répéta Jean. Il est nécessaire que vous le sachiez : je ne ferai pas mon service militaire ici.

— Où le feras-tu donc ?

— En France.

— Et tu pars tout de suite ?

— Non, après mon entrée au régiment. J'avais projeté de partir avant, mais maman a deviné quelque chose. Elle m'a fait promettre que j'entrerais à la caserne. J'y entrerai donc. C'est déraisonnable, mais j'ai promis.

— Est-ce le refus de mon ami Bastian qui t'a fait prendre cette décision ?

— Non, s'il m'avait dit oui, j'aurais dû lui avouer ce que je vous dis ce soir : je ne vivrai ni en Allemagne, ni en Alsace.

— Fais attention, Jean : tu abandonnes ainsi ton poste d'Alsacien.

— Je ne puis rien pour l'Alsace. Je ne pourrai plus gagner la confiance des Alsaciens, avec mon père compromis and ma sœur mariée à un Prussien.

— Et ta mère, tu vas laisser ta mère, seule ici ?

— C'est la grande objection. Je me la suis faite. . . . Ma mère ne peut pas me demander, pourtant, d'avoir la vie sacrifiée et vaine qu'elle a eue. . . . Oui, elle me pardonnera. . . . Écoutez, oncle Ulrich, dans quelques jours j'aurai besoin de vous. . . . Je vous ai prévenu de ma décision pour que vous m'aidiez.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**la démarche faite auprès de**, his mission to

**mon petit**, my dear boy

**se laisser abattre**, to give in to discouragement

**projeter**, to plan

**faire attention**, to be careful, pay attention, "look" out

**ton poste d'Alsacien**, your duty as an Alsatian

**je ne puis rien**, I can do nothing

**vain**, useless

**se sentir**, to feel

**tout le monde**, everybody

**de quelle couleur . . . ?** what color . . . ?

**faire mal à**, to hurt

## EXERCISE C

1. Our whole class went to see a French film (**le film**) last Saturday.  
2. We saw a friend of yours yesterday at the Duponts'.\* 3. Wherever we go, we always meet the same people. 4. You told us your adventures; now I shall speak of mine. 5. Are yours more interesting than those we have just heard? 6. Whatever your story may be, it will be better than his. 7. They say that whoever is not for them is against them. 8. Which of these two houses is yours? 9. This one is mine; that one is my parents'. 10. What color is your sister's hair? 11. She has blond hair and very pretty blue eyes. 12. Have all of our guests arrived? Yes, they are all here. 13. However courageous I may be, that time I hesitated. 14. I want you to promise me to write every week. 15. I did not know what to do; I had lost my head. 16. Anyone in the village will be glad to (**de**) help you. 17. All of us knew that you would not succeed. 18. Her friend Mary is not feeling well; she has a headache. 19. I am tired now, but I shall do anything you want tomorrow. 20. While (**en**) playing with his sister, he hurt his foot. 21. Whatever you say, I think that it was not his fault. 22. Which dress do you prefer? Hers or mine? I prefer yours. 23. Everybody waited for you the whole evening. 24. We have a devoted friend who would do anything for us. 25. Whatever he told you, I was not among those who have been punished. 26. She brushes her hair for twenty minutes every night. 27. Have you seen anyone today? I mean, anyone interesting. 28. I shall notify you, whatever his decision may be. 29. Did you know that he had asked for your cousin's hand? 30. These soldiers will follow their generals anywhere.

\* Proper names in this construction do not have a plural ending but they are preceded by a plural article.

# LESSON THIRTEEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. RECAPITULATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

*Introduction.* No attempt should be made to compare the use of the Subjunctive in French with its use in English. Such a comparison would be more harmful than beneficial for the following reasons:

1. The uses of the Subjunctive in modern English are limited.
2. Some forms of the English Subjunctive are similar to those of the Indicative and the Conditional.
3. The uses of the Subjunctive seldom coincide in both languages and throw no light on the many cases which call for the Subjunctive in French and not in English.

What the student should try to understand is not so much the grammatical function of the Subjunctive in the French sentence as its value as a means of expression compared with the Indicative.

*The Indicative* is used both in subordinate and independent clauses. It is the mode used to express certainty, conviction, attained ends, or results. The facts stated in the subordinate clause are considered by the subject of the main clause as positive and unquestionable, uncolored by personal feeling.

*The Subjunctive*, while occasionally used in independent clauses, is generally found in a subordinate clause introduced by **que**, sometimes by **qui** or other relative pronouns.\*

\* See Section II for the Subjunctive in relative clauses and Lesson Fourteen for the Subjunctive in apparently independent clauses.

The Subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause when the verb of the main clause expresses

1. an emotion;
2. uncertainty or doubt;
3. an act of the will: request, purpose, command, intention, etc.;
4. approval or disapproval, choice or preference, judgment as to suitability or timeliness.

Compare the following examples:

## INDICATIVE

**Je sais qu'il a été puni.**

## SUBJUNCTIVE

{ **Je regrette qu'il ait été puni.**  
**J'approuve qu'il ait été puni.**

*He has been punished* is a fact. In the sentence containing the Indicative, this fact is merely stated, without any feeling on the part of the speaker, while in the sentences containing the Subjunctive, the fact is viewed by the speaker with a personal feeling of sorrow in the first sentence, of approval, in the second.

The choice of whether to use the Subjunctive or the Indicative is therefore not only a question of grammar rules, but also of meaning. Certain expressions by their very nature (emotion, uncertainty, doubt, etc.) call for the Subjunctive, whereas with other expressions the use of the Subjunctive or the Indicative may depend on the meaning the speaker wishes to convey.

A review of the uses of the Subjunctive already studied, in the light of the preceding explanations, may lead to a better understanding of this mode.

The subordinate **il vienne** is understood in all the examples, on this and the following page.

<b>Je veux (exige) que . . .</b>	act of the will
<b>Nous désirons (souhaitons) que . . .</b>	emotion and act of the will
<b>Je regrette (suis heureux) que . . .</b>	emotion
<b>Il est possible que . . .</b>	uncertainty
<b>Est-il possible que . . .</b>	surprise or doubt



Je permets (refuse) que . . .	expression of the will
Il est temps que . . .	emotion: impatience or wish
Je tiens à ce que . . .	emotion and act of the will
Il faut que . . .	act of the will; necessity
Je lui envoie de l'argent pour que . . .	act of the will: purpose
J'attendrai jusqu'à ce que . . .	act of the will: intention
Ils ont besoin que . . .	emotion: need, necessity

Verbs of *willing*, *liking*, or *preference* are followed by an infinitive if there is no change of subject. See Lesson One, Note 1 (page 3) and Lesson Fifteen (page 181).

With conjunctions requiring the Subjunctive (Lessons Eleven and Twelve), its use may appear less justified, but the very fact that the Subjunctive is used conveys the idea of a degree of emotion or feeling on the part of the speaker.

Quoiqu'il ait beaucoup travaillé, il a échoué (failed).	hopelessness, regret
Quoi qu'il fasse, il échouera.	hopelessness, regret
Si puissant qu'il soit, il échouera.	hopelessness, regret
Je le ferai pourvu que vous me payiez.	doubtful condition

Note that the last example, in which the conjunction expresses a condition, could be turned into a conditional sentence: **Je le ferai si vous me payez.** It then expresses a future eventuality. **Pourvu que**, *provided that*, followed by the Subjunctive, indicates an uncertainty in the mind of the speaker about being paid. It may imply that he fears he may not be paid.

## II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES

After verbs of seeking or wanting, the Subjunctive is used in a relative clause (also called adjective clause because it fulfills the function of an adjective) to convey that an indefinite antecedent with the desired quality or characteristic has not yet been found. By indefinite

antecedent is meant: an indefinite pronoun, a noun with **un, une, du, de la, des** (indefinite amount or quantity), or an indefinite adjective.

<b>Je cherche un officier qui sache le russe.</b>	I am seeking an officer who knows Russian.
<b>Elle veut un chapeau qui lui aille bien.</b>	She wants a hat that is becoming to her.
<b>Envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui puisse m'aider.</b>	Send someone who can help me.
<b>Nous cherchons une rue qui ne soit pas trop bruyante.</b>	We're hunting for a street which won't be too noisy.
<b>Ils veulent une maison qu'ils puissent revendre facilement.</b>	They wish a house which they may be able to resell easily.

In the examples above, the Subjunctive shows that the existence of the antecedent with the desired characteristic is uncertain or doubtful. Is there such an officer? Can I find such a hat?, etc.

But when the antecedent with the desired characteristic is known to exist, or when it has been found, the Indicative must be used in the relative clause.

<b>Je cherche l'officier qui sait le russe.</b>	I am looking for the officer who knows Russian.
<b>J'ai acheté un chapeau qui me va bien.</b>	I have bought a hat which is becoming to me.
<b>Nous avons trouvé quelqu'un qui pourra nous aider.</b>	We have found someone who can help us.
<b>Je cherche une rue qui est près de l'Opéra, mais dont j'ai oublié le nom.</b>	I am looking for a street near the Opera, but whose name I've forgotten.

The officer who knows Russian and the street near the Opera exist. The hat and the person sought obviously have been found, since the verb in the main clause is in a past tense.

#### VERB REVIEW

What is the Present Subjunctive of the following verbs: **aller, avoir, conquérir, devoir, être, faire, falloir, mourir, pouvoir, prendre, recevoir, tenir, valoir, vouloir?**

## EXERCISE A

*Translate the words in parentheses or change the infinitives to the proper mode and tense.* 1. Je ne réussirai jamais (unless you help me). 2. Nous souhaitons que vous (arriver) en bonne santé. 3. Il sera mécontent que vous (être) sorti. 4. Je veux voir l'homme qui (avoir) apporté ce paquet. (*Caution: Does the man exist?*) 5. Ils désirent que vous leur (rembourser) leurs dépenses. 6. Où pouvons-nous trouver une maison qui ne (être) pas trop chère? 7. Elle a demandé que vous (apporter) des fleurs. 8. Bien qu'il (être) pauvre, il est très généreux. 9. J'aime mieux que vous (venir) demain. 10. Je ferais n'importe quoi pour qu'il (être) plus heureux. 11. Je l'emmènerai avec moi (provided he promises) d'être sage. 12. Je ne comprendrai jamais qu'il (avoir) pu être si cruel. 13. Je vous ai acheté un livre qui vous (intéresser). 14. C'est dommage que vous n'(avoir) plus votre auto. 15. Elle a acheté un manteau qui (être) beaucoup trop cher. 16. Il n'acceptera pas que nous lui (payer) son travail. 17. Est-il possible que vous (avoir) dit cela? 18. Il faudra que nous (être) prêts quand ils arriveront. 19. Quelle langue pourrais-je apprendre qui (être) facile? 20. Si loin que vous (aller), j'irai avec vous. 21. Est-il nécessaire que vous le (punir) si sévèrement? 22. Il doute que vous (avoir) appris votre leçon. 23. Avez-vous quelques vieux habits que nous (pouvoir) donner à cette pauvre famille? 24. Le docteur dit qu'il est préférable que vous (rester) au lit. 25. Il tient aussi à ce que vous (boire) beaucoup de lait. 26. J'emmènerai les enfants afin que leur père (pouvoir) travailler. 27. Je n'ai pas besoin que vous m'(aider). 28. Ils prient tous que la guerre (finir) bientôt. 29. Je regrette que vous n'(aimer) pas cette ville. 30. Le président ordonne que le sénat se (réunir).

## VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS

## IL RESTE (IMPERSONAL); N'Y AVOIR PLUS

There is no literal English equivalent to translate these French expressions. Their use can best be understood from a study of the following examples. Note that when, in English, the subject is a

personal pronoun, this pronoun becomes in French an indirect object of the impersonal verb *il reste*.

<b>Il lui reste quelque chose.</b>	He has something left.
<b>Il ne me restait que quelques sous.</b>	I had only a few pennies left.
<b>Je vous donnerai ce qui me reste.</b>	I shall give you what I have left.
<b>J'ai acheté six pêches. Il n'en reste qu'une.</b>	I bought six peaches. Only one remains.
<b>Il ne nous reste pas d'argent.</b>	We have no money left.
<b>Nous n'avons plus d'argent.</b>	We have no more money.
<b>Il ne reste rien.</b>	There is nothing left.
<b>Est-ce qu'il reste de la viande?</b>	Is there any meat left? Yes,
<b>Oui, il en reste.</b>	there is.
<b>Il n'y a plus rien.</b>	There is no more left.

NOTE. *Rester* never means *to rest* which is translated *se reposer*.

#### TEL, SI: SUCH

**Tel**, as an adjective, agrees in gender and number with the noun it qualifies. **Un**, **une**, or **de** (plural) generally precede **tel** when **tel** does not introduce a comparison.

<b>Il ne s'attendait pas à une telle chance.</b>	He did not expect such luck.
--	------------------------------

The construction *I need such a man (such men) as you, I need a man (men) like you*, must be translated *j'ai besoin d'un homme tel (d'hommes tels) que vous*.

**Si** is an adverb used to modify an adjective. **Un**, **une**, or **de** precede **si** if the adjective precedes the noun. But if the adjective modified by **si** is one that follows the noun, the article retains its normal position before the noun. (Last two examples)

<b>Je ne savais pas que vous aviez de si beaux livres.</b>	I did not know that you had such fine books.
<b>Nous n'avons jamais vu un puits si profond.</b>	We have never seen such a deep well.
<b>Je ne veux pas que vous achetiez des cravates si chères.</b>	I do not want you to buy such expensive ties.

**PREMIER, D'ABORD: FIRST**

**Premier** expresses numerical order, rank, or place in a contest. Used with the article **le**, it has the quality of a superlative.

<b>Je suis premier en algèbre.</b>	I am first in algebra.
<b>L'ennemi a attaqué le premier.</b>	The enemy attacked first.

**D'abord** means *in the first place, first*, in the sense of *before* another happening. *First of all* is translated **tout d'abord** or **avant tout**.

<b>d'abord avec des avions, puis</b>	first with airplanes, then with
<b>avec de l'infanterie</b>	infantry
<b>Puis-je prendre un bain d'abord?</b>	May I take a bath first?
<b>Tout d'abord, reposez-vous.</b>	First of all, take a rest.

**EN AND DE WITH NOUNS DENOTING MATERIAL**

A noun cannot be used as an adjective in French. Nouns denoting the material of which an object is made are preceded by the prepositions **de** or **en**. There are no adjectives in French corresponding to the English *golden, wooden*, etc. Such adjectives as **argenté, soyeux** (from *soie*), mean *silvered, silvery, silky*.

The preposition **de** generally precedes materials used for clothing or construction. **En** must be used to avoid ambiguity when **de** might also convey the meaning *of, full of*.

<b>un sac en argent</b>	a silver bag
<b>un sac d'argent</b>	a bag of money
<b>une robe de soie</b>	a silk dress
<b>un chapeau de paille</b>	a straw hat
<b>une montre en (d')or</b>	a gold watch
<b>un pont de bois</b>	a wooden bridge

**DANS, À, EN: IN (INTO), REFERRING TO PLACE**

The translation of *in* referring to places presents some difficulty. The following explanations are not all-inclusive, but will be useful in many cases.

**Dans** is used with the restricted meaning of *inside, within* an enclosed or specific place. It suggests the building, the room itself, within the boundaries, the container, etc.

<b>Je demeure dans un appartement.</b>	I live in an apartment.
<b>Ils se sont perdus dans la forêt.</b>	They got lost in the forest.
<b>Le patron est dans son bureau.</b>	The boss is in his office.
<b>Ils ont de beaux meubles dans leur salon.</b>	They have beautiful furniture in their living-room.
<b>Vos chemises sont dans la com-mode.</b>	Your shirts are in the bureau.

**À** is less restricted in its use than **dans**. It is used with the names of places when referring to a general location and when specific boundaries are not suggested or implied. **À** must be used when the place named is an institution, such as museum, college, church, etc. unless inside the building is meant.

**À** is usually followed by the definite article, meaning *in the*.

<b>Il a passé la matinée à l'église.</b>	He spent the morning in church.
<b>Ils nous ont reçus à la cuisine.</b>	They received us in the kitchen.
<b>Faites-les entrer au salon.</b>	Show them into the living-room.

**En**, referring to place, is used instead of **à** + definite article, with a certain number of nouns of which the most common are **ville**, **classe**, **pension**, and in such expressions as **en pleine campagne**, *in the open country*; **en pleine forêt**, *deep in the forest*.

<b>Irez-vous en ville ce soir?</b>	Will you go to town tonight?
<b>Elle est en pension.</b>	She is at boarding school.
<b>Ne parlez pas en classe.</b>	Do not talk in class ( <i>i.e.</i> while the class is in session).

*but*

<b>Je demeure dans cette ville.</b>	I live in this city.
<b>On trouve cela dans les grandes villes.</b>	One finds that in large cities.

### EXERCISE B

1. Comment avez-vous pu faire (such an error)? 2. Ne prenez pas ce crayon, c'est le seul qui (I have left). 3. Travaillons (first), nous irons nous promener après. 4. Quand je suis arrivé, (there was nothing left). 5. Personne ne croira (such a strange story). 6. Il a fait très chaud (in town) aujourd'hui. 7. Je ne peux pas vous donner de papier;

(I haven't any left). 8. Dans la dernière course, Jean est arrivé (first). 9. Elle s'est acheté un magnifique (fur coat). 10. Je suis fatigué, reposons-nous un instant (in) ce café. 11. (There remains only) une seule chose à faire. (*Two ways*) 12. (In) quelle ville êtes-vous né? 13. Je n'aurais pas cru cela de (such a friend as) Pierre. 14. Nous avons passé l'après-midi (in the museum). 15. N'oubliez pas de dire à la bonne que nous dînons (in town). 16. Allons voir si (there is any cake left). 17. Ne partons pas si tôt, je ne veux pas arriver (first). 18. Je n'ai jamais mangé (such good apples). 19. (First of all), je veux savoir ce qui s'est passé. 20. Nous leur avons donné une douzaine de (silver spoons). 21. Qui vous a envoyé cette (wooden box)? 22. Si vous n'êtes pas sage, je vous enverrai (to) votre chambre. 23. Vous ne devriez pas répéter (such things). 24. Il ne veut plus de vin, vous pouvez boire ce qui (is left). 25. Descendez, vos amis vous attendent (in the living-room).

## TRANSLATION

### ACTION

Après sa première journée passée à la caserne Jean Oberlé rentrait chez lui, car les volontaires étaient dispensés de coucher à la caserne ou d'y prendre leurs repas.

Sur le seuil de la maison, la logeuse l'arrêta:

— Monsieur Oberlé, il y a un télégramme pour vous.

Jean monta dans sa chambre, alluma sa lampe, et lut les trois mots sans signature qu'il attendait: « Tout va bien ».

Cela voulait dire que tout était prêt pour le lendemain, que M. Ulrich avait fait le nécessaire. Le sort en était jeté: Jean quitterait la caserne et l'Alsace le deux octobre, dans quelques heures.

L'oncle Ulrich et Jean étaient tombés d'accord que le meilleur moyen de passer la frontière sans éveiller le soupçon trop tôt, consistait à monter dans le train qui part de Strasbourg à midi dix, c'est-à-dire pendant le déjeuner des volontaires.

— J'ai fait le trajet, avait dit l'oncle Ulrich. Je suis sûr de mes chiffres. Tu arrives à Russ-Hersbach à une heure vingt; une voiture nous mène en trois quarts d'heure à Grande Fontaine. Là, nous laissons la voiture, et, grâce à de bonnes jambes comme les tiennes et les miennes, nous pouvons être en France à deux heures quarante-cinq. Alors je te quitte et je reviens.

Il importait de ne pas manquer le train de midi dix, et ce serait facile, les volontaires d'un an se trouvant libre, d'ordinaire, à onze heures.

Mais le lendemain l'exercice dura jusqu'à onze heures et demie. Jean, inquiet, sachant qu'il avait à peine le temps de se rendre à la gare, se hâtait vers la sortie, lorsqu'un homme de sa compagnie lui cria :

— Revue d'uniformes pour la compagnie, à midi !

Jean attendit que l'homme eût disparu, puis, se mêlant à un groupe de volontaires qui appartenaient à d'autres compagnies, franchit la grille sans difficulté.

Lorsqu'il fut dans la rue il se mit à courir. Aurait-il le temps de passer chez lui et de remplacer l'uniforme par des vêtements civils ? D'autre part, c'eût été une grave imprudence d'essayer de passer la frontière en uniforme. Il décida d'emporter une valise et de changer de costume soit dans le train, soit à Russ-Hersbach. En pénétrant dans le couloir il appela la logeuse, et, essoufflé :

— J'ai une course très pressée, dit-il. Envoyez chercher un fiacre. . . .

À midi dix Jean montait dans le train pour Russ-Hersbach.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**dispensé de**, exempt from  
**le seuil**, the threshold  
**la logeuse**, the landlady  
**monter dans**, to go up to; **monter dans**  
 (un train) to board  
**le nécessaire**, what was necessary  
**le sort en était jeté**, the die was cast  
**tomber d'accord**, to agree  
**il importe**, it is important

**se mêler à** to mingle with  
**franchir**, to pass through  
**d'autre part**, on the other hand  
**changer de costume**, to change clothes  
**soit . . . , soit . . . ,** either . . . , or . . .  
**pressé**, urgent  
**être pressé**, to be in a hurry  
**tenir à ce que**, to be anxious that  
**s'attendre à ce que**, to expect that



## EXERCISE C

1. Although it is late, we shall not miss our class. 2. Whatever you may see, do not talk about it. 3. I think it is better for you to rest; you look tired. 4. You did not tell me how much time we have left. 5. There is not much left; it is now half past twelve. 6. Yes, and we must be at the station before one o'clock. 7. They wish to find a house that is near the college. 8. She bought silk stockings and a pretty velvet dress. 9. I see a student who is paying no attention to what I say. 10. He will not write you unless you write him first. 11. I shall tell you what happened provided you promise to (*de*) be discreet. 12. It is too bad we have no money left. 13. Tell me first of all why you were not in class yesterday. 14. We do not want him to miss his train. 15. It is very important that we leave the house on time. 16. You don't need to show me the way. 17. He will have to change (his) clothes before leaving. 18. I expect that our friends will be late. 19. Can you lend me some paper? I have none left. (*Two ways*) 20. I have very little left, and I need it myself. 21. He is too young; don't give him such serious books. 22. What can I do to make (*rendre*) him happier? 23. Whatever his intentions may be, he said nothing about them. 24. I should rather you didn't go in town today. 25. Is it right that he should be punished? It was not his fault. 26. We gave Mary a gold watch and a pretty silver bag. 27. In school he always was first in geometry. 28. I am very sorry that you failed in (*a*) your examination. 29. I am living in a house that is very near the station. 30. Buy them some toys that they cannot break.

# LESSON FOURTEEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES (continued)

1. The Subjunctive is used in a relative clause when the existence of an indefinite antecedent is questioned or doubted, denied or restricted by **ne . . . guère, peu de**, and in general interrogations or negations.

**Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui puisse révéler l'avenir?**

Is there anyone who can reveal the future?

**Je n'ai pas d'amis à qui je puisse me confier.**

I have no friends in whom I can confide.

**Il n'y a personne qui ait ce courage.**

There is no one who has this courage.

**Il y a peu de soldats qui se soient mieux battus.**

There are few soldiers who fought better.

**Je ne connais guère de femmes qui me plaisent davantage.**

I hardly know any women who please me more.

**Y a-t-il une mère qui ne consente à se sacrifier pour ses enfants? \***

Is there any mother who is unwilling to sacrifice herself for her children?

**Il n'y a pas de mère qui n'y consente. \***

There is no mother who would be unwilling.

\* **Pas** is usually omitted with the subjunctive verb when the main clause is in the negative or the interrogative.

But the Indicative is used in the subordinate clause when the negation is not general and all-inclusive, or when the existence of the antecedent is accepted without question or doubt. See examples on next page.

<b>Je ne connais pas l'homme à qui vous vous êtes confié.</b>	I do not know the man upon whom you have relied.
<b>Est-ce vous le soldat qui s'est si bien battu?</b>	Are you the soldier who fought so well?
<b>Il a bu le peu d'eau qui restait.</b>	He drank the little water that was left.
<b>Est-ce un de vos amis qui est arrivé?</b>	Is it a friend of yours who has come?
<b>Je connais peu les gens dont vous parliez. (Peu modifies connais, not les gens.)</b>	I don't know very well the people you were speaking of.

2. The Subjunctive is required in the relative clause after an all-inclusive superlative expressing the opinion of the speaker, and after **le seul** and **ne . . . que, le premier, le dernier** used with a superlative meaning.

The Subjunctive denotes the reluctance of the speaker to be too categorical, his desire to attenuate what might be considered an exaggeration; or it may express a feeling or an emotion implied in the main clause: enthusiasm, admiration, revolt (in the fourth example), etc.

<b>Ce roman est le plus intéressant que nous ayons jamais lu.</b>	This is the most interesting novel we have ever read.
<b>Jean est le meilleur garçon que je connaisse.</b>	John is the best boy I know.
<b>Son conseil est le seul qui soit raisonnable.</b>	His is the only sensible advice.
<b>C'est la dernière chose que nous voulions faire!</b>	That's the last thing we should wish to do!
<b>Je ne connais que vous qui puissiez faire cela.</b>	I know only you who could do that.

But the Indicative must be used after a limited superlative when the relative clause states the reality of a fact which does not involve the speaker's opinion. The superlative in such a case merely serves to distinguish or identify.

The Indicative must also be used after the superlative of an adverb.

<b>C'est la plus jeune de ses deux filles qui s'est mariée.</b>	It is the youngest of his two girls who got married.
<b>C'est mon meilleur élève qui était absent aujourd'hui.</b>	It is my best student who was absent today.

Ce ne sont pas toujours les plus beaux fruits qui sont les meilleurs.	It is not always the most beautiful fruit that is the best.
Je vous ai donné le seul crayon qui me restait.	I gave you the only pencil I had left.
C'est le premier (dernier) chapitre que nous lisons en ce moment. ( <i>first, last, of a series</i> )	It is the first (last) chapter we are reading now.
Il courait le plus vite qu'il pouvait.	He was running as fast as he could.

## II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

1. The Subjunctive is used in an independent or main clause to express the third person imperative, occasionally the first person.

Qu'il s'en aille.	Let him go.
Qu'ils meurent.	Let them die.

2. In a number of expressions of requesting, wishing, etc.

Vive le roi !	Long live the king !
Ainsi soit-il.	So be it.
Plaise à Dieu !	May it please God !
Puisse-t-il venir.	Oh ! That he might come !
Puissiez-vous être heureux.	May you be happy.
que je sache *	so far as I know
pas que je sache (me souviennne)	not that I know (remember)

\* Que je sache is used as a parenthetical clause in a negative statement. Pas que je sache is used in answering a question.

Il n'a pas dit cela, que nous sachions.

Vous ai-je dit cela ? Non, pas que je sache (me souviennne).

## III. CHOOSING BETWEEN THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE INDICATIVE

After declarative verbs such as *croire* or *penser*, *se souvenir*, *espérer* (cf. 4a, below), *nier* (cf. 4b), *il me semble* (*lui, nous*, etc. cf. 4c), *prétendre*, *claim*, (cf. 4d), etc. which do not contain in themselves any of the factors calling for the Subjunctive, the mode used in the sub-

ordinate clause depends on the attitude of the speaker towards the statement expressed in that clause.

Used affirmatively, these verbs denote the belief, conviction, or knowledge of the speaker, and therefore require the Indicative in the subordinate clause.

Used interrogatively or negatively, however, the speaker has the choice between the Indicative and the Subjunctive in the subordinate clause.

1. After the declarative verb in the negative, the Subjunctive is generally used in the subordinate clause to denote uncertainty or doubt, or the reluctance of the speaker to be too categorical in negating a fact which is not self-evident or an action yet to take place.

**Je ne crois pas que ce livre soit intéressant.**

I don't think this book is interesting.

**Je ne crois pas qu'il fasse cela.**

I don't believe he will do that.

**Il ne se souvient pas que vous ayez dit cela.**

He doesn't remember that you said that. (He has some doubt if you did.)

*but*

**Il ne se souvient pas que nous sommes venus.** (*Fact: we did come.*)

He doesn't remember (the fact of) our coming.

2. After the declarative verb used interrogatively, the Subjunctive in the subordinate clause indicates some emotion on the part of the speaker: surprise, disbelief, doubt, etc. Whereas in using the Indicative the speaker merely asks for information, from which all emotion is absent.

**Croyez-vous que cette eau soit bonne?** (*doubt in the mind of the questioner*)

Do you think this water is good?

**Vous semble-t-il qu'il soit malade?** (*doubt*)

Does he appear sick to you?

**Pensez-vous qu'il soit si intelligent?** (*surprise or doubt*)

Do you really think he is as intelligent as that?

**Vous souvenez-vous qu'il ait jamais réussi?** (*disbelief*)

Have you any recollection of his ever being successful?

These sentences in the Indicative merely ask for information:

**Vous souvenez-vous qu'il est venu?** *(the speaker is certain that he came)* Do you remember that he came?

**Espérez-vous qu'il viendra demain?** *(no feeling on the part of the speaker)* Do you hope he will come tomorrow?

3. After the declarative verb in the interrogative negative, the Indicative is used in the subordinate clause when the speaker is certain of a fact, and expects an affirmative answer.

**Ne croyez-vous pas que cet acteur est excellent?** Don't you think that actor is excellent?

NOTE. When a declarative verb is used in a past tense in the main clause, it is permissible in every case to use, in the subordinate clause, a past tense of the Indicative, including the Future in the Past (*cf.* Lesson Ten, page 118.) The Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is thus avoided.

**Je ne croyais pas qu'il était parti.** I didn't think he had left.  
**Je n'espérais pas qu'il viendrait.** I had no hope he would come.

4. The Subjunctive is used with certain special verbs.

a. **Espérer**, in the present negative, calls for the Subjunctive when the action in the subordinate clause is desirable and the speaker is reluctant (emotion) to forego all hope.

**Je n'espère pas qu'il puisse m'aider.** I have no hope that he will be able to help me.

b. **Nier**, to deny, which is negative in meaning, usually is followed by the Subjunctive, unless the subordinate clause states an undeniable fact, in which case the Indicative is used.

**Je nie qu'il ait dit cela.** I deny he said that.

*but*  
**Il nierait que deux et deux font quatre.** He would deny that two and two are four.

c. **Il semble que** without an indirect object expresses uncertainty, and therefore is followed by the Subjunctive in all cases.

**Il semble que cela soit facile.** That would seem to be easy.  
**Il ne semble pas que cela soit possible.** That would not seem possible.

But, with an indirect object, **il semble** denotes the conviction of the speaker, and therefore calls for the Indicative.

**Il me semble que cela est possible.**

d. When **prétendre que** means *to insist that, require that* it is followed by the Subjunctive.

**Je prétends (I insist) que vous me parliez poliment.**

NOTE. *To pretend*, meaning *to make believe*, is translated **faire semblant de** or **faire mine de**, never **prétendre**: **Il fait semblant de travailler**, *he pretends to be working*.

e. **Comprendre (to understand)** is followed by the Subjunctive in a subordinate clause if the speaker wishes to convey either an appreciation of a reason or a feeling of disapproval. When **comprendre** means *to apprehend the meaning or to grasp the idea*, it is followed by the Indicative.

**Je ne comprends pas que vous dépensiez tant d'argent.** I can't understand (= I don't approve of) your spending so much money.

**Nous comprenons que vous soyez fâché.** We can understand (= We can appreciate) your being angry.

*but*

**Il ne comprend pas que je ne peux pas le recevoir en ce moment.** He doesn't understand that I cannot receive him now.

f. **S'attendre à ce que (to expect that)** requires the Subjunctive in the subordinate clause when it conveys the sense of apprehension or hopeful expectancy. The Indicative must be used when it conveys the sense of an expected fact.

Nous nous attendons à ce qu'il  
soit malheureux.

Il s'attendait à ce qu'il pleuve.

We expect (we are apprehensive)  
he may be unhappy.

He expected (he was apprehen-  
sive or hopefully expectant) it  
might rain.

*but*

Il ne s'attendait pas à ce que vous  
avez fait.

S'attend-il à ce qui va lui arriver.

He was not expecting what you  
did.

Does he expect what is going to  
happen to him?

**Compter** (*to expect* something desirable) is nearly a synonym of  
**espérer**.

Nous comptons que vous pour-  
rez venir.

Nous ne comptons pas qu'il nous  
écrive.

We are counting on your being  
able to come.

We do not expect him to write  
us.

#### IV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

TABLE OF THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

If the <i>Tense</i> of the main verb is in the	and the <i>Time</i> of the subordinate clause relative to the main verb is	the <i>Tense</i> of the Subjunctive will be
Present or Future	present	} Present (Section 1a)
	future past future perfect *	
Past	simultaneous with the main verb	} Imperfect † (Section 2a)
	future past	

\* Indicated by a complement of time in the subordinate clause.  
† This sequence is common in literature. For everyday conversation and writing, consult Sections 3 and 4.



1. *The Present and Perfect Subjunctive.* When the verb of the main clause is in the Present, the Future, or the Imperative, the verb of the subordinate clause will be in

a. The Present Subjunctive to express present or future time.

**Je suis heureux que vous soyez ici.** I'm glad you are here.

**Ils désirent que nous venions le mois prochain.** They want us to come next month.

**Il faudra que vous le fassiez vous-même.** You will have to do it yourself.

**Ne doutez pas qu'il s'en souvienne.** Have no doubt that he will remember it.

Note that the time of the subordinate clause is present or future in relation to the time expressed by the verb of the main clause.

NOTE. When the verb of the main clause is in the Present Conditional, the Present Subjunctive may be used in the subordinate clause.

**Nous voudrions qu'ils viennent.** We should like them to come.

b. The Perfect Subjunctive to express past time (completed action) or future perfect time (*see* third example).

**Je suis content qu'il ait réussi.** I am glad he has succeeded.

**Il regrettera que vous soyez arrivé pendant son absence.** He will be sorry you arrived during his absence.

*Compare*

**Ils veulent que vous ayez fini vos devoirs avant leur retour.** They want you to have finished your homework before their return.

**Ils espèrent que vous aurez fini vos devoirs avant . . .** They hope you will have finished your homework before . . .

Note that the time is past with relation to the time expressed by the verb of the main clause and future perfect when a complement of time (*avant leur retour*) is expressed in the subordinate clause.

2. *The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.* The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are found frequently in literature and need to

be recognized for reading. They are, however, seldom used in speech or personal writings. The bottom half of the table of the sequence of tenses does not generally apply in everyday usage. Sections 3 and 4 will indicate the usual practice in French.

a. When the verb of the main clause is in a past tense of the Indicative, the Imperfect Subjunctive in the subordinate clause denotes that the action was taking place at the same time as the action of the main verb or that it might take place at a time future to it.

<b>Il parla lentement afin que tout le monde le comprît.</b>	He spoke slowly so that everybody might understand him.
<b>J'étais heureux que vous fussiez avec moi.</b>	I was glad that you were with me.

b. When the verb of the main clause is in a past tense of the Indicative or in the Past Conditional, the Pluperfect Subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause to indicate that the action of the subordinate verb was completed before the action expressed by the verb of the main clause took place.

<b>Ils doutaient que cela fût arrivé.</b>	They doubted that that had happened.
<b>Il aurait préféré que vous n'eussiez pas vendu votre maison.</b>	He would have been better pleased if you had not sold your house.
<b>Ils avaient échoué quoiqu'ils eussent pris leurs précautions.</b>	They failed although they had taken precautions.

3. As remarked under Section 2, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are now seldom used in everyday speech or in personal writings. The French may use the Present or the Perfect Subjunctive instead of the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive under the following conditions or they may avoid using the Subjunctive by one of the normal sentence patterns in Section 4.

The Present or the Perfect Subjunctive may be used

a. When the verb of the main clause is in the Past Indefinite.

<b>Ils ont demandé que vous alliez les voir.</b>	They requested that you go to see them.
--	---

<b>Il a voulu que vous soyez prévenu.</b>	He wished you to be forewarned.
<b>Il n'a pas réussi bien que nous l'ayons aidé.</b>	He has not succeeded although we helped him.

b. When the verb of the main clause is in the Present Conditional.

<b>Je serais désolé qu'il vous arrive des ennuis.</b>	I should be sorry if you should get into trouble.
<b>Il voudrait que vous ayez vu cela.</b>	He would wish you to have seen that.

c. When the verb of the main clause is in the Imperfect or in the Past Conditional, the Present Subjunctive may be used in the subordinate clause if the action is still considered, with regard to the time of the verb in the main clause, as a future possibility.

<b>Il voulait que nous arrivions de bonne heure, mais nous serons en retard.</b>	He wished us to arrive early, but we shall be late.
<b>J'aurais préféré qu'elle vienne demain plutôt que la semaine prochaine.</b>	I should have preferred her to come tomorrow rather than next week.

NOTE. It is possible under certain circumstances to use the Perfect Subjunctive to denote that an action took place prior to the time expressed by the main verb in the Imperfect Indicative.

<b>Je craignais que vous n'ayez pas compris.</b>	I feared that you had not understood.
--	---------------------------------------

Lacking a model, it is safer to use one of the constructions in the following section.

4. With other tenses of the past in the main clause, the French generally employ the following perfectly normal constructions.

<b>Il parla lentement afin de se faire comprendre de tout le monde.</b>	<b>afin de</b> plus an infinitive instead of <b>afin que</b> plus the Subjunctive
<b>Ils avaient échoué quoique ayant pris des précautions.</b>	perfect participle instead of a subordinate clause with the Subjunctive

Elle voulait une bonne ayant d'excellentes références.	participial phrase qualifying a noun
Il voulait nous entendre chanter.	complementary infinitive, instead of <b>il voulait que</b> and the Subjunctive
Ils étaient partis avant notre retour.	a complement of time instead of a clause with the Subjunctive
J'étais heureux de ce que vous étiez ici (de ce que = of the fact that).	de ce que following an adjective plus the Indicative
Elle attendait le moment où je serais prêt.	main verb completed by a noun and a qualifying clause in the Conditional
Je ne croyais pas qu'il aurait fini.*	declarative verb ( <b>croire</b> ) instead of <b>douter</b> requiring the Subjunctive

*Cf. note at the end of Section III:3.*

Je n'étais pas prêt, néanmoins il est parti.	two main clauses joined by a conjunctive adverb. In this sentence <b>quoique</b> plus a Subjunctive is replaced
Nous avons deux pages à traduire. Il est l'heure de commencer.	a complementary infinitive
Ils nous avaient demandé de le ramasser.	<b>demandeur</b> plus infinitive complement instead of <b>vouloir</b> plus the Subjunctive

NOTE 1. These constructions may be used equally well with any other tense in the main clause.

Il désire nous entendre chanter. ( <i>instead of</i> Il désire que nous chantions.)	Il a parlé lentement afin de se faire comprendre de tout le monde.
Ils sont partis avant notre retour.	

NOTE 2. Following strict rules of grammar, it would be possible theoretically to use a Subjunctive in a subordinate clause by rephrasing the above sentences. In the last two sentences, the Subjunctives **nous commençassions** and **nous ramassassions** are theoretically possible. In practice no Frenchmen would use these barbarous-sounding Subjunc-

tives. It is better to avoid the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive by using one of the constructions in Section 4, so long as the meaning is clear. The third person singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive, not being objectionable, is still frequently used.

NOTE 3. For the American student, the ability to find substitutions for the Subjunctive depends on his ingenuity, his understanding of the context, and on his command of both the English and the French languages.

REMINDER. If the subject of the subordinate clause is different from that of the main clause, the Subjunctive must be used in the subordinate clause or the sentence must be rephrased to convey the same meaning through the use of one of the constructions in Section 4 preceding. Such English constructions as: I would like *you to sing* (see Lesson One, Section III), he came *without my inviting him*, we do not approve of *his going with you* must be translated into French: **Je voudrais que vous chantiez; il est venu sans que nous l'invitions; nous n'approuvons pas que vous alliez avec lui** or the constructions must be changed: **Vous me feriez plaisir si vous chantiez** (a conditional sentence); **il est venu sans être invité.**

A **ne** after **craindre, empêcher, sans que, avant que, à moins que, de crainte (de peur) que**, etc. (called the pleonastic **ne**) is sometimes used preceding the verb in the subordinate clause, but is no longer compulsory. The same is true in a clause after a comparative adjective (Decree of 1901).

#### VERB REVIEW

Review the orthographical changes in certain verbs of the **-er** (first) conjugation. Before what kind of ending is the stem of the Infinitive altered in these verbs? (Appendix I, page 226)

#### EXERCISE A

*In this exercise and in the next, the student must be prepared to explain, by reference to the meaning, the reasons for using the Subjunctive or the Indicative.* 1. C'est décourageant, il n'y a rien qui lui (plaire).

2. Nous ne connaissons personne que vous (pouvoir) consulter. 3. Il n'y a guère d'auteur que nous (préferer) à Balzac. 4. Il y a peu de romanciers à qui on (pouvoir) le comparer. 5. Y a-t-il un pays que cet explorateur (did not visit)? 6. Je ne connais qu'un homme qui (savoir) cela. 7. Que pourrions-nous faire qui (pouvoir) le consoler? 8. Connaissiez-vous quelqu'un qui (être) plus généreux que lui. 9. Y a-t-il quelque chose que nous (avoir) oublié? 10. Êtes-vous les élèves que je (devoir) mener au musée cet après-midi? 11. Il n'y a rien que nous ne (faire) pour vous. 12. Cette histoire est la plus étrange qu'on (pouvoir) imaginer. 13. Vous êtes le premier qui m'(avoir) jamais dit cela. 14. Avez-vous des livres dont vous (vouloir) vous débarrasser? 15. Ce n'est pas le meilleur cheval qui (avoir) gagné la course. 16. Jean est le garçon le plus aimable que nous (connaître). 17. Je vous ai chanté la seule chanson que je (savoir). 18. Est-ce vraiment la seule que vous (savoir)? 19. C'est le moins riche de mes amis qui (être) le plus généreux. 20. Ce sera le seul voyage que j'(avoir) l'intention de faire ce mois-ci. 21. J'ai acheté les plus belles fleurs que j'(avoir) pu trouver. 22. Je crois que ce sont les plus belles qu'on (pouvoir) trouver. 23. C'est la seule chose raisonnable que vous (avoir) dite depuis longtemps. 24. Je ne veux pas accepter le peu d'argent que vous (avoir). 25. C'est la première chose utile qu'il (avoir) faite dans sa vie. 26. Il n'y a pas d'animal qui (être) plus fidèle que le chien. 27. Est-ce un des livres que je vous (avoir) donnés? 28. Est-ce votre plus jeune frère qui (être) parti au front? 29. Je n'ai encore rencontré personne qui (pouvoir) expliquer cela. 30. Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui (vouloir) éplucher les légumes?

## EXERCISE B

1. (Let him do) ce qu'il veut, cela m'est égal. 2. Il ne croit pas que (you understood). 3. Nous nous attendions à ce qui (happened). 4. Ils espèrent que vous (être) satisfait de votre travail. 5. J'aimerais mieux que vous (partir) le mois prochain. 6. Je doute que (they will have finished) de déjeuner quand nous arriverons. 7. Il est possible que (you worked a lot) ce semestre. 8. Mais je ne vois pas que vous (made) beaucoup de progrès. 9. Je ne me souviens pas que (he ever went) en Californie. 10. A-t-il vendu sa maison? — Non, (not that I know). 11. Croyez-vous qu'il (être) déjà arrivé à New-York? 12. Il ne sera pas content que (you have done) cela. 13. (May he succeed).

Je le souhaite sincèrement. **14.** Je ne m'attendais pas à ce qu'il y (avoir) tant de monde.\* **15.** Nous comptons qu'il (arriver) la semaine prochaine. **16.** Il n'y a pas, (as far as I know), d'homme aussi brave. **17.** N'espérez-vous pas qu'il (venir) nous voir bientôt? **18.** Il a voulu que nous vous (raconter) tout ce qui est arrivé. **19.** Il a refusé de nous accompagner bien que nous (avoir) insisté.† **20.** Je ne comptais pas qu'il (vouloir) vous accompagner. **21.** Elle voudrait que nous lui (acheter) une bague. **22.** Le voilà; il a marché lentement pour que nous (pouvoir) le rattraper. **23.** Il nie que vous lui (avoir) prêté de l'argent. **24.** Il ne me semble pas que vous (avoir) appris votre leçon. **25.** Je n'ai pas prétendu qu'il (savoir) tout, mais il est très savant.

\* Two ways: formal and a substitution using *voir*.

† Two ways: formal and informal.

## TRANSLATION

### ALARME!

A la même heure exactement, le capitaine, ayant aperçu l'un des volontaires affectés à sa compagnie, demandait au sergent major:

— Où est l'autre?

— Je ne l'ai pas vu, monsieur le capitaine, répondit Hamm.

Et, se tournant vers le camarade de Jean:

— Vous savez où il est?

— Il est sorti après l'exercice, et n'est pas revenu.

— Pour une fois je ne punirai pas, grommela le capitaine, il n'a sans doute pas compris.

Quand les hommes se réunirent après le déjeuner, l'absence de Jean, qui aurait probablement passé inaperçue sans l'incident précédent, fut de nouveau remarquée.

— Oberlé n'est donc pas rentré? fit Hamm.

Le même camarade répondit:

— Non, il courait en sortant de la caserne, et il n'a pas déjeuné avec nous.

Le sergent réfléchit un instant. Ni le capitaine ni le lieutenant n'étaient là à ce moment. S'il y avait une histoire, le capitaine ne manquerait pas de lui dire: « Pourquoi ne m'avez-vous pas prévenu? »

Il fallait s'informer. La maison où demeurait Jean n'était pas loin. La logeuse lui fit cette réponse:

— Parti en voiture avant midi, avec une valise.

— Quelle adresse a-t-il donnée?

— Je n'ai pas entendu.

Le soupçon se précisa dans l'esprit de Hamm. Il courut chez le capitaine; celui-ci n'était pas chez lui. Alors il se souvint qu'un officier du régiment qui connaissait Jean, demeurait tout près. Heureusement le lieutenant Farnow était chez lui.

— C'est vous, Hamm? Qu'y a-t-il?

— Monsieur le lieutenant, le volontaire Oberlé . . .

— Oberlé? Qu'a-t-il fait? interrompit Farnow.

— Il n'a pas reparu à la caserne depuis onze heures et demie.

Et Hamm raconta ce qu'il avait appris. Il put voir que le lieutenant avait le même soupçon que lui.

— C'est bien, Hamm, dit Farnow, je vais faire le nécessaire.

Le sergent salua et se retira.

Farnow bondit au téléphone et demanda la gare de Strasbourg. Il apprit qu'un volontaire du 9<sup>e</sup> hussards, en tenue, arrivé au dernier moment avec une valise, avait pris un billet pour Russ-Hersbach.

— Non! c'est impossible! s'écria Farnow, en se laissant tomber sur son divan. Il y a erreur . . . Russ-Hersbach, c'est presque la frontière, et Jean ne peut pas désertre, parce qu'il aime. . . . Il est à Alsheim. . . . Il a, en tout cas, voulu revoir Odile. . . . Je vais le savoir.

— Hermann!

L'ordonnance, un large Germain, ouvrit la porte.

— Selle mon cheval et le tien! Tout de suite!

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**sans doute**, probably

**de nouveau**, again

**réfléchir**, to ponder

**ne pas manquer de**, not to fail to

**se préciser**, to become definite

**bondir**, to leap

**en tenue**, in uniform



**EXERCISE C. GENERAL REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE**

1. There is nothing that you cannot understand in this lesson. 2. He does not cease talking of the only trip he took to Europe. 3. I do not remember that we invited them. 4. He denies that you spoke to him that day. 5. I do not think that he wants to see you now. 6. We hope that you will write him before leaving. 7. This is not the only coat that I own. 8. We no longer hope that they will return tonight. 9. What! Don't you remember that they will lunch with us tomorrow? 10. Do you deny that we telephoned you last week? 11. Was it your aunt's valise that you lost on the train? 12. I shall have to leave before he comes back. 13. Do you expect that there will be a storm? 14. It seems to me that they did not wish to see us. 15. Are you the man who wrote me those letters? 16. Is there anyone who wants to go to the village? 17. Isn't there anything that we could give this poor man? 18. I do not understand your buying such an expensive hat. 19. The captain ordered us to assemble in front of the gate. 20. I wanted him to be ready to receive our guests tonight. 21. They do not think that you will succeed, but I do (*cf.* Lesson Eight, page 93). 22. It seems that he did not understand the orders. 23. I should like you to tell him what you did. 24. It seems to me that you do not understand what I mean. 25. We did not think (*Past Indefinite*) that you would be so angry. 26. Does it seem to you that he tells the truth? 27. I wish you had told us that you could not come. 28. I cannot believe that he has forgotten our invitation. 29. They stayed with us until we left for the country. 30. It would be better for you to stay in bed today.

# LESSON FIFTEEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE INFINITIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS

When any preposition, except **en** is followed by a verb in French, the verb will be in the Infinitive. (*Review Lesson Six, page 68.*)

### II. THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

1. The complementary Infinitive is used as in English except after the verbs of *willing*: **exiger, vouloir, désirer**; *liking* and *preference*: **aimer, préférer** or **aimer mieux**; also **consentir, accepter, s'attendre, compter**. These verbs are followed by an Infinitive only when the subject of the main clause is the same as that of the Infinitive (*cf.* last three examples).

**Je ne peux pas vous croire.**

I cannot believe you.

**Nous lui avons demandé d'aller  
acheter du vin.**

We asked him to go buy some  
wine.

**Aidez-moi à faire mon lit.**

Help me to make my bed.

**Je veux vous parler.**

I want to speak to you.

*but*

**Il veut que vous parliez.**

He wants you to speak.

**Il préfère que nous restions ici.**

He prefers us to stay here.

2. An English present participle — or a present passive participle — is translated in French by the Infinitive alone after verbs of perception, **voir, entendre**, etc., and by a preposition plus the Infinitive after other verbs, as illustrated in the examples at the top of the next page.

**Je l'ai vu travailler.**

**I saw him working (work).**

**Nous avons vu bâtir cette maison.**

**We saw this house being built.\***

**Elle s'est arrêtée de coudre.**

**She stopped sewing.**

\* Note that in the French sentence **cette maison** is the object of an active Infinitive and therefore follows it.

**3. Verbs governing a direct Infinitive, or the Infinitive with à or de.** As has already been seen in the exercises and in the examples above, certain complementary infinitives follow the verb without a preposition; others, with the prepositions **à** or **de** preceding them. The preposition to be used is the one which normally follows the verb and must be learned with the verb as an integral part of it. (Cf. Appendix II, page 232. See also Lesson Eight, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS, page 98.)

However, it may be pointed out that verbs requiring a direct infinitive are relatively few. They include verbs of motion, verbs of perception (**voir, entendre, etc.**), and such common verbs as **devoir, faire, pouvoir, vouloir, désirer, préférer, penser, croire, savoir, souhaiter, espérer, oser.**

**Il est venu nous voir.**

**He came to see us.**

**J'espère faire sa connaissance.**

**I hope to meet him.**

**Nous le regardons travailler.**

**We watch him work.**

**Il sait lire le russe.**

**He can (knows how to) read Russian.**

**4. Pour with the Infinitive.** The preposition **pour** or **afin de** is used with an infinitive to denote a purpose. It is translated *in order to* or *to*.

**Il s'est levé de bonne heure pour ne pas manquer son train.**

**He got up early in order not to miss his train.**

**Je l'ai invité pour vous faire plaisir.**

**I invited him to please you.**

**Il faut de la patience pour élever les enfants.**

**It takes patience to bring up children.**

**NOTE 1.** After verbs of motion **pour** is usually omitted unless the purpose is to be stressed.

**Je viendrai vous voir demain.**

**I shall come to see you tomorrow.**

**Je suis venu pour travailler.**

**I came in order to work.**

NOTE 2. **Pour**, but not **afin de**, is also used after **trop** and **assez** plus an adjective or adverb. It does not then denote purpose but has the sense of *to be able to*.

Il est trop fatigué pour vous aider.	He is too tired to help you.
Nous ne sommes pas assez riches pour acheter cette auto.	We are not rich enough to buy this car.
Ils étaient trop loin pour nous entendre.	They were too far away to hear us.

5. *The Infinitive with à or de after nouns and adjectives.* When an infinitive complement follows a noun, pronoun, or adjective, the preposition **de** usually precedes the infinitive. But if the infinitive complement conveys a passive meaning (*i.e.* if the sense would permit the substitution of a passive in English), **à** is used before the infinitive.

J'ai reçu l'ordre de partir.	I received the order to leave.
Je n'ai pas le temps de venir.	I have not the time to come.
Je suis charmé de vous voir.	I am delighted to see you.
Il est sûr d'arriver à l'heure.	He is sure to arrive on time.

*but*

J'ai une lettre à écrire.	I have a letter to write (to be written).
Donnez-moi quelque chose à boire.	Give me something to drink (to be drunk).
C'est facile à comprendre.*	This is easy to understand (easily understood).

\* Note that when an infinitive complement conveys a passive meaning, the subject of **être** must be the demonstrative **ce**, not the impersonal **il**.

NOTE 1. **Le dernier**, **le seul**, **le premier** and other numerals, and a few adjectives denoting *tendency*, *fitness*, or *purpose* require **à** before the infinitive.

Vous êtes le premier à me dire cela.	You are the first one to tell me that.
Il est habitué à se lever de bonne heure. ( <i>tendency</i> )	He is used to getting up early.
Nous sommes prêts à partir. ( <i>fitness</i> )	We are ready to leave.
Il est lent à comprendre.	He is slow understanding.

NOTE 2. **De** + infinitive is used after **que** in the second part of a comparison.

**Je préfère lire que d'aller faire une promenade.** I prefer to read rather than go for a walk.

6. Impersonal **il** + **être** + adjective requires **de** before an infinitive. This construction can be used only when the infinitive has a complement. The infinitive phrase in this construction is the logical subject of the main verb.

**Il est difficile de comprendre ce qu'il dit.** It is difficult to understand what he says.

**Il est impossible de savoir la vérité.** It is impossible to know the truth.

**Il m'est impossible de vous aider en ce moment.\*** It is impossible for me to help you now.

\* Note that *for me (him, us, etc.)* may be translated by an indirect object pronoun.

### III. THE SUBJECT AND THE OBJECT OF THE SUBORDINATE INFINITIVE

1. Observe the following sentences:

<b>Nous voulons voir Jean.</b>	We want to see <i>John</i> .
<b>Elle veut le voir aussi.</b>	She wants to see <i>him</i> also.
<b>Elle veut lui parler.</b>	She wants to speak <i>to him</i> .
<b>Je lui ai promis de venir.</b>	I promised <i>him</i> to come.

**Jean, le, lui** (first three examples) are the objects of the infinitives; the pronoun object regularly precedes the infinitive. In the last example **lui** is the object of the main verb; it therefore precedes the main verb and not the infinitive.

2. Observe the following sentences:

<b>J'ai demandé à Paul de nous raconter une histoire.</b>	I asked <i>Paul</i> to tell us a story.
<b>Je lui ai demandé de la raconter.</b>	I asked <i>him</i> to tell it.
<b>Nous l'avons décidé à vous la raconter.</b>	We persuaded <i>him</i> to tell it to you.
<b>Ils leur ont défendu de sortir.</b>	They forbade <i>them</i> to go out.

In the French sentences, **Paul, lui, l', leur** are at the same time the OBJECTS (direct or indirect) of the main verb and the SUBJECTS of the infinitives. A noun or pronoun, so used, is called in French grammar **l'objet-sujet**. Hereafter, it shall be referred to as the OBJECT-SUBJECT.

When the object-subject is a noun, it follows the main verb. When the object-subject is a pronoun, it precedes the main verb (*see above*) except in the imperative affirmative.

**Défendez-leur de sortir.**

Forbid *them* to go out.

3. *Special constructions with verbs of perception.* With verbs of perception, **voir, entendre, regarder, écouter** + infinitive, a special construction is used in the following cases:

a. When the object-subject is a noun it may follow the infinitive of an intransitive verb, provided the latter has no complement.

**Je vois venir votre frère.**

I see your *brother* coming.

*but*

**J'ai vu votre sœur descendre du train.**

I saw your *sister* get off the train.

With the infinitive of a transitive verb the noun used as an object-subject follows the main verb.

**J'ai regardé les enfants manger.**

I watched the children eating.

NOTE. Placed after the Infinitive of a transitive verb the noun would be the object of the infinitive and the meaning of the sentence would change.

**J'ai regardé manger les enfants.**

I watched the children being eaten.

b. When the infinitive has a direct-object pronoun, the latter *precedes the main verb*, and the object-subject is expressed by an indirect object pronoun.

**Nous le leur avons entendu dire.**

We heard *them* say *it*.

**Il vous l'a vu faire.**

He saw *you* doing *it*.

**Je la lui ai entendu raconter.**

I heard *him* telling *it*.

c. Observe the following construction when the infinitive has a direct-object pronoun and the object-subject is a noun:

**Elle l'a entendu raconter par** She heard *John* tell *it*.  
**Jean** (or *à Jean* \*).

\* Used when the context makes clear that it was told *by* and not *to* John.

d. When the infinitive has both a direct and an indirect object the constructions given in Section III:2 on page 184 are used.

**J'ai vu Paul lui donner le chèque.** I saw *Paul* give *him* the check.  
**Je l'ai vu le lui donner.** I saw *him* giving *it* to *him*.

c. **Laisser + infinitive.** All the constructions given for verbs of perception are used with **laisser**, *let*, + infinitive. **Lui** or **leur** must be used when the infinitive has an object, whether the object is a noun or a pronoun.

**Je lui laisserai faire ce travail.** I shall let him do this work.  
**Je le lui laisserai faire.** I shall let him do it.  
**Nous leur laisserons finir leurs devoirs.** We shall let them finish their homework.  
**Il n'a pas laissé entrer son ami.** He did not let his friend come in.  
**Il ne l'a pas laissé entrer.** He did not let him come in.

#### IV. THE PAST INFINITIVE

The Past Infinitive (*See also Lesson Six, page 69*) must be used when the action it denotes was completed in the past prior to the time of the main verb, or will have been completed at a given time in the future.

**Je me souviens de l'avoir vu.** I remember seeing (having seen) him.  
**Je croyais l'avoir déjà entendu.** I thought I had already heard it.  
**J'espère avoir fini demain.** I hope to have finished tomorrow.

NOTE. **Croire**, **penser**, and other declarative verbs are, more frequently than in English, followed by a complementary infinitive when the subject of the subordinate verb is the same as that of the main verb.

## V. THE INFINITIVE AS A NOUN

As in English the infinitive can fulfill the function of a noun. The English form translated by the infinitive may be a gerund. It is generally used without a preposition.

<b>Protester est inutile.</b>	To protest is useless.
<b>Dire la vérité est toujours le plus simple.</b>	To tell the truth is always the simplest.
<b>Pleurer ne servira à rien.</b>	To cry will be of no use.
<b>Voir c'est croire.*</b>	Seeing is believing (To see is to believe).

<sup>1</sup> Ce is generally used when one infinitive is a predicate nominative.

## VI. SPECIAL VERBS

1. **Entendre parler de, entendre dire que.** **Entendre parler de** means *to hear about* things or persons; **entendre dire que**, *to hear that*, referring to facts. Neither **parler** nor **dire** can be omitted in French.

<b>Avez-vous entendu parler de ce roman? J'ai entendu dire qu'il n'était pas intéressant.</b>	Have you heard about this novel? I heard that it was not interesting.
---	---

2. *To wish* + a statement contrary to fact must be translated by the Conditional of **vouloir** + infinitive when the subject of the subordinate clause is the same as that of the main clause.

<b>Nous voudrions pouvoir partir avec vous.</b>	We wish we might leave with you.
<b>Je voudrais l'avoir su plus tôt.</b>	I wish I had known it sooner.

## VERB REVIEW

What is the first person of the Future of the following verbs: **aller, s'asseoir, avoir, conquérir, courir, cueillir, devoir, envoyer, être, faire, mourir, mouvoir, pouvoir, pleuvoir, recevoir, savoir, valoir, venir, voir, vouloir.**

What is the Future of **falloir**?



## EXERCISE A

1. (They do not want to play) au bridge ce soir. 2. Vous avez raison. (This is not easy to say.) 3. (He learned to read) quand il n'avait que quatre ans. 4. Nous ne le croyons pas capable (of being) si cruel. 5. (It is difficult to know) ce qui s'est passé. 6. Je suis loin (from being) convaincu. 7. Il est habitué (to live) dans un grand luxe. 8. Nous sommes heureux (to see) que tout va bien. 9. (We are sorry to hear) que son père est malade (*use apprendre*). 10. J'ai honte (to tell you) que je n'ai rien compris. 11. Nous avons plusieurs courses (to do) ce matin. 12. J'aurai besoin de votre aide (to carry) cette malle. 13. Je lui téléphonerai (before leaving). 14. (It began to rain) dès que nous sommes sortis. 15. (I shall come to see you) demain dans la matinée. 16. Ils ont l'intention (to take) le train de 5 heures. 17. Donnez-lui quelque chose (to drink). 18. Il est trop orgueilleux (to admit) qu'il s'est trompé. 19. J'ai un travail important (to finish). 20. Il serait intéressant (to know) pourquoi il a fait cela. 21. Vous êtes jeune, vous avez beaucoup de choses (to learn). 22. (They refuse to go) avec nous au cinéma. 23. (He forgot to telephone) au boulanger (to send) du pain. 24. (Have you decided to buy) un nouveau tapis? 25. Il n'est plus assez jeune (to play) au tennis. 26. N'avez-vous rien (to do) cet après-midi? 27. C'est possible, mais c'est difficile (to believe). 28. Qu'il fasse ce qu'il veut, je n'ai pas de conseil (to give him). 29. (They wish to speak) à votre père. 30. Il n'est venu que (to ask for) un renseignement. 31. (Haven't you finished writing) cette lettre?

## EXERCISE B

1. (Did you hear him leaving) ce matin? 2. (They invited me to spend) l'été avec eux. 3. Voulez-vous (ask him to wait) quelques minutes? 4. (I heard that) votre pièce a eu beaucoup de succès. 5. (We hope to see you) la semaine prochaine. 6. (I asked you not to make) tant de bruit. 7. Il ne se sent pas bien; (don't let him go out) aujourd'hui. 8. (Ask her to bring) le journal. 9. (She cannot lend you) son dictionnaire; elle s'en sert. 10. (He does not dare to tell you) ce qu'il a fait. 11. Je ne trouve pas mon stylo; (I must have left it) au bureau. 12. Le médecin est-il ici? (Did you see him arrive)? 13. (I see my father coming). Il a l'air en colère. 14. Voulez-vous que (I help you finish) vos devoirs? 15. (I saw this tree being planted) quand j'avais

dix ans. 16. Pourquoi (don't you let him pick) ces fleurs? 17. (Do you remember writing) ces lettres? 18. (I heard him say) qu'il n'était pas heureux. 19. (Tell them not to repeat) ce qu'ils ont entendu. 20. (I wish I could stay) un peu plus longtemps. 21. Qui a cassé ce vase? (C'est Jeanne; (I saw her breaking it). 22. (He watched his father working) et n'a pas offert (to help him). 23. Je n'ai pas vu l'accident, mais (I heard about it). 24. (He does not think he has read) ce livre. (*Two ways*) 25. Connaissiez-vous cette anecdote? Oui, (I heard him tell it) plusieurs fois.

## TRANSLATION

### L'AMOUR DE FARNOW

Une heure plus tard Farnow arrivait à Alsheim, les deux chevaux fumants de sueur.

Il fit demander à Lucienne de venir lui parler dans le jardin, et sans même lui dire bonjour:

— Jean est-il ici? demanda-t-il. Faites bien attention: est-il à Alsheim?

— Mais non, dit Lucienne surprise.

— Vous l'attendez, au moins?

— Pas plus.

— Alors nous sommes perdus, mademoiselle!

— Perdus?

— Oui. S'il n'est pas ici, c'est qu'il a déserté.

— Déserté? . . . Perdus? . . . Est-ce que vraiment, Jean? . . . Vous êtes sûr?

— Puisqu'il n'est pas ici, oui, je suis sûr. . . . Vous ne vous souvenez donc pas? Il avait juré à votre mère qu'il entrerait à la caserne. Il y est entré en effet. Mais la promesse expirait aujourd'hui. Et il a déserté. . . . Et à présent . . .

— A présent, qu'allez-vous faire?

Farnow, le visage contracté, droit devant elle, dans son uniforme poussiéreux, dit d'une voix faible:

— Vous quitter pour toujours! . . .

— Me quitter parce que mon frère déserte? . . . Mais vous ne m'aimez donc pas?

— Oh, si, je vous aime! . . . Seulement l'honneur ne me permet plus de vous épouser. . . . Je ne peux pas être le beau-frère d'un déserteur, moi officier, moi von Farnow!

— Alors cessez d'être officier et continuez de m'aimer! cria Lucienne. Wilhelm, l'honneur vrai consiste à aimer Lucienne, à ne pas l'abandonner, à ne pas manquer à la parole que vous lui avez donnée. Que mon frère aille où il voudra; mais ne brisez pas nos deux vies!

— C'est bien pis. Vous devez savoir toute la vérité, Lucienne: je suis obligé de le dénoncer.

— Dénoncer Jean! Vous ne ferez pas cela! cria Lucienne, avec un geste d'horreur. Je vous le défends!

— Je le ferai tout à l'heure . . . Hermann! Vite aux chevaux, nous partons. . . . Adieu, Lucienne.

Elle courut à lui; elle lui saisit le bras:

— Non, non, cria-t-elle, vous ne partirez pas! Je ne veux pas!

Il regarda un instant ce visage en larmes, où l'ardent amour et la douleur se mêlaient, puis il la repoussa brusquement, gagna la grille, sauta en selle, et partit au galop.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**il fit demander**, he sent to ask  
**c'est que . . .**, it is because . . .  
**à présent**, now

**manquer à la parole**, to break the promise  
**tout à l'heure**, presently  
**se mêler**, to mingle

#### EXERCISE C

1. I heard them say that you were going to buy a house. 2. Mary is not sure to be ready in time to accompany us. 3. Can't you give me something interesting to read? 4. Someone saw John taking the train for Russ-Hersbach. 5. Farnow thought that Lucienne must know where her brother had gone. 6. Farnow's honor forbids him to marry

the sister of a deserter. 7. She refuses to believe that his duty requires him to denounce John. 8. Without adding a word, she watched him go away. 9. I have heard that it is impossible to find an apartment now. 10. He promised us not to leave before we come back. 11. I would prefer to stay home; I have a composition to write. 12. He was the only one to believe what you said. 13. I suppose he only came to ask you to do his work. 14. Have you heard about the new play? What do you think of it? 15. We wish we knew how (*cf.* Lesson Seven, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS, page 85) he succeeded in leaving unnoticed. 16. Should you not prefer us to return home immediately? 17. We are too late; we shall not see the animals being fed (**donner à manger**). 18. He persists in saying that you prevented him from leaving. 19. It will be easier to telephone him than to write him. 20. I wish you would tell me why you decided to sell your horses. 21. We asked him to come to see us before leaving for school. 22. I do not remember saying that I would come to help you. 23. Does he like to play tennis? Yes, but he hates to play when it's hot. 24. It is easy for him to say that life consists in working hard. 25. Were they not forced to give up going to Canada last summer? 26. He would like you to try sending him French newspapers. 27. They did not prepare their lesson and they expect to be scolded. 28. I think I know why you did not let him read this novel. 29. I did not let him read it because I think he is too young. 30. I know it is a good cake; I saw it being made.

# LESSON SIXTEEN

## GRAMMAR AND USAGE

### I. THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES

1. *The Present Participle* with **en**. Following the preposition **en** (*while, on, upon, by, in, when*), the Present Participle can refer only to the subject of the main verb, *i.e.* the two actions expressed in the sentence are performed by the same subject except in a very few set sentences such as: **L'appétit vient en mangeant**. **En** must be used even when no preposition is used in English.

The Present Participle with **en** denotes:

a. Simultaneity: The action is or was taking place at the same time as the action of the main verb, or an action was in progress when another action occurred.

**Il chante en travaillant.**

He sings while working.

**Je me suis trompé de chemin en allant chez les Dupuis.**

I took the wrong road as I was going to the Dupuis'.

b. Simultaneity with implication of means or manner.

**En persévérant vous réussirez.**

By persevering you will succeed.

**Ils sont arrivés en courant.**

They arrived running.

c. Simultaneity with implication of time or circumstance.

**En vous quittant, il était très découragé.**

On leaving you, he was very discouraged.

When he left you, he was very discouraged.

**Il est tombé en prenant l'autobus.**

He fell (while, when, on, as he was) taking the bus.

NOTE 1. The English construction *to begin by* or *to end by* is translated in French by **commencer par** or **finir par** plus an infinitive provided **commencer** and **finir** have no direct object.

**Il a commencé par refuser.**

He began by refusing.

*but*

**J'ai commencé ma journée en  
manquant le train.**

I began my day by missing the train.

NOTE 2. **Tout en** plus a present participle stresses the action, sometimes with the idea of continuity.

**Tout en bavardant nous étions  
arrivés devant chez nous.**

While chatting (all the time) we  
had arrived in front of our  
house.

2. *The Present Participle without en.* The Present Participle without **en** may refer to the object as well as to the subject of the main verb. It denotes:

a. Cause, reason, or motive.

**Me rendant compte qu'il était  
souffrant, je n'ai pas insisté.  
Étant occupé, il ne peut pas vous  
recevoir.**

Realizing (Because I realized) he  
was ill I did not insist.

Being (Because he is, Since he is)  
busy, he cannot receive you.

b. Result.

**Le garde s'endormit, laissant  
échapper le prisonnier.**

The guard fell asleep (thereby)  
letting the prisoner escape.

c. An action which took place immediately before the action of the main verb, or at the moment it began.

**Prenant son fusil, il courut après  
le voleur.**

Taking his gun, he ran after the  
thief.

**Ouvrant la porte avec précau-  
tion, il est entré sur la pointe  
des pieds.**

Opening the door cautiously, he  
came in on tip-toe.

d. A circumstance serving to characterize the subject or the object of the main verb. The Present Participle then is equivalent to a relative clause qualifying the noun or pronoun (*See examples on next page*).

<b>Il a cédé sa place à une femme portant (qui portait) un enfant.</b>	He gave his seat to a woman carrying (who was carrying) a child.
<b>Un homme, prétendant (qui prétend) vous connaître, désire vous parler.</b>	A man, claiming (who claims) that he knows you, wishes to speak to you.

After verbs of perception, it is possible to use the present participle in some cases, but it is safer for the student to use an infinitive (*cf.* Lesson Fifteen, page 185) or a relative clause which distinguishes the object perceived.

<b>Je les vois jouer (jouant) à cache-cache.</b>	} I see them playing hide-and-seek.
<i>or</i>	
<b>Je les vois qui jouent à cache-cache.</b>	

e. Sometimes there is a choice between the participle alone and the participle with **en**. The participle serves to characterize the person performing the action of the main verb; the participle with **en** stresses the simultaneity of the actions. Compare the following sentences.

<b>Elle est sortie pleurant de rage.</b>	Weeping with rage, she left.
<b>Elle est sortie en pleurant de rage.</b>	When she left, she was weeping with rage.
<b>Il s'est avancé, bousculant tout le monde.</b>	He advanced, jostling everybody.
<b>Il s'est avancé en bousculant tout le monde.</b>	As he advanced, he jostled everybody.

3. The present or perfect active participle may be used after **quoique** or **bien que** instead of the Subjunctive when its subject is the same as that of the main verb. This construction is particularly useful to avoid the Imperfect Subjunctive.

<b>Quoique travaillant ensemble, nous ne nous aimions guère.</b> ( <i>Instead of quoique nous travaillions, etc.</i> )	Although we were working (we had been working) together, we did not like each other much.
---	---

NOTE. With the present participle only, **tout en**, to stress the action of the participle, may be used instead of **bien que** or **quoique**.

<b>Il est venu tout en sachant que</b>	He came knowing (perfectly well)
<b>nous étions très occupés.</b>	that we were very busy.

4. *The Perfect Active Participle.* The Perfect Active Participle is used to denote, as in English, that the action has been completed in relation to another past action. But the time relation with the main verb is observed more carefully than it sometimes is in English.

<b>Ayant fini mes leçons, je suis</b>	Having finished my lessons, I am
<b>complètement libre.</b>	completely free.
<b>Étant parti à huit heures, il était</b>	Having left at eight o'clock, he
<b>ici à midi.</b>	was here at noon.

5. *Cases when a present participle cannot be used in French.*

a. The present participle cannot be used in French to translate from the English a form of *to be* + present participle denoting an action in progress. When the speaker wishes to emphasize that an action is in progress, the idiomatic expression **être en train de** + infinitive is used. (**Être en train de** means *to be in the act of*. When translating from French into English, it is best rendered by the progressive form of the verb).

<b>Il est encore en train de dépen-</b>	He is again spending all his
<b>ser tout son argent.</b>	money.
<b>C'était un homme très actif; il</b>	He was a very active man; he
<b>était toujours en train de tra-</b>	was always working at some-
<b>vailer à quelque chose.</b>	thing.

Remember that **en train de** must not be used unless emphasis needs to be given to the fact that the action is in progress.

b. To translate a present participle used in English as an alternative to a complementary infinitive, an infinitive must be used in French.

<b>Je préfère rester à la maison.</b>	I prefer staying (to stay) home.
---------------------------------------	----------------------------------



c. A present participle cannot fulfill the function of a noun in French. An infinitive is used if it could be used in English, otherwise a noun.

**Voir c'est croire.**

Seeing is believing (To see is to believe).

**Pleurer ne servira à rien.**

Crying (to cry) will be of no use.

**La nage et le tennis sont mes sports favoris.**

Swimming and tennis are my favorite sports.

d. To translate a gerund used in English with a possessive noun or pronoun, a subordinate clause is used in French.

**Je ne me souviens pas que Jean (qu'il) ait dit cela.**

I do not remember John's (his) saying that.

**Je ne savais pas qu'il était si riche.**

I did not know of his being so rich.

e. In French, verbs such as **rester**, **passer**, when expressing the use to which one's time is put, take a complementary infinitive with **à**.

**Elle passe son temps à bavarder.**

She spends her time gossiping.

**Ne restez pas là à ne rien faire.**

Do not stay there doing nothing.

f. To translate from English a present participle denoting position, such as *sitting*, *lying*, *leaning*, etc., a past participle is used in French, except that *standing* is rendered by **debout**, an adverb.

**Il se repose appuyé contre un arbre.**

He is resting leaning against a tree.

6. *The Present Participle used as an adjective.* As in English many participles serve as adjectives, and as such agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify, whereas the present participle used as a verb form to denote action, remains invariable (see preceding sections in this chapter.)

**une histoire intéressante**

an interesting story

**une journée fatigante**

a tiring day

**Les nouvelles ne sont pas rassurantes.**

The news is not reassuring.

NOTE. Most participles ending in **-quant** and **-guant** change to **-cant** and **-gant** when they become adjectives. A certain number of **-ant** endings become **-ent**. Check the spelling in the vocabulary.

## II. THE PASSIVE VOICE

The passive formed with **être** + past participle is used to denote as in English, that the action is borne but not performed by the subject. The participle agrees with the subject.

**Paul a été félicité par tous mes amis.** Paul was congratulated by all my friends.

1. A French verb, however, can be used in the passive only when it is used transitively, *i.e.* only the direct object of an active verb can become the subject of that verb used in the passive. In the example above the passive is possible because **Paul** would be the direct object of the active verb: **Mes amis ont félicité Paul.**

But in the following examples the passive is not possible because **lui**, an indirect object, cannot be the subject of the passive.

**Son père lui a donné un fusil.** His father gave him a gun.  
(No passive) He was given a gun by his father.\*

**On ne lui a pas permis de sortir.\*** He was not permitted to go out.

\* The agent of the English passive becomes the subject of the active verb in French. When no agent is expressed and the context implies that one agent is a person, the indefinite **on** (*people, someone, we, they*) is used as the subject of the active verb.

NOTE. Remember that some verbs are transitive in English but intransitive in French (*cf.* Lesson Eight, VOCABULARY DISTINCTIONS, page 98).

**On a conseillé à Jean d'aller au bord de la mer.** John was advised to go to the seashore.

2. The passive voice is not used so frequently in French as in English. The rules in the following paragraphs, without being all-inclu-

sive or absolute, can be safely applied in the majority of cases for the translation of an English passive.

a. Generally a passive can be used in French when the agent is mentioned in English, provided of course that the French verb is transitive.

<b>Ce livre est publié par Harcourt, Brace et Cie.</b>	This book is published by Harcourt, Brace and Co.
<b>Il était craint de tous ses ennemis.</b>	He was feared by all his enemies.
<b>Il est accompagné de son ami.</b>	He is accompanied by his friend.

NOTE. The agent is introduced by **par** when an action is *performed by* the agent, and by **de** when a condition or state *exists within* the agent (loved by, hated by, etc.) or when the verb would normally be followed by **de**.

b. If an English sentence is in the passive and an agent is implied, it may be translated into French by the passive if the fact stressed is that the subject is undergoing an action, the agent being of no concern to the speaker.

<b>J'ai été blessé à Verdun.</b>	I was wounded at Verdun.
<b>Les méchants seront punis.</b>	The wicked will be punished.
<b>La paix a été signée à Versailles.</b>	Peace was signed at Versailles.
<b>Notre cave a été inondée pendant le dernier orage.</b>	Our cellar was flooded during the last storm.

3. Any English sentence in the passive may be turned into an active construction in French by using the pronoun **on** as the subject of an active verb; the implied agent in the English sentence must, however, be a person. Referring to the preceding sentences, the active constructions would be **On punira les méchants; On a signé la paix à Versailles.** The first sentence would be **On m'a blessé à Verdun** if the implied agent is a person, but it could not be changed if the agent is a shell, for example. The last sentence could not be changed, for

it is hardly likely that a person would be the agent. Note the following sentences.

<b>On répare notre auto.</b>	Our car is being repaired. (They are repairing our car.)
<b>On a parlé français toute la soirée.</b>	French was spoken the whole evening.
<b>On a réparé mes souliers.</b>	My shoes were repaired. (They repaired my shoes.)

The English pronoun *they* used indefinitely is nearly equivalent to the French pronoun *on*.

NOTE 1. *To be* + past participle is translated literally when the past participle qualifies the subject, thus denoting a state or condition.

<b>La porte est brisée.</b>	The door is broken.
<b>Le dîner est servi.</b>	Dinner is served.

*but*

<b>On sert le dîner.</b>	Dinner is being served.
--------------------------	-------------------------

NOTE 2. To translate a past of *to be* + past participle, the Past Indefinite (or Past Definite) of *être* is used to denote the action; the Imperfect to describe a state or condition.

<b>Tous les ponts ont été détruits pour arrêter l'ennemi. (action)</b>	All the bridges were destroyed in order to stop the enemy.
<b>Ils ne savaient pas que les ponts étaient détruits. (state)</b>	They did not know that the bridges were destroyed.

NOTE 3. The past participle of a verb used passively agrees in gender and number with the subject. Used as an adjective, it agrees with the noun or pronoun it qualifies.

NOTE 4. A verb with a reflexive pronoun is, not infrequently, used in French to translate an English passive. This construction, however, presents difficulties, and it is sufficient for the student to recognize it when translating from French into English.

<b>Cela ne se dit pas.</b>	That is not being said.
<b>Le blé s'est vendu trop cher.</b>	The wheat was sold too dearly.

4. The passive is not used after verbs of perception (*cf.* Lesson Fifteen, page 185) or after **être à** (meaning *to deserve to be, to be in a position or condition to be*) plus an infinitive.

**Je l'ai vu faire.**

I saw it being done.

**C'est votre frère qui est à blâmer.**

It is your brother who is to be blamed.

### III. THE PAST ANTERIOR

1. After **quand, lorsque, aussitôt que, dès que, après que, and à peine . . . que** the Past Anterior is used to denote that an action was completed before another action, expressed by the Past Definite, took place. It is used in formal speech or narrative.

**A peine Napoléon eut-il gagné la bataille d'Austerlitz, qu'il pensa à de nouvelles conquêtes.**

Hardly had Napoleon won the battle of Austerlitz, when he thought of new conquests.

2. There is also in common use a super-compound form of the Past Anterior formed from the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb + the past participle. It is used, like the Past Anterior, to denote that an action was completed before another past action, expressed by the Past Indefinite, took place. (This form cannot be used with any verb conjugated with **être**.)

**Dès que j'ai eu fini, j'ai changé de vêtements.**

As soon as I had finished, I changed my clothes.

### IV. THE CAUSATIVE FAIRE

1. **Faire**, meaning *to cause, make (someone do something), have (something done)* is used with a direct infinitive. **Faire** and the infinitive it governs form a unit; all nouns, object or subject of the infinitive, follow the infinitive. All pronoun objects precede **faire**, except in the affirmative imperative when they follow it.

**Ne le faites pas travailler.**

Don't make him work.

**Je lui ai fait laver la vaisselle.\***

I had (made) *him* wash the dishes.

\* The subject of the infinitive in English is translated in French by an indirect-object pronoun if a direct object is present.

<b>Je la lui ai fait laver.*</b>	I had <i>him</i> wash it.
<b>Ferez-vous lire votre composition à votre professeur? †</b>	Will you have <i>your professor</i> read your composition? †
<b>J'ai fait écrire une lettre par Paul.‡</b>	I made <i>Paul</i> write a letter.
<b>Il leur fera répondre par son secrétaire.‡</b>	He will have <i>his secretary</i> answer them (them answered by his secretary).
<b>Nous l'avons fait réprimander par le doyen.</b>	We had him reprimanded <i>by the Dean</i> .
<b>Faites-le-lui faire.*</b>	Have (Make) <i>him</i> do it.
<b>Je ferai travailler votre ami.</b>	I shall make <i>your friend</i> work.

\* The subject of the infinitive in English is translated in French by an indirect-object pronoun if a direct object is present.

† **À** + noun is used to translate into French the subject of the English infinitive. But if there is a possibility of confusing the French object-subject of the infinitive with an indirect object, **par** + noun must be used.

‡ **Par** + noun (agent) must also be used when the object of the infinitive is a person. When in doubt it is safer to express the subject of the infinitive with **par** + noun rather than with **à** + noun.

2. **Se faire** + infinitive is used to show that the subject will have, had, or is having something done for himself or to himself.

<b>Nous nous sommes fait bâtir une nouvelle maison à la campagne.</b>	We had a new house built in the country (for ourselves).
<b>Je me ferai tailler la moustache.</b>	I shall have my moustache trimmed.
<b>Il s'est fait donner un livre par le bibliothécaire.</b>	He had the librarian give him a book.

3. The causative **faire** cannot be used if the construction would require an impossible combination of pronouns: two indirect-object pronouns, three pronoun objects, or **me**, **te**, **nous**, **vous** with an indirect pronoun **lui** or **leur**. In such cases **demandeur (de)** or **dire (de)** is used instead of **faire**.

<b>Je lui demanderai de leur envoyer un chèque.</b>	I shall have him send them a check (I shall ask him to send them a check).
<b>Je lui dirai de vous payer.</b>	I shall have him pay you (I shall tell him to pay you).

## VERB REVIEW

What is the plural of the Present Indicative of the following verbs: **aller, asseoir, avoir, boire, conquérir, devoir, dire, être, faire, mourir, pouvoir, prendre, recevoir, savoir, tenir, vouloir?**

Review verbs having irregularities in the plural of the Present Indicative.

## EXERCISE A

*Change the verbs in parentheses to the proper form:* 1. (Having received) de l'argent, je vais vous rembourser. 2. Je me suis perdu (going) à la gare. 3. (Not knowing) ce qui s'est passé, je ne peux rien vous dire. 4. (He left saying) qu'il reviendrait dans un instant. 5. (On arriving) à Paris, je n'avais plus un sou. 6. Je l'ai entendu (telling) à Henry qu'il partait demain. 7. Il a commencé (by scolding me), puis il s'est calmé. 8. Je l'ai trouvé (sitting) dans le jardin. 9. Nous avons passé la soirée à (preparing) nos examens. 10. (Coming out) de chez vous, je suis allé faire une promenade. 11. Allons au cinéma (while waiting for) l'arrivée du bateau. 12. Cet homme a une façon désagréable de (looking at you). 13. (Although he lives) à Paris, il n'est jamais allé au Louvre. (*Two ways*) 14. (Seeing) qu'il dormait, je suis ressorti sans bruit. 15. Je l'ai rencontré (taking a walk) avec ses enfants. (*Two ways*) 16. Après (eating), ils sont allés jouer dans le jardin. 17. Cesser de (making) du bruit, votre mère se repose. 18. Que voulez-vous que je fasse, demanda-t-il (trembling)? 19. (In saying) cela, vous montrez votre duplicité. 20. (Reading) est mon passe-temps favori. 21. (Being) en retard, il a dû partir sans déjeuner. 22. Quand je suis parti, il n'avait pas encore commencé à (working). 23. Il m'attendait, (standing) au milieu de son bureau. 24. Il avait laissé pousser sa barbe, (avoiding) ainsi d'être reconnu. 25. Ne dérangez pas votre mère, (she is dressing). (*Two ways*) 26. Qui est là? C'est un homme (coming) de la part de M. Gérard. 27. J'ai vu Marie (playing) à la balle dans la rue. (*Two ways*) 28. Ne parlez pas (while eating). 29. Oui, je connais madame Clément, (she is charming). 30. Il s'est échappé (by cutting) les barreaux de sa cellule.

## EXERCISE B

1. (Our team was beaten) aux derniers jeux olympiques. 2. (He was awake) quand nous sommes rentrés. 3. Cette nuit (I was awakened) par un bruit étrange. 4. Qu'est-ce qui (makes him think) que je ne l'aime pas? 5. (He was told) de ne laisser entrer personne. 6. Si vous avez besoin de crayons, (I shall have her buy some). 7. Je vous en veux beaucoup, (you caused me to be punished). 8. Cet article est très intéressant, (I shall have him copy it). 9. (She is not permitted) de sortir seule. 10. Oui, elle sort toujours accompagnée (by) sa gouvernante. 11. Ces oranges sont très bonnes, (they were sent to us) de Floride. 12. Il a les yeux fatigués, (don't make him read). 13. (Were they paid for) les dommages causés par l'incendie? 14. Je suis arrivé comme (tea was being served). 15. (Henry was rewarded) de ses efforts. 16. (We were not given) une très belle chambre. 17. (We were told by your brother) que vous vouliez nous voir. 18. Cet élève travaille mal et (is always punished). 19. Henri n'a rien à faire, (I shall have him help you). 20. (She had a hat made) par la nouvelle modiste. 21. Maman! Il a pris mon sifflet! (Make him give it back to me.) 22. Nous avons regardé (the car being repaired). 23. (She had her nails painted) de la même couleur que sa robe. 24. Ces fruits sont-ils frais? Oui, je les ai vu (being picked) ce matin.

## TRANSLATION

## DÉLIVRANCE

La nuit venait. Jean n'était pas encore sorti des forêts allemandes. Il dormait, épuisé de fatigue, couché sur la mousse, et M. Ulrich veillait, attentif au danger possible, encore ému de celui auquel ils venaient d'échapper.

Avant que les deux hommes eussent pu gagner la frontière, l'alarme avait été donnée par le gouvernement militaire de Strasbourg; on avait téléphoné à tous les postes de douane des environs, d'empêcher la désertion du volontaire Oberlé.



Jean et M. Ulrich remarquèrent promptement des allées et venus inquiétantes. Dans la tranquille vallée, il y eut bientôt des douaniers et des gendarmes en vue. Ils se jetèrent dans la forêt. Et la fuite commença.

M. Ulrich et Jean ne furent pas rejoints, mais ils furent aperçus, ils furent traqués pendant plus d'une heure, et empêchés de gagner la frontière, car il aurait fallu traverser à découvert le fond de la vallée. Ils avaient réussi à se cacher entre des piles de fagots. Les gendarmes, ayant rôdé autour quelque temps, s'étaient éloignés.

Jean s'était endormi, et la nuit venait. M. Ulrich, prudemment, sortit de leur refuge.

— Eh bien ! demanda Jean, qui s'éveillait, que voyez-vous ?

— Aucun casque de gendarme, souffla M. Ulrich. La vallée a l'air abandonnée. . . . Te sens-tu vaillant ? L'heure est venue. Regarde bien. Malgré la nuit et la brume, tu peux voir le village des Minières. Nous allons faire un demi-cercle pour l'éviter, et quand nous serons de l'autre côté de la vallée tu n'auras pas deux cents mètres à descendre et tu seras en France.

Ils marchaient avec précaution, ils n'étaient plus qu'à une cinquantaine de mètres de la frontière lorsque tout à coup une voix cria :

— *Halt !*

M. Ulrich dit rapidement à Jean :

— Ne bouge pas ! Moi, je vais les attirer du côté des Minières. Dès qu'ils seront après moi, tu courras droit devant toi.

Il fit quelques pas avec précaution, puis, à travers la futaie, partit au trot.

— *Halt ! Halt !*

Un coup de feu raya l'ombre. Quand le bruit eut cessé, on entendit la voix de M. Ulrich, déjà loin, qui répondait :

— Raté !

En même temps Jean s'élança du côté de la frontière. Il courait de toutes ses forces. Un appel de sifflet retentit. Jean précipita sa course. Il déboucha inopinément sur une route. Aussitôt un second coup de feu éclata. Jean courut encore quelques mètres et roula dans un taillis. . . .

Tard dans la nuit il s'éveilla de son évanouissement. Un homme se penchait au-dessus de lui. Jean le regarde. Il reconnaît un douanier français. Sa figure est avenante.

— Qu'est-ce que j'ai, demanda Jean d'une voix faible.

— L'épaule traversée. Ça guérira. . . Heureusement que nous faisons notre ronde par ici, quand vous êtes tombé dans le pré. Mon camarade est allé chercher le médecin. . . Mais qui êtes-vous?

— Vous voyez, j'étais au régiment; . . . j'ai déserté . . . je viens pour être soldat chez nous . . . en France.

#### IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS AND VOCABULARY

**promptement**, quickly, soon  
**des allées et venues**, activity, movements to and fro  
**un douanier**, customs officer  
**un gendarme**, mobile guard  
**à découvert**, in the open  
**s'éloigner**, to move away  
**souffler**, to whisper (*lit.* to blow, breathe)  
**vaillant**, stout-hearted, valiant  
**du côté de**, in the direction of, towards  
**droit devant toi**, straight ahead

**la futaie**, lofty trees  
**un coup de feu**, a gunshot  
**raier**, to streak  
**précipiter**, to accelerate  
**déboucher**, to emerge, come out  
**inopinément**, unexpectedly  
**avenant**, kind, cheerful  
**traversée**, shot through  
**par ici, par là**, this way, that way  
**aller chercher**, to go to get  
**se tromper de chemin**, to take (go) the wrong way

#### EXERCISE C

*Apply your knowledge of modes and tenses in this exercise.* 1. After walking for several hours they were exhausted. 2. They must avoid being seen until nightfall. 3. We hope that nothing will prevent John from reaching the border. 4. When John has slept for an hour or two, he will feel more valiant. 5. Although Uncle Ulrich was tired, he refused to rest. 6. Knowing the country, he was sure not to go the wrong way. 7. When night came, he made John come out of their refuge. 8. He succeeded in attracting the mobile guards in his direction. 9. Suddenly they saw him disappearing into the forest. 10. John crossed the road running with all his might. 11. Are you not sorry that John was wounded while escaping? 12. If he had been able to leave on time, this would not have happened. 13. Your essay (*essai*) is very good; I heard it being read to the class. 14. As soon as he had finished the last

chapter, he read it to us. 15. Fearing that she would not come, they went to get her. 16. It is possible that her mother will not permit her to go out. 17. Taking a taxi he arrived in time to see us before we left (cf. Lesson Fourteen, page 172). 18. I do not know whether I shall be able to have my watch repaired. 19. If you need money, why don't you have your father lend you some? 20. It is doubtful that he will be given any by his brother. 21. When my book is published, I shall have it sent to you. 22. She looks much younger since she had her hair cut. 23. Realizing that it was still early, I let him sleep. 24. If I receive a letter from Louise, I shall have your mother read it. 25. We cannot find anyone knowing his address. (*Two ways*) 26. He ended by admitting that he should not have done it. 27. We have not been told what happened to you yesterday. 28. He had a suit made by my tailor, but he was not satisfied with it. 29. I asked what was the matter with me and they told me I was wounded. 30. In leaving you I want to wish you: Good luck (*bonne chance*).

# SUPPLEMENTARY COMPOSITIONS

The following compositions are based on the French text (the story of the Oberlés) a chapter of which is given in each lesson. Before attempting a composition, the student should first review the chapter on which it is based and study with attention the French text. He will also find it helpful to review the preceding text. He should refer both to the chapter and to the text as often as necessary to make certain of the constructions, idiomatic expressions, and other information needed to do the work correctly. Additional aids are provided in the vocabulary at the back of the book, particularly cross-references to words and expressions which have been studied under the heading of Vocabulary Distinctions.

The student should follow the model set by the text in the use of the informal **tu** in conversation.

## I

The events of this story take place in Alsace, several years after the war of 1870. As you know, France had been defeated and had lost two of her provinces: Alsace and Lorraine.

Now, we want you to meet <sup>1</sup> the Oberlés. They live in Alsheim, a small town not very far from Strasbourg, the capital of Alsace. The family is composed <sup>2</sup> of Mr. Joseph Oberlé and his wife, their two children, John and Lucienne, and the grandfather Philippe, Mr. Oberlé's father. Let us not forget Uncle Ulrich, Mrs. Oberlé's brother, who, although he is not living <sup>3</sup> at the Oberlés', will play an important part in John's life.

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Eleven, Vocabulary Distinctions.  
Eleven, Section IV.

<sup>2</sup> See Vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> Lesson

Mr. Philippe and his daughter-in-law have remained faithful to France, and like most Alsatians, have never ceased to resist the efforts of their conquerors to Germanize the old French province.

As for Mr. Oberlé, a rich owner of a saw mill, he had been obliged to turn <sup>1</sup> to the German administration in order to be able to continue to transact business. Finally he became completely reconciled to those whom his father calls "the enemy," and he sent his two children to study in Germany. He hopes that, far from their mother and their grandfather, they will forget France and learn to like the Germans.

When the story begins, John has just returned from Munich where he had completed his law courses.

What do John and Lucienne think of Germany? You will find the answer to this question in the chapters which follow.

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.

## II

When John entered <sup>1</sup> his father's office, the latter was reading his mail. On seeing <sup>2</sup> his son he smiled at him and said:

"Well, my boy, how are you?" And without giving <sup>3</sup> John the time to answer, he continued: "How glad I am to see you! Sit down. I have asked you to come here so that we might talk <sup>4</sup> about your future without your mother or your grandfather interfering. Let us settle first the question of your military service. You will begin it in six months, won't you?"

"Yes, Father, that is my intention."

"Very well. And afterwards. You know that I wish you to enter the magistrature, but perhaps you would prefer the administration. Tell me, which one shall you choose?"

"I am sorry, Father, but I shall be neither <sup>5</sup> a magistrate nor an official."

Mr. Oberlé looked at his son for a moment, surprised and angry at this resistance to his desires. Finally he asked:

"And why not?"

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Sixteen, Section I : 1.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Six, Section IV.  
<sup>4</sup> Lesson Eleven, Section IV.    <sup>5</sup> Lesson Three, Section III.

"My decision is the result of several years <sup>1</sup> spent among the Germans. Try to understand, I have remained Alsatian at heart, that is to say, French. I do not hate the Germans, but I am sure that I should not be able to get along with them; I am too independent, I should not always obey. On the other hand, I like your business, and with your permission, I should like to work with you and live in Alsheim."

"Do you think that a manufacturer is independent?"

"No, but he is more independent than an official in the German administration."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Five, Vocabulary Distinctions.

### III

"You are wrong, John, to <sup>1</sup> think that I am independent. You are young and you lack experience; but you will learn that we depend a great deal on the Germans, for it is they <sup>2</sup> who buy, not the French. I know your love for France, and I can guess your opinions about the situation in Alsace."

"But, Father, my opinions until now, have done me no harm, even in Germany."

"It is different in Alsace. What I mean is that, here, Germans distrust us. If you are going to work with me I do not want you to meddle in politics.<sup>3</sup> You may think what you want of your former country, I shall only ask you not to express your thoughts in public."

"Then you will allow me to stay in Alsheim and (*to*) work with you?"

"Yes, my boy; you know very well that my only desire is to <sup>1</sup> see you happy. Next week I shall take you to Strasbourg and Metz, and I shall introduce you to our clients, but beginning tomorrow, you will accompany Guillaume on his visits to our forests."

"How grateful I am to you! Now I shall go and inform my mother of your decision."

"Certainly. After you have seen her, I want you to go and speak to your sister. Lucienne is no longer a child, she is a very sensible person and understands our situation; when she has talked to you, perhaps you will understand it better too."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Fifteen, II : 5.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Eleven, III.    <sup>3</sup> Singular.

"I shall try. In any case I can promise you not to do anything<sup>1</sup> contrary to your interests."

"I am sure of it. But I shall not keep you any longer, I shall see you tonight at dinner."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Twelve, Vocabulary Distinctions.

#### IV

An important member of the family whose<sup>1</sup> acquaintance you have not yet made is John's sister, Lucienne, a pretty girl, frank, intelligent, but proud and ambitious. Like John, she has been brought up in a German school. This education, however, has left a deep mark on her mind, and she can no longer understand her grandfather's hatred for everything that is German nor the love of her mother for France. Her father is the only member of the family with whom she gets along well. But he is always very busy, and she sees him only at meals, when they cannot talk freely.

Lucienne is not at all sentimental, nevertheless she suffers to see her family thus divided. Having been away from Alsheim for so long, she has no friends of her own age, and her life is not very happy. And so she was delighted when she learned John's decision to<sup>2</sup> stay in Alsheim and to work with their father. Now, she thinks that her life will be happier, there will be someone<sup>3</sup> young in the house, someone in whom she will be able to confide.<sup>4</sup>

She has hardly seen<sup>5</sup> John since his return and has not been able to speak to him alone. What does he think of the family situation? Will he take sides with his mother or will she find an ally in him? She must talk frankly to him as soon as possible.

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Ten, I.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Fifteen, II : 5.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Twelve, Vocabulary Distinctions.    <sup>4</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>5</sup> Lesson Seven, I : 5, b.

(After luncheon, at about half past two in the afternoon, Lucienne and John are sitting in the garden. They are talking over family matters.)

Lucienne: Did Father speak to you of his ambitions?

John: You mean his commercial ambitions?

L.: No, his political ambitions.

J. (surprised): He did not say a word on that subject. He only told me that I cannot turn my back <sup>1</sup> on the Germans if I want to work with him. He added also that he does not want me to meddle in politics.<sup>2</sup> I do not understand. You do not mean that he will give up his commercial interests in order to defend the cause of Alsace and the Alsatians?

L.: No, of course not. He is not so foolish.

J.: Lucienne!

L.: Well, what? You think that I am not respectful enough, don't you? I am frank and I am simply telling you what I think. Father is an intelligent and practical man; he would not do anything <sup>3</sup> so contrary to his own interests.

J.: Then I understand still less. Or rather, I am afraid to understand. You do not mean that he intends to . . .

L.: Yes. And his candidacy will be approved by the German government.

J.: But that is impossible, Lucienne; I cannot believe you. How can he do such a <sup>4</sup> thing when he knows that Mother and Grandfather will never change. Or does he hope to convert them?

L.: He will not try, for he knows <sup>5</sup> it would be useless. But you know Father, if he thinks he is right, nothing will stop him.

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Twelve, I: 2.    <sup>2</sup> Singular.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Twelve, Vocabulary Distinctions.  
<sup>4</sup> Lesson Thirteen, Vocabulary Distinctions.    <sup>5</sup> Lesson Seven, Vocabulary Distinctions.

## VI

A few days after his conversation with Lucienne, John decided to go to call on the Bastians. However, as he walked <sup>1</sup> towards their farm he wondered: "How are they going to receive me?"

Lucienne has told him that their two families no longer speak to each other. He knows, of course, that they severely criticize his father's



conduct; especially Mrs. Bastian who had lost three brothers in the war, and cannot forgive Joseph Oberlé for having sought the friendship of the Germans in order to satisfy his personal ambitions. Do they know that he, John, is faithful to the past of his fatherland? Will they receive him as the grandson of Mr. Philippe Oberlé, the old Alsatian patriot? Or will they see in him only the son of the one<sup>1</sup> whom Mrs. Bastian calls "the renegade"? For a moment he feels<sup>2</sup> like postponing his visit. But then, he will not see Odile with whom he used to play, formerly, when his father's political ideas were not yet known. Odile, who has remained the charming memory of his childhood and of whom he has never ceased to think. Would she remember him?

Mr. Bastian was in his garden. He seemed astonished to<sup>3</sup> see John, nevertheless he invited him to come in. In the living-room an elderly lady was sitting, busy<sup>1</sup> sewing.

"I asked John to come in," said Mr. Bastian to his wife. "I forgot to tell you that yesterday I met his Uncle Ulrich who assured me that John was one of us."

Mrs. Bastian did not reply. She looked at John with a vague smile and silently resumed her work.

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Eleven, II.    <sup>2</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Fifteen, II.

## VII

*(Beginning with this lesson the Past Definite should be used for the verbs which, in the narrative parts, express completed past actions or succession of events, according to the rules given for the use of tenses in Lesson Seven.)*

The situation was embarrassing. John wanted to stay, hoping<sup>1</sup> to see Odile. But the silence of Mrs. Bastian clearly showed that he was not wanted. Finally he decided that it was better<sup>2</sup> to leave and he rose to say good-by.

"Wait a moment, my boy," said Mr. Bastian, "don't go yet. Nobody leaves this house without drinking a glass of wine with me. If you refuse, John, we shall never see each other again."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Sixteen, I : 2.    <sup>2</sup> See Vocabulary.

And as though he had guessed John's secret desire, he called:  
"Odile."

Odile entered. When she saw John she smiled at him, and he could read in her eyes that she was happy to <sup>1</sup> see him. She was about <sup>2</sup> to speak to him, when she noticed her mother bent silently over her work, and the words died on her lips.

"Odile," said her father, "bring us some wine and some glasses."  
Without saying a word, Odile obeyed.

When Mr. Bastian had poured <sup>3</sup> the wine, John raised his glass and said:

"Let us drink to the land of Alsace."

While saying <sup>4</sup> this he looked at Odile. A gleam in her eyes told him that she had understood the meaning of his toast.

As for Mrs. Bastian she did not seem to have heard.

John bowed and left the room followed by (*de*) Mr. Bastian.

Once outside Mr. Bastian said:

"I saw your Uncle Ulrich a few days ago. He spoke to me about you and I know I can have confidence in you, John. Don't feel resentful towards my wife; when she sees that you have remained a loyal Alsatian in spite of your German education, she also will have confidence in you."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Fifteen, II : 5.    <sup>2</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Sixteen, III.    <sup>4</sup> Lesson Sixteen, I : 1.

## VII

Odile and John had not seen each other again since the day when he had come to call on her father, except from a distance <sup>1</sup> at church. Odile could not forget that day <sup>2</sup> and she often thought of John. . . . She had hoped that her mother would forget her prejudices, and that he could <sup>3</sup> come to their house freely, as he used to do when they were children. But a few weeks after John's only visit, people in the little town had begun to talk of Mr. Oberlé's new ambitions. That had increased Mrs. Bastian's contempt for Joseph Oberlé, and Odile did not even dare to mention John's name before her mother.

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>2</sup> Add *là*.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Ten, II.

One beautiful spring day as she was going in the direction of Alsheim by the little path through the wood, she perceived John standing near a tree. He seemed to be waiting<sup>1</sup> for her.

"Good day, John," she said in (de) a troubled voice.

"Odile, will you allow me<sup>2</sup> to talk to you a moment. I have been seeking an opportunity to see you for a long time. Will you listen to me?"

"How serious you look!"<sup>3</sup> replied Odile, trying<sup>4</sup> to smile. She was very pale, and her lips were trembling a little when she added: "Yes, John, I shall listen to you. I too wanted to see you."

"Is it true, Odile? Then you have guessed that I love you, and that I want you to become my wife?"

"Yes, I have known it for a long time. I love you, too. Only, I am afraid, I do not know of what, but I am afraid."

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Sixteen, I : 5.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Fifteen, III.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Nine, Vocabulary Distinctions.    <sup>4</sup> Lesson Sixteen, I : 1.

## IX

The afternoon seemed long to Lucienne. She was all alone and was waiting impatiently for the return of John who had gone to Strasbourg on business.<sup>1</sup> She was reading in the garden, but from time to time she would put down her book and look towards the gate.

Finally John appeared on the road and she ran to him.

"Good evening, John," she said gaily, "how are you? Was it warm in Strasbourg? Do tell me about your day."

"Well, first I went to see the director of . . ."

"Oh, no, not that! Didn't you meet anyone<sup>2</sup> interesting? Where did you have lunch?<sup>1</sup> With whom?"

"You forget, Lucienne, that I did not go to Strasbourg to have a good time. I went from office to office all day. However before taking the train I stopped at the tavern and I met there a former acquaintance of mine."<sup>3</sup>

"Who?"

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Twelve, Vocabulary Distinctions.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Twelve, II.

"An officer, von Farnow. He told me that he had met you several times last winter at the Brausigs'. I did not know that you went there so often. But what's the matter? Why do you look so pale."

"John," said Lucienne, calmly, "you must (*future*) know it some day. Farnow loves me and I love him. I am going to marry him. Father knows it and he has given his consent. The others know nothing yet. Next week there will be a party at the Brausigs', and Mother will meet Wilhelm there if Father and I can persuade her to go. I hope that you will come too. You may well imagine that I have thought over all the arguments against such a marriage. Do not try to dissuade me, it would be useless. All that I want to know is: will you help me, or will you be against me."

## X

John had finally <sup>1</sup> consented to accompany his sister to the party that the Brausigs were giving in honor of von Farnow.

During dinner one of the guests began to criticize France and John answered with a passion which surprised everyone, especially Farnow. As the guests were leaving the dining-room, he took John aside and said:

"I would like to talk to you, Oberlé. Let us go into the library where no one will disturb us."

"Very well, Farnow."

"My dear fellow, why were you so violent? What was the matter with you? I must admit that K's remarks were rather stupid, but I remember that in our discussions in Munich you were always much calmer. You must have had a reason for acting in this way tonight."

"There was a reason. I wanted you and the others to know that I did not share my father's ideas."

"I see that you have heard <sup>2</sup> that Miss Oberlé and I intend to get married."

"Yes, Lucienne told me herself. I shall not do anything to prevent your marriage with her, but I wanted to tell you that I cannot approve of it."

<sup>1</sup> Use *finir par*.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Fifteen, VI.

"That's what I understood. But what are your objections? Have you anything against me?"

"No, nothing against you personally, Farnow. But do you realize that neither my mother nor grandfather will ever consent to this marriage?"

"Your father has already accepted me."

"Yes, and this will be one more cause of division in our family."

"I am sorry, Oberlé, but these objections are not serious, in my opinion.<sup>1</sup> And even if they were (*so*), Lucienne and I love each other, and nothing, you hear, nothing <sup>2</sup> else counts."

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Twelve, Vocabulary Distinctions.

## XI

Grandfather Oberlé, who had been ill for several months and seldom left his room, did not suspect what was going on in the family. The old patriot's condition grew worse when he learned that his granddaughter intended to marry a Prussian officer, and that his son had given his consent to this marriage. When his father had asked him whether Monique had also consented to it, Joseph Oberlé had been able to answer without lying that she would not oppose the marriage, for the poor woman after a long resistance had been obliged to yield in order to avoid a separation. However, alarmed by the grandfather's condition, she begged her husband to postpone the visit of Mr. de Kasewitz and his nephew.

A few weeks later, Mr. Oberlé said to his wife:

"I have decided that Lucienne's marriage will take place in (à) the middle of October. My father is much better. There is, therefore, no reason not to carry out our plans, and I have written to Mr. de Kasewitz that you and I should be delighted to see him next week. You may inform my father of my decision."

That evening John wrote to Mr. Ulrich: "Dear Uncle, the scandal of my sister's marriage is now inevitable. My father announced it tonight during dinner, in front of the servants. Tomorrow everybody in Alsheim will know it. This puts an end to my hopes of marrying

Odile. But just the same, I want to be sure. Will you go to Mr. Bastian and tell him that I love Odile? Explain everything to him, and ask him whether he will give Odile to the grandson of Philippe Oberlé."

## XII

A man was walking along the road to Alsheim.<sup>1</sup> It was Mr. Ulrich who was bringing Mr. Bastian's answer to his nephew. He had hesitated a long time before coming, but John was to leave for the regiment in a few days, and he could not postpone his visit any longer.

It was John himself who opened<sup>2</sup> the door for him and led him into the living-room.

"My poor boy, I am bringing you bad news."

"I can guess what it is; Mr. Bastian refuses, doesn't he? . . . I was expecting it, for I did not think that he would let his daughter marry Farnow's brother-in-law," added John sadly.

"Don't be discouraged, John. After your military service you will come back to<sup>3</sup> us and you will be able to work for Alsace, and in a year . . . who knows?"

"No, I shall not stay here. I intend to start my military service and then to leave."

"Leave! For where?"

"For France. Understand, Uncle Ulrich. I shall not be able to do anything for Alsace. My compatriots would not trust me because of my father and sister, and I do not want to live the useless and miserable life that would be mine if I stayed. Even if Mr. Bastian had consented I should have been forced to leave Alsace, but perhaps not alone."

"Yes, I understand you. But since you have taken this decision, why wait, why not leave right away when it will be easier?"

"Because Mother suspected something, and I promised her that I should join the regiment. Otherwise she would have tried to hold me back. I shall spend one day in barracks, then I shall desert. It will

<sup>1</sup> Translate *road of Alsheim*.    <sup>2</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>3</sup> Translate *parmi*.

be more dangerous, and I shall need your help. May I count on you, Uncle Ulrich?"

"Of course, my dear boy."

### XIII

John and his uncle had made their plans very carefully. They had settled all the details so as to insure the success of John's flight. The volunteers were not obliged to take their meals at the barracks, and they were allowed <sup>1</sup> to have a room in town. After the morning drill which ended at 11 o'clock, John would go back to his room, change his clothes and then take the noon train for Russ-Hersbach, where Mr. Ulrich would meet him. From there they would proceed by carriage, and then on foot, to <sup>2</sup> a place <sup>1</sup> near the frontier chosen in advance by Uncle Ulrich. They hoped that John could cross the frontier before three. Nobody at the barracks would notice John's absence in time, since he was free to lunch in town.

The plan seemed perfect. Unfortunately, on the day set for his departure, the drill lasted longer than usual, and just as John was walking <sup>1</sup> towards the gate, a man shouted to him that there would be uniform inspection at noon and that the volunteers could not leave the barracks until evening. It was too late now to change plans or to warn Mr. Ulrich. When the man had disappeared John passed <sup>1</sup> through the gate and ran to his room. He looked at his watch. Twenty minutes to twelve! He would not have time to change his clothes; this was dangerous, but he had no <sup>3</sup> choice. He hastily packed his suitcase, sent for a cab, and left for the station; it was already ten to twelve. He arrived there on the stroke of noon, and with a sigh got into the train which was about <sup>1</sup> to leave.

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary.    <sup>2</sup> Translate *up to*.    <sup>3</sup> Definite article after the negative.

### XIV

Letter from von Farnow to his Uncle de Kasewitz.

My dear uncle:

You have written me to ask the details of John Oberlé's desertion.

As you say, it is a very bad example to other Alsatians that a young man of such a good family should desert. I cannot understand it. He will never be able to return to Alsace, to Alsheim, nor see his family again. What astonishes me the most, is that he should abandon the girl he loves.

Anyhow, here is what we discovered. When Oberlé's absence was noticed for the first time, his captain thought that he had not understood the orders. After lunch, when the company assembled again, Sergeant Hamm asked if Oberlé was present. One of the men replied that he had seen him leaving<sup>1</sup> the barracks in great haste immediately after the morning drill, and that he had not returned. Hamm decided to go to see if the young man was not at his lodging. There, the landlady told him that Oberlé had left before noon, in a cab, and with a valise.

Hamm began to get worried. He looked for his captain but the latter was not at the barracks. Then he remembered that I knew John. After hearing<sup>2</sup> his story, I suspected the truth. I rushed to the telephone, and I learned from the stationmaster that a young volunteer, in uniform, had taken the noon train to Russ-Hersbach. Russ-Hersbach! near the frontier. However, there was one hope left: Alsheim is on the Russ-Hersbach line. I had<sup>3</sup> my horse saddled and set out for Alsheim, hoping to find John there. You know the rest. . . .

<sup>1</sup> Lesson Fifteen, II : 2; and III : 3.    <sup>2</sup> Lesson Six, IV.    <sup>3</sup> Lesson Sixteen, IV.

## XV

Lucienne was reading in the living-room when a servant came to tell her that Lieutenant von Farnow wished to speak to her in the garden. Very surprised, Lucienne rose. Wilhelm at such an hour, without warning!<sup>1</sup> Something must be the matter. She looked out of (*par*) the window and saw him walking impatiently back and forth. A little worried she went out into the garden. Farnow, without even greeting her, asked if John was at Alsheim. Astonished at such a question, she replied that of course he was not.

<sup>1</sup> Verb in French, not noun.



"Some time ago, I heard you telling your mother that he was in love with an Alsheim girl. I had thought . . . Are you sure he is not here?"

"Absolutely. But you worry me, Wilhelm. Explain yourself."

"Then everything is lost."

"What is lost? What do you mean? What has happened?"

"What has happened is that your brother has deserted, you understand, deserted."

"It is impossible," she cried, but she knew that it was possible, and that Farnow was telling the truth. "What are you going to do?"

Farnow, his face pale but hard, continued: "There is only one thing that I can do. I must leave you, Lucienne, forever."

"Leave me! But why?"

"Honor forbids me,<sup>1</sup> me a Prussian officer,<sup>2</sup> to marry the sister of a deserter. Not only<sup>3</sup> must I leave you, but also I must denounce John."

"No, no," implored Lucienne, "you cannot be so cruel."

"It is my duty as a soldier.<sup>4</sup> Good-by."<sup>3</sup>

He pushed Lucienne aside, ran to his horse, jumped into the saddle, and galloped away.

<sup>1</sup> *Défendre à quelqu'un de.* <sup>2</sup> Noun in apposition. <sup>3</sup> See Vocabulary. <sup>4</sup> Use of *soldat*.

## XVI

By an unfortunate coincidence the train was late and it was nearly three o'clock when John arrived at Russ-Hersbach. He rushed towards the exit and found his uncle impatiently waiting for him. The two men, without losing a minute, got into the carriage which Mr. Ulrich had engaged.

On the way John related to his uncle the incidents of the morning. Both of them still hoped that John's absence had passed unnoticed. But after they had dismissed the carriage to proceed on foot to (*jusqu'à*) the frontier, they noticed an unusual activity in the vicinity, and they realized that the alarm had been given. They were forced to flee through

the forest the whole afternoon; at nightfall the mobile guards seemed at last to have given up the chase.

"I know where we are," said Mr. Ulrich. "I recognize the village of Minières at the bottom of the little valley. We shall wait until it is completely dark. Meanwhile you must rest."

John, exhausted, fell asleep, while his uncle watched. When night had come, Mr. Ulrich woke John.

"It is time. Everything is quiet now. Night and the fog will help you. Make a half circle to avoid the village and once on the other side of the valley you will be in France. Good luck, my boy, and God keep you."

John moved away rapidly. He was already on the other side of the village when suddenly a voice cried "Halt." He began to run straight ahead. A shot rang out. He continued to run. A second shot, and he rolled into a thicket.

When John opened his eyes again, he saw a French customs officer bending over him.

# APPENDIX

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS

### I. FORMS

There are eleven simple tense forms and nine compound forms. The latter are formed by combining the simple tense forms of the auxiliary verb **avoir** (**être** with verbs used with a reflexive pronoun and a few intransitive verbs) with the Past Participle.

#### SIMPLE FORMS

**Infinitive**  
**Present Participle**  
**Past Participle**  
**Present Indicative**  
Imperfect  
**Past Definite**  
Future  
Present Conditional  
Present Subjunctive  
Imperfect Subjunctive  
Imperative

#### COMPOUND FORMS

(The simple form of the auxiliary from table at left plus Past Participle give the compound form directly opposite in this table.)

Perfect Infinitive  
Perfect Participle  
  
Past Indefinite  
Pluperfect  
Past Anterior  
Future Perfect (Future Anterior)  
Past Conditional  
Perfect Subjunctive  
Pluperfect Subjunctive

## II. FLEXIONAL ENDINGS

A. All verbs, regular and irregular, with five exceptions only, have the same endings for all the forms listed below. The Present Participle always ends in **-ant**. The endings for the other forms are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present Indicative <sup>1</sup>		<b>-ons, -ez, -ent</b>
Imperfect and Present Conditional	<b>-ais, -ais, -ait</b>	<b>-ions, -iez, -aient</b>
Future	<b>-ai, -as, -a</b>	<b>-ons, -ez, -ont</b>
Present Subjunctive <sup>2</sup>	<b>-e, -es, -e</b>	<b>-ions, -iez, -ent</b>
Imperfect Subjunctive	<b>-sse, -sses, -ât <sup>3</sup></b>	<b>-ssions, -ssiez, -ssent</b>

<sup>1</sup> Except **avoir, être, aller, dire, faire**.    <sup>2</sup> Except **avoir** and **être**.    <sup>3</sup> A circumflex accent is placed over the preceding vowel.

B. The endings of the remaining forms — Past Participle, Singular of the Present Indicative, Imperative, and Past Definite — vary with the conjugation to which the verb belongs. In the regular conjugations, these endings are characteristic signs of the conjugation.

## III. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS AND THEIR USE

A. There are five principal parts: Infinitive, Present Participle, Past Participle, Singular of the Present Indicative, Past Definite. The principal parts of a verb are the forms from which the remaining forms are derived.

B. Using **ouvrir**, an irregular verb, as an example, all the tense forms may be derived from the five principal parts. The principal parts and their stems are printed in bold-face type in the following table; they are completed by adding all the endings shown under Section II.

1. INFINITIVE: **ouvrir**

*Future: ouvrirai, etc.*

*Present Conditional: ouvrirais, etc.*

NOTE. Infinitives ending in **-re (écrire)**, drop the **-e**. The stem of both the Future and the Conditional are always the same.

2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE: **ouvrant**

*Plural of Present Indicative:* **ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent**

*Imperfect:* **ouvrais, etc.**

*Present Subjunctive:* **ouvre, etc.**

*Plural of Imperative*<sup>1</sup>: **ouvrons, -ez**

3. PAST PARTICIPLE: **ouvert**

*All compound tenses* (See Section I)

4. SINGULAR OF PRESENT INDICATIVE: **ouvre, -es, -e**

*Singular of Imperative*<sup>1</sup>: **ouvre**

5. PAST DEFINITE: **ouvris, -s, -t, <sup>^</sup>mes, <sup>^</sup>tes,<sup>2</sup> -rent**

The *Past Definite* of all verbs except those of the first conjugation which ends in **-er** is completed by dropping the final **s** of the first person singular and adding the endings shown here. The endings of the *Past Definite* of the first conjugation are: **-ai, -as, -a, -âmes, -âtes, -èrent.**

*Imperfect Subjunctive:* **ouvrisse, etc.**

To form the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, drop the **-s** from the second person singular of the *Past Definite* and add the endings shown in Section II.

<sup>1</sup> The stem and endings of the *Imperative* are the same as those of the corresponding persons of the *Present Indicative* with the exception that verbs having a second person singular in **-es** form the *Imperative* by dropping the **-s**. Four verbs have an irregular *Imperative* (see Table 2, page 229).

<sup>2</sup> A circumflex accent is placed over the preceding vowel.

## IV. CONJUGATION

For the purpose of study and classification, French verbs may be conveniently grouped under three types:

1. *Regular verbs.*

2. *Irregular verbs* whose entire conjugation is based on the five principal parts. (Table 1, page 227.)

3. *Irregular verbs* for which some tenses cannot be derived from the five principal parts alone. There are only about two dozen verbs of this type commonly used. (Table 2, page 229.)

## A. Regular Conjugations

There are three regular conjugations. The characteristic endings of their infinitives are **-er**, **-ir**, **-re**.

1. *Models*

Models are here given for the conjugation, in simple tenses, of the verbs belonging to the three regular conjugations. Endings characteristic of each conjugation are shown in bold-face type. The principal parts are shown in small capitals.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN **-ER**

INFIN.: chanter PRES. PART.: chantant PAST PART.: chanté

PRES. IND.: chante, **-es**, **-e**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ent**

*Imperfect*: chantais, **-ais**, **-ait**, **-ions**, **-iez**, **-aient**

PAST DEFIN.: chantai, **-as**, **-a**, **-âmes**, **-âtes**, **-èrent**

*Future*: chanterai, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont**

*Present Conditional*: chanterais, **-ais**, **-ait**, **-ions**, **-iez**, **-aient**

*Pres. Subj.*: chante, **-es**, **-e**, **-ions**, **-iez**, **-ent**

*Imp. Subj.*: chantasse, **-asses**, **-ât**, **-assions**, **-assiez**, **-assent**

*Imperative*: chante, **-ons**, **-ez**

SECOND CONJUGATION IN **-IR**

A characteristic of this conjugation is the **-iss-** found between the stem and the ending in the Present Participle and forms derived from it.

INFIN.: choisir PRES. PART.: choisissant PAST PART.: choisi

PRES. IND.: choisis, **-is**, **-it**, **-issons**, **-issez**, **-issent**

*Imperfect*: choisissais, **-issais**, **-issait**, **-issions**, **-issiez**, **-issaient**

PAST DEFIN.: choisis, **-is**, **-it**, **-imes**, **-îtes**, **-irent**

*Future*: choisirai, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont**

*Present Conditional*: choisirais, **-ais**, **-ait**, **-ions**, **-iez**, **-aient**

*Pres. Subj.*: choisisse, **-isses**, **-isse**, **-issions**, **-issiez**, **-issent**

*Imp. Subj.*: choisisse, **-isses**, **-ît**, **-issions**, **-issiez**, **-issent**

*Imperative*: choisis, **-issons**, **-issez**

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-RE*

INFIN.: **vendre** PRES. PART.: **vendant** PAST PART.: **vendu**

PRES. IND.: **vends, -s, -d,<sup>1</sup> -ons, -ez, -ent**

*Imperfect:* **vendais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**

PAST DEFIN.: **vendis, -is, -it, -imes, -îtes, -irent**

*Future:* **vendrai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont**

*Present Conditional:* **vendrais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**

*Pres. Subj.:* **vende, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent**

*Imp. Subj.:* **vendisse, -isses, -ît, -issions, -issiez, -issent**

*Imperative:* **vends, -ons, -ez**

<sup>1</sup> In the third person, **d** is the ending when it is a part of the stem; otherwise the third person ends with **t**: *je romps, il rompt*.

## 2. Orthographical Changes

The stem of certain verbs of the first conjugation undergo the following changes in spelling:

### a. Verbs in *-yer*

**Y** changes to **i** before **-e, -es, -ent** and in the Future and Conditional. *Nettoyer*: *nettoie, nettoies, nettoient, nettoierai, (-ais), etc.; but: nettoions, nettoyez, nettoiais, etc.*

### b. Verbs in *-cer*

**C** changes to **ç** before **a** or **o**. *Menacer*: *menaçons, menaçais, etc.; but: menace, menacions, etc.*

### c. Verbs in *-ger*.

**G** changes to **ge** before **a** or **o**. *Venger*: *vengeant, vengeons, etc.; but: vengent, vengiez, etc.*

### d. Verbs with an **e** (unaccented) in the last syllable of their stem

(1) **E** changes to **è** (accent grave) whenever followed by a mute ending **-e, -es, -ent**, and in the Future and Conditional. *Amener*: *amène, amènes, amènent, amènerai, (-ais), etc.; but: amenons, amenez, amenais, etc.*

### (2) Verbs in *-eler, -eter*

**L** and **t** are doubled instead of accenting the preceding **e**. Appeler: appelle, appellees, appellent, appellerai, (-ais), etc.: *but*: appelons, appelais; jetons, jetais, etc.

**Acheter, geler, peler**, and a few other commonly used verbs change **e** to **è** (accent grave): achète, gèle, etc.

**e**. Verbs with an **é** (accent aigu) in the last syllable of the stem

**é** (accent aigu) changes to **è** (accent grave) whenever followed by the mute endings **-e**, **-es**, **-ent**, but retain the **é** (accent aigu) in the Future and Conditional. Espérer: espère, espères, espèrent; *but*: espérons, espérais, espérerai, (-ais), etc.

## B. Irregular Verbs

TABLE 1

*Irregular verbs whose conjugations are entirely based on the five Principal Parts.*

The Principal Parts in this table and the next are given in the following order: Infinitive, Present Participle, Past Participle, Singular of the Present Indicative, Past Definite. When the endings of the Present Indicative do not follow the pattern **-s**, **-s**, **-t**, the other endings will be given. The vowel (**i** or **u**) of the ending in the first person singular of the Past Definite is kept throughout the tense. Do not forget the circumflex accent in the first and second persons plural.

The conjugation of **lire** is given here as a model. The name of the Principal Part is indicated in small capitals, and the Principal Part itself is printed in bold-face type.

### INFINITIVE: **lire**

*Future*: je lirai, tu liras, il lira, nous lirons, vous lirez, ils liront

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE: **lisant**

*Pres. Ind. Plur.*: nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent

*Imperfect*: je lisais, tu lisais, il lisait, nous lisions, vous lisiez, ils lisaient

*Pres. Subj.*: je lise, tu lises, il lise, nous lisions, vous lisiez, ils lisent

### PAST PARTICIPLE: **lu**

*All the compound tenses*



PRES. IND. SING.: je lis, tu lis, il lit

*Imperative: lis*

PAST DEFINITE: je lus, tu lus, il lut, nous lûmes, vous lûtes, ils lurent

*Imperfect Subjunctive: je lusse, tu lusses, il lût, nous lussions, vous lussiez, ils lussent*

assaillir, assaillant, assailli; j'assaille, -es, -e; j'assaillis

(likewise tressaillir)

battre, battant, battu; je bats; je battis. (*Regular, except for the dropping of one t in the Pres. Ind. Sing.*)

bouillir, bouillant, bouillis; je bous; je bouillis

conclure, concluant, conclu; je conclus; je conclus

(likewise exclure)

conduire, conduisant, conduit; je conduis; je conduisis

(likewise verbs in -uire, except nuire and luire)

connaître,<sup>1</sup> connaissant, connu; je connais; je connus

(likewise verbs in -âtre, except naître)

coudre, cousant, cousu; je couds, -s, -d; je cousis

craindre, craignant, craint; je crains; je craignis

(likewise verbs in -aindre, -eindre, -oindre)

croire, croyant,<sup>2</sup> cru; je crois; je crus

crotre, croissant, crû; je crois; je crûs

(<sup>1</sup> *is kept in all forms which could be confused with croire.*)

distraindre, distrayant,<sup>2</sup> distrait; je distrais; (none)

(likewise verbs in -traire)

dormir, dormant, dormi; je dors; je dormis

(Note the loss of the last consonant of the stem in the singular of the Pres. Ind.)

écrire, écrivant, écrit; j'écris; j'écrivis

(likewise verbs in -serire or -crire)

fuir, fuyant,<sup>2</sup> fui; je fuis; je fuis

lire, lisant, lu; je lis; je lus

maudire, maudissant, maudit; je maudis; je maudis

mentir, like dormir

mettre, mettant, mis; je mets; je mis

naître,<sup>1</sup> naissant, (être) né; je nais; je naquis

nuire, nuisant, nui; je nuis; je nuisis

(likewise luire, but has no Past Definite.)

ouvrir, ouvrant, ouvert; j'ouvre, -es, -e; j'ouvris

(likewise verbs in -vrir and -frir)

<sup>1</sup> Circumflex is kept only before -t.

<sup>2</sup> Y becomes i before mute endings -e,

-es, -ent.

partir, partant, (être) parti; je pars; je partis  
 plaire, plaisant, plu; je plais, -is, -ît; je plus  
 (*likewise se taire. No circumflex in il se tait*)  
 pourvoir, pourvoyant, pourvu; je pourvois, je pourvus  
 repentir (se), *like* dormir  
 résoudre, résolvant, résolu; je résous; je résolus  
 rire, riant, ri; je ris; je ris  
 (*likewise sourire*)  
 servir, *like* dormir  
 sentir, *like* dormir  
 sortir, *like* dormir (*conjugated with être*)  
 suffire, suffisant, suffi; je suffis; je suffis  
 suivre, suivant, suivi; je suis; je suivis  
 vaincre, vainquant, vaincu; je vaines, -s, -c; je vainquis  
 vêtir, vêtant, vêtu; je vêts; je vêtis  
 vivre, vivant, vécu; je vis; je vécus

## TABLE 2

*Irregular verbs which, in some forms, do not derive their stem from the five Principal Parts.*

The forms affected are any of the following: the Present Indicative, the Future and the Present Conditional (same stem for both), the Present Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Imperfect (*only two verbs, avoir and savoir*).

The changes in stem and the forms which may cause some hesitation are given following the five principal parts. Forms not given are derived in the regular way as explained in Section III.

aller, allant, (être) allé; je vais; j'allai

*Pres. Ind.:* vais, vas, va, allons, -ez, vont

*Past Definite:* allai, -as, -a, -âmes, -âtes, -èrent

*Future:* irai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* aille, -es, -e, allions, -iez, aillent

*Imperative:* va, allons, -ez

asseoir, asseyant, assis; j'assieds; j'assis

*Future:* assierai, etc.

(*y is kept in all forms derived from the Pres. Part.*)

*May also be conjugated.*

asseoir, assoyant, assis; j'assois; j'assis

*Future:* assoirai, etc.

avoir, ayant, eu; j'ai; j'eus

*Pres. Ind.:* ai, as, a, avons, -ez, ont

*Future:* aurai, etc.

*Imperfect:* avais, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient

*Imperative:* aie, ayons, -ez

boire, buvant, bu; je bois; je bus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* buvons, -ez, boivent

*Pres. Subj.:* boive, -es, -e, buvions, -iez, boivent

conquérir, conquérant, conquis; je conquiers; je conquis

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* conquérons, -ez, conquièrent

*Future:* conquerrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* conquière, -es, -e, conquérions, -iez, conquièrent

(likewise acquérir and requérir)

courir, courant, couru; je cours; je courus

*Future:* courrai, etc.

cueillir, cueillant, cueilli; je cueille, -es, -e; je cueillis

*Future:* cueillerai, etc.

devoir, devant, dû (*f. due*); je dois; je dus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* devons, -ez, doivent

*Future:* devrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* doive, -es, -e, devions, -iez, doivent

dire,<sup>1</sup> disant, dit; je dis; je dis

*Pres. Ind.:* vous dites (*also* vous redites)

envoyer. *Regular except in the Future:* enverrai, etc.

être, étant, été; je suis; je fus

*Pres. Ind.:* suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont

*Future:* serai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* sois, sois, soit, soyons, -ez, soient

*Imperative:* sois, soyons, -ez

faire, faisant, fait; je fais; je fis

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* faisons, faites, font

*Future:* ferai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* fasse, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Other verbs formed from *dire*, such as *prédire*, *contredire*, etc., have a regular second person plural: *contredisez*, *prédisez*, etc. except *redire*.

faillir. *Seldom used except in the following forms:*

*In compound tenses; past participle:* failli

*Past Definite:* je faillis, etc.

*Future:* je faillirai, etc.

falloir, (*none*), fallu; il faut; il fallut

*Imperfect:* il fallait

*Future:* il faudra

*Pres. Subj.:* il faille

mourir, mourant, (être) mort; je meurs; je mourus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* mourons, -ez, meurent

*Future:* mourrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* meure, -es, -e, mourions, -iez, meurent

mouvoir, mouvant, mû (*f. mue*); je meus; je mus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* mouvons, -ez, meuvent

*Future:* mouvrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* meuve, -es, -e, mouvions, -iez, meuvent

(likewise émouvoir; *past participle:* ému; *no circumflex*)

pouvoir, pouvant, pu; je peux; -x, -t; je pus

*Pres. Ind. Sing. Interrogative:* puis-je?

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* pouvons, -ez, peuvent

*Future:* pourrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* puisse, etc.

*No imperative*

pleuvoir, pleuvant, plu; il pleut; il plut

*Future:* il pleuvra

prendre, prenant, pris; je prends; je pris

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* prenons, -ez, prennent

*Pres. Subj.:* prenne, -es, -e, prenions, -iez, prennent

recevoir, recevant, reçu; je reçois, je reçus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* recevons, -ez, reçoivent

*Future:* recevrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* reçoive, -es, -e, recevions, -iez, reçoivent

(likewise all verbs ending in -cevoir)

savoir, sachant, su; je sais; je sus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* savons, -ez, -ent

*Imperfect:* savais, etc.

*Future:* saurai, etc.

*Imperative:* sache, -ons, -ez

tenir, tenant, tenu; je tiens; je tins

*Pres. Ind.:* tenons, -ez, tiennent

*Past Definite:* tins, tins, tint, tîmes, tîmes, tintrent

*Future:* tiendrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* tienne, -es, -e, tenions, -iez, tiennent

valoir, valant, valu; je vau, -x, -t; je valus

*Future:* vaudrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* vaille, -es, -e, valions, -iez, vaillent

venir, *like* tenir

voir, voyant,<sup>1</sup> vu; je vois; je vis

*Future:* verrai, etc.

(*prévoir has a regular Future: prévoirai*)

vouloir, voulant, voulu; je veux, -x, -t; je voulus

*Pres. Ind. Plur.:* voulons, -ez, veulent

*Future:* voudrai, etc.

*Pres. Subj.:* veuille, -es, -e, voulions, -iez, veuillent

*Imperative:* veuille, -ons, -ez

<sup>1</sup> All verbs formed by the addition of a prefix to any verb in Tables 1 and 2 (except *dire*) are conjugated like the basic verb: *parcourir*, like *courir*; *consentir*, like *sentir*; *poursuivre*, like *suivre*; etc. *Répartir* (to allot) is not a compound of *partir*, and belongs to the regular 2nd Conjugation.

## APPENDIX II

### A. Verbs followed by a direct infinitive

aimer mieux	écouter	oser	savoir
aller	entendre	penser	sembler
avouer	envoyer	pouvoir	souhaiter
compter	espérer	préférer	venir
croire	faire	prétendre	voir
désirer	laisser	regarder	vouloir
devoir			

### B. Verbs requiring *de* before an infinitive

accepter	écrire	menacer	refuser
cesser	empêcher	obliger ( <i>also à</i> )	regretter
craindre	essayer	ordonner	souffrir
décider	éviter	oublier	tâcher
défendre	s'excuser	pardonner	téléphoner
demander	finir de	permettre	venir de ( <i>to have</i>
dire	implorer	promettre	<i>just</i> )

C. Verbs requiring *à* before an infinitive

aider	commencer ( <i>also de</i> )	hésiter	réussir
aimer	consentir	être	tenir ( <i>to be anxious to</i> )
s'attendre	continuer ( <i>also de</i> )	inviter	
avoir	demander ( <i>also de</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	persuader	

NOTE. Only the verbs used in this book are given here.

<sup>1</sup> Only when **demander** is used without a person as indirect object.

## APPENDIX III

## A. Negations

**ne . . . pas**, not

**ne . . . point** (less frequent than **ne pas**), not

**ne . . . guère**, not much, not many, not very

**ne . . . jamais**, never

**ne . . . plus**, no more, not any more, no longer, not any longer

**ne . . . personne**,<sup>1</sup> nobody, no one, not anyone

**ne . . . rien**,<sup>1</sup> nothing, not anything

**ne . . . ni . . . ni**,<sup>2</sup> neither . . . nor

\* **ne . . . aucun** <sup>1</sup> (**de**), none (of), no (adjective)

\* **ne . . . nul**,<sup>1</sup> none, no (adjective)

**ne . . . pas un (seul)**, not one (not a single one)

**ne . . . que**, only

**ne . . . rien que**, nothing but

**ne . . . personne que**, no one but, nobody but

**ne . . . jamais que**, never . . . anything but

<sup>1</sup> When used as subject of the verb: **personne ne, rien ne, aucun ne, nul ne, pas un ne**.

<sup>2</sup> When used with the subjects of the verb: **ni . . . ni . . . ne**.

\* **Ne . . . aucun, aucun . . . ne; ne . . . nul, nul . . . ne**.

**Ne . . . aucun, aucun . . . ne**, can be used either as adjectives or pronouns.

**Nul** and **aucun** agree in gender with the noun they modify, or with their antecedent. They are not generally used in the plural.

**Je n'ai vu aucun de mes amis.**

I have seen none of my friends.

**Je n'ai aucun désir de le voir.**

I have no desire to see him.

**Aucun n'est encore arrivé.**

None have arrived yet.

**Ne . . . nul** can only be used as an adjective. **Nul . . . ne** can be used as either a pronoun or an adjective. **Nul** is more emphatic than **aucun**.

**Je n'ai vu nul homme plus ridicule que lui.**

I have seen no man more ridiculous than he.

**Nulle femme n'est plus intelligente.**

No woman is more intelligent.

**Nulle n'est plus belle.**

None is prettier.

B. Common adverbs used between the auxiliary and the Past Participle in compound tenses:

<b>à peine</b> , hardly	<b>même</b> , even
<b>assez</b> , enough	<b>mieux</b> , better
<b>aussi</b> , also	<b>moins</b> , less
<b>beaucoup</b> , much, very much	<b>peu</b> , little
<b>bien</b> , well	<b>à peu près</b> , nearly
<b>bientôt</b> , soon	<b>peut-être</b> , perhaps
<b>certainement</b> , certainly	<b>presque</b> , almost
<b>déjà</b> , already	<b>probablement</b> , probably
<b>encore</b> , still, again	<b>seulement</b> , only
<b>pas encore</b> , not yet	<b>souvent</b> , often
<b>enfin</b> , at last	<b>toujours</b> , always
<b>jamais</b> , ever	<b>trop</b> , too much
<b>mal</b> , badly	<b>vraiment</b> , really

## APPENDIX IV

### NUMERALS

#### A. Cardinal Numbers

un, une	6 six	11 onze	16 seize
deux	7 sept	12 douze	17 dix-sept
trois	8 huit	13 treize	18 dix-huit
quatre	9 neuf	14 quatorze	19 dix-neuf
cinq	10 dix	15 quinze	20 vingt
21 vingt et un	70 soixante-dix		
22 vingt-deux, etc.	71 soixante et onze		
30 trente	72 soixante-douze, etc.		
31 trente et un	80 quatre-vingts		
32 trente-deux, etc.	81 quatre-vingt-un ( <i>no et</i> ), etc.		
40 quarante	90 quatre-vingt-dix		
41 quarante et un	91 quatre-vingt-onze ( <i>no et</i> ), etc.		
42 quarante-deux, etc.	92 quatre-vingt-douze, etc.		
50 cinquante	100 cent		
51 cinquante et un	101 cent un		
52 cinquante-deux, etc.	102 cent deux, etc.		
60 soixante	1000 mille		
61 soixante et un	1001 mille un, etc.		
62 soixante-deux, etc.			

### B. Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-ième** to the cardinal, except **premier**:

1st	premier, première (f.)
2nd	deuxième <i>or</i> second, seconde (f.)
3rd	troisième
5th	cinquième ( <i>note the addition of the u after q</i> )
9th	neuvième ( <i>note the change of f to v</i> )
21st	vingt et unième
22nd	vingt-deuxième
	etc.

### C. Fractions

$\frac{1}{2}$	Adjective: demi; noun: la moitié	
$\frac{1}{3}$	un tiers	$\frac{1}{4}$ un quart
$\frac{2}{3}$	deux tiers	$\frac{3}{4}$ trois quarts

With other fractions, the denominator is an ordinal number as in English: **trois dixièmes**, three tenths.

### D. Remarks on Numerals

1. Cardinal numbers are invariable except in the following cases:

**Un** has a feminine form **une**: **vingt et une femmes**.

Multiples of **vingt** and **cent** take an **s** when not followed by another numeral: **Quatre-vingts ans, deux cents hommes**; *but*, **Deux cent quarante, quatre-vingt-sept**.

**Mille** is always invariable: **trois mille**.

**Million** and **milliard** (billion) are nouns. They take an **s** in the plural in all cases. Not followed by another numeral they are used as nouns of quantity and thus are followed by **de** before the noun they modify: **Un million de francs, trois millions de dollars**; *but* **Trois millions cinq cents mille habitants**.

2. Ordinal numbers agree with the noun: **les premières pages, la seconde maison**.

3. **Le** and **la** are used without elision before **huit, huitième, onze, onzième**: **le huitième jour, la onzième semaine, le huit janvier**.



4. *One* before *hundred* and *thousand* is not translated:

<b>cent cinquante élèves</b>	one hundred and fifty students
<b>mille deux cent kilomètres</b>	one thousand two hundred kilometers

5. Numbers from 1100 to 1900 may be expressed in multiples of **cent** as in English, but higher multiples must be expressed in thousands:

<b>onze cent cinquante francs</b>	eleven hundred and fifty francs
<b>l'année dix-neuf cent trente</b>	the year nineteen hundred and thirty

*but*

<b>deux mille quatre cents</b>	twenty-four hundred
--------------------------------	---------------------

6. A comma is used in French before a decimal; a period, to separate groups of digits:

<b>3,50</b>	3.50
<b>3,7: trois virgule sept</b>	3.7: three point seven
<b>3.535.260</b>	3,535,260

# VOCABULARY

## FRENCH-ENGLISH

The following items are omitted from this vocabulary: Articles; personal and relative pronouns; interrogative, demonstrative and possessive adjectives and pronouns; the commoner adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions; common negations; and obvious cognates unless additional meanings are needed. In case of hesitation, consult the index.

As a rule only the meanings needed for the translation of the text and exercises are given. Gender is indicated by the article wherever possible; the gender of a few words is indicated by *m.* and *f.* Congruent forms of adjectives are omitted, only the masculine being given.

Roman numerals following an entry refer to the VOCABULARY DISTINCTION section in the lesson of that number.

— indicates repetition of the part of the original entry that is printed in boldfaced type.

**abord**: **d'**—, first, at first  
un **accueil**, welcome, reception  
**acheter**, to buy  
**acquérir**, to acquire  
une **affaire**, business; **faire des** —s, to transact business  
**affecter**, to affect, assign  
**agir**, to act, behave; **s'**— **de**, to be a question of  
**aider**, to help  
**ailleurs**, elsewhere; **d'**—, besides, moreover  
**aimer**, to love, like; — **mieux**, to prefer  
**ainsi**, thus  
un **air**, air; **avoir l'**—, to look, seem  
**ajourner**, to put off, postpone  
**ajouter**, to add

un **aliment**, food  
**l'Allemagne f.**, Germany  
**allemand**, German  
**aller**, to go; **s'en** —, to go away, depart  
**allumer**, to light  
une **allumette**, match  
**alors**, then, and so  
**s'améliorer**, to improve  
**amener**, to bring  
**l'ami (e)**, friend  
un **amour**, love  
**s'amuser**, to have a good time (fun)  
un **an**, year  
**anglais**, English  
une **année**, year  
un **anniversaire**, birthday  
**août**, August

apercevoir, to perceive, see; s'—, to notice  
 appartenir, to belong  
 un appel, call  
 appeler, to call  
 apporter, to bring  
 apprendre, to learn  
 un apprentissage, apprenticeship  
 un appui, support, help  
 appuyer, to support, back  
 après, after, afterwards  
 une après-midi, afternoon  
 ardemment, ardently  
 un argent, money, silver  
 (s')arrêter, stop, arrest  
 arriver, to arrive, happen  
 s'asseoir, to sit down  
 assis, sitting, seated  
 assister à, to be present at, attend

attendre, to wait, wait for, expect; s'— à, to expect  
 attirer, to attract, entice  
 un attrait, charm  
 aucun, no, none  
 augmenter, to increase  
 aujourd'hui, today  
 aussitôt, immediately; — que, as soon as  
 autour (de), around, about  
 autre, other  
 autrefois, formerly  
 une autruche, ostrich  
 avant, before  
 un avenir, future  
 aveugle, blind  
 un avion, airplane  
 avoir, have; to be the matter  
 avouer, to confess, admit

## B

la bague, ring  
 le banc, bench, pew  
 la barbe, beard  
 le barreau, bar  
 bas, low  
 le bateau, boat  
 bâtir, to build  
 battre, to beat; se —, to fight  
 beau, beautiful, handsome, fine  
 le beau-frère, brother-in-law  
 belle, beautiful, pretty  
 la belle-sœur, sister-in-law  
 le besoin, need; avoir — de, to need  
 le beurre, butter  
 bien, well, indeed, very; — des, many  
 bientôt, soon  
 le billet, bill, ticket  
 bleu, blue  
 boire, to drink

le bois, wood  
 le bonbon, candy (*one piece*)  
 la bonne, maid  
 le bord, edge; — de la mer, seashore  
 le boucle, curl  
 bouger, to move, budge  
 le boulanger, baker  
 la bourse, scholarship  
 la bouteille, bottle  
 le bras, arm  
 briser, to shatter, break  
 le bruit, noise  
 brûler, to burn  
 la brume, mist  
 brun, brown  
 brusquement, suddenly, harshly  
 le buisson, bush  
 le bureau, office, desk  
 le but, goal, aim

(se) cacher, to hide  
 le cadeau, present  
 se calmer, to quiet down  
 la campagne, country  
 la carrière, career

le cas, case; en tout —, at any rate in any case  
 la caserne, barracks  
 le casque, helmet  
 casser, to break

**causer**, to chat, talk; cause  
**céder**, to yield  
 la **cellule**, cell  
**cependant**, however, meanwhile  
 la **cerise**, cherry  
**cesser**, to cease  
 la **chaise**, chair  
 la **chambre**, room  
 la **chanson**, song  
**chanter**, to sing  
 le **chat**, cat  
**chaud**, warm, hot  
 la **chaussette**, sock  
 la **chaussure**, shoe  
 le **chemin**, path, way  
**cher**, dear, expensive  
**chercher**, to look for  
 le **cheval**, horse  
 les **cheveux**, hair  
**chez**, at the house of (iv)  
 le **chien**, dog  
 le **chiffre**, figure, number  
**choisir**, to choose  
 la **chose**, thing  
 le **cinéma**, movies  
 la **cinquantaîne**, about 50  
**clair**, clear, light  
 le **cœur**, heart  
 la **colère**, anger; **en** —, angry  
**combien**, how much, how many  
**comme**, as, how  
 le **commencement**, beginning  
**commencer**, to begin  
**comment**, how  
 la **commission**, errand  
**comprendre**, to understand  
**compter**, to count, expect  
 la **conférence**, lecture  
 la **confiance**, confidence  
 le **confident**, confidant  
  
 la **dame**, lady  
**davantage**, more, further  
 se **débarrasser de**, to get rid of  
 la **décision**, determination, decision  
**défendre**, to forbid  
 le **défi**, defiance  
**dehors**, outside  
**déjà**, already

se **confier** (à), to confide in  
**confondre**, to confuse  
 la **connaissance**, knowledge, acquaintance  
**connaître**, to know, understand  
**conquérir**, to conquer  
 le **conseil**, advice  
**conseiller**, to advise  
 le **conseiller**, judge, privy councilor  
**content**, pleased, happy  
**contre**, against; **par** —, on the other hand  
**convaincre**, to convince  
 le **convive**, guest  
**corriger**, to correct  
 le **costume**, suit  
 le **côté**, side; **du** — **de**, in the direction of; **à** — **de**, beside  
 (se) **coucher**, to go to bed, lie down  
**coudre**, to sew  
 la **couleur**, color  
 le **couloir**, corridor  
**couramment**, fluently  
 le **courant**, current; **au** — **de**, in the course of  
**courir**, to run  
 le **courrier**, mail  
 la **course**, errand, race  
**court**, short  
**cousait**, *inf.* **coudre**  
 la **couverture**, cover, blanket  
**couvrir**, to cover  
**craindre**, to fear  
 la **crainte**, fear  
 le **crayon**, pencil  
**crier**, to cry, shout  
 la **crise**, attack  
**croire**, believe  
**croiser**, to cross  
 la **cuisine**, kitchen  
  
 le **déjeuner**, lunch, breakfast  
**déjeuner**, to lunch, breakfast  
**demain**, tomorrow  
**demander**, to ask; **se** —, to wonder  
**demeurer**, to live, stay  
 la **demie**, half  
 la **dent**, tooth

la **dépêche**, telegram  
 se **dépêcher**, to hurry  
 la **dépense**, expenditure, expense  
 depuis, since, for  
**déraisonnable**, senseless, unreasonable  
**déranger**, to disturb  
**dernier**, last  
**derrière**, behind  
**descendre**, to come or go down  
**dès que**, as soon as  
**désobéir**, to disobey  
**désuni**, disunited  
**détruire**, to destroy  
**devant**, before, in front of  
**devenir**, to become  
**deviner**, to guess  
 le **devoir**, duty; **les —s**, homework  
**devoir**, must (x), owe  
**dire**, to say, tell; — **du mal**, to speak evil of; **vouloir —**, to mean

le **directeur**, manager, director  
**diriger**, to direct  
**disparaître**, to disappear  
**dissimulé**, hidden  
 le **domaine**, estate  
 les **domestiques**, servants  
 le **dommage**, damage; **c'est —**, it's too bad  
**donc**, then (*not translated when used for emphasis*)  
**donner**, to give  
**dormir**, to sleep  
 le **dos**, back  
 la **douane**, customs, custom-house  
 la **douleur**, sorrow, grief, pain  
**douter**, to doubt; **se — de**, to suspect  
**doux**, soft, gentle  
**droit**, straight  
 le **droit**, law  
**dur**, hard, harsh  
**durer**, to last

## E

une **eau**, water  
**s'échapper**, to escape  
**échouer (à)**, to fail (in)  
**éclater**, to break out, burst  
 une **école**, school  
**économe**, thrifty  
**écouter**, to listen (to)  
**s'écrier**, to exclaim  
 un **effet**, effect; **en —**, indeed, in fact  
**égal**, equal; **cela m'est —**, it's all the same to me  
 une **église**, church  
 un(e) **élève**, pupil  
**élever**, to raise, bring up  
 un **éloge**, praise  
**élu**, *p.p.* **élire**, elected  
**emmener**, to take (away)  
**s'emparer de**, to take hold of  
**empêcher**, to prevent  
**emporter**, to take (away)  
**emprunter**, to borrow  
**ému**, roused, nervous  
**encore**, again, yet, still  
 une **encre**, ink  
**s'endormir**, to fall asleep

un **endroit**, place  
 un(e) **enfant**, child  
**enfin**, at last  
**s'ennuyer**, to be bored  
**entendre**, to hear  
**entier**, whole, entire  
**entre**, between  
**entrer (dans)**, to enter  
 une **entrevue**, interview  
 une **envie**, desire; **avoir — (de)**, to feel like, want  
 les **environs (m.)**, vicinity  
**envoyer**, to send  
 une **épaule**, shoulder  
**éplucher**, to peel  
 une **époque**, time, epoch  
**épouser**, to marry  
**épuiser**, to exhaust  
**espagnol**, Spanish  
**espérer**, to hope  
 un **espoir**, hope  
 un **esprit**, mind, mentality  
**essayer**, to try  
**essoufflé**, breathless  
**établir**, to establish

un **état**, state, condition  
 un **été**, summer  
 un **étonnement**, surprise  
**étonner**, to surprise, astonish  
**étrange**, strange, odd  
 les **études** f., studies; **faire des —**, to study  
 un **étudiant**, student  
 un **évanouissement**, unconsciousness

(s')**éveiller**, to wake up, awaken, arouse  
**éviter**, to avoid  
 une **excuse**, apology  
**s'excuser**, to apologize  
 un **exercice**, exercise; (*military*) drill  
**exiger**, to require  
**expliquer**, to explain

**fâcher**, to make angry; **se —**, to get angry  
**facile**, easy  
 la **façon**, way, manner  
 la **faim**, hunger; **avoir —**, to be hungry  
**faire**, to do, make; — **une partie**, to have a game; — **visite**, pay a call; — **une promenade**, to take a walk; — **mal à**, to hurt; — **attention**, to pay attention, be careful; — **de la peine**, to grieve; — **le nécessaire**, to do the necessary thing; — **quelque pas**, to take a few steps  
**falloir**, must (x)  
**fatigué**, tired  
 le **fauteuil**, armchair  
 la **fenêtre**, window  
**fermer**, to shut  
 le **feu**, fire

**gagner**, to win, earn, gain, reach  
 le **gant**, glove  
**garder**, to keep  
 la **gare**, station  
 le **gâteau**, cake  
 les **gens**, people  
 le **geste**, gesture  
 la **glacière**, icebox  
 le **goût**, taste  
 la **gouvernante**, governess  
 le **gouvernement**, government

la **feuille**, leaf, sheet (of paper)  
 le **fiacre**, cab  
**fidèle**, faithful  
 la **figure**, face  
 la **filie**, daughter; **jeune —**, girl  
**finir**, to finish  
 la **fleur**, flower  
 la **foi**, faith  
 la **fois**, time  
 le **fonctionnaire**, official  
 le **fond**, bottom, depth  
 la **force**, strength, might  
**fort**, strong, vigorous  
 la **fourrure**, fur  
**franchir**, to cross  
 le **frère**, brother  
**froid**, cold  
 la **frontière**, frontier, border  
 la **fuite**, flight  
**fumer**, to smoke, reek

**gravement**, seriously  
 la **gravure**, picture  
 la **grille**, gate  
**gris**, gray  
**grommeler**, to grumble  
**gronder**, to scold  
**guère**: **ne . . .**, not much, not many, hardly, scarcely  
**guérir**, to get well  
 la **guerre**, war

## H

**s'habiller**, to get dressed  
 un **habit**, suit, clothes

**d'habitude**, usually  
**s'habituer (à)**, to get used (to)

se **hâter**, to hurry, hasten  
**haut**, high  
 une **heure**, hour; **de bonne** —, early  
**heureusement**, fortunately  
**heureux**, happy  
**hier**, yesterday

**ici**, here  
**ignorer**, not to know  
 un **imperméable**, raincoat  
**n'importe quoi**, anything  
**inaperçu**, unnoticed  
 un **incendie**, fire  
 un **industriel**, manufacturer  
**s'informer**, to inquire, find out

**jamais**, ever; **ne** ... —, never; **à tout** —, forever  
 la **jambe**, leg  
 le **jardin**, garden  
**jeter**, to throw  
 le **jeu**, game; **compagne de** —, play-mate  
**jeune**, young  
 la **joie**, joy  
 se **joindre**, to join

**laid**, ugly  
**laisser**, to let, leave; — **tomber**, to drop  
 le **lait**, milk  
 la **langue**, tongue, language  
 la **larme**, tear  
 se **laver**, to wash (oneself)  
**léger**, light  
 le **légume**, vegetable  
 le **lendemain**, next day; **le** — **de**, the day after  
**lent**, slow  
**lever**, to raise; **se** —, to get up  
 la **lèvre**, lip  
**libre**, free

une **histoire**, story, history; trouble  
 un **hiver**, winter  
 un **homme**, man  
 la **honte**, shame; **avoir** —, to be ashamed

un **ingénieur**, engineer  
**inquiet**, worried, anxious  
**inquiétant**, alarming, disturbing  
 (s')**inquiéter**, to worry  
 un **instant**, moment, instant  
 un **insuccès**, failure  
**s'intéresser à**, to be interested in  
**inutile**, useless

**joli**, pretty  
**jouer**, to play  
**jouir**, to enjoy  
 le **jour**, day  
 le **journal**, newspaper  
 la **journée**, day  
**juin**, June  
**jurer**, to swear  
**jusqu'à**, until

le **lieu**, place; **au** — **de**, instead of; **avoir** —, to take place  
**lire**, to read  
 le **lit**, bed  
 le **livre**, book  
 la **logeuse**, landlady  
 la **loi**, law  
**loin**, far, distant  
 le **lointain**, distance  
**longtemps**, a long time  
**lorsque**, when  
**louer**, to rent, hire, praise  
 le Louvre: le **musée du** —, the Louvre Museum in Paris  
 la **lueur**, light, gleam  
**lumineuse**, glowing

## M

le **magasin**, store  
 la **main**, hand  
**maintenant**, now  
 la **maison**, house  
**mal**, poorly  
 le **mal**, evil  
**malade**, ill; le —, the patient  
**malgré**, in spite of  
**malheureux**, unhappy  
 la **malle**, trunk  
**manquer**, to miss; — **de**, to lack  
 le **manteau**, coat  
 le **marché**, market  
**marcher**, to walk  
 le **matin**, la **matinée**, morning  
**méchant**, bad, wicked  
**mécontent**, displeased  
 le **médecin**, doctor, physician  
**meilleur**, better  
**même**, same, even  
**menacer**, to threaten  
**mener**, to lead, take (with one)  
**mentir** to lie  
**mépriser**, to despise, scorn

**naitre**, to be born  
**néanmoins**, nevertheless  
 la **nef**, nave  
**nettement**, clearly  
**neuf**, new  
 le **neveu**, nephew

**obéir**, to obey  
 une **occasion**, opportunity  
**occupé**, busy  
 un **œil**, eye  
 une **œuvre**, work  
**offrir**, to offer  
 une **ombre**, shade, darkness  
 un **ongle**, nail  
 un **orage**, storm  
**ordinaire**: **d'** —, generally, usually

le **pain**, bread  
 la **paix**, peace

**mettre**, to put; **se** — **à**, to begin, start  
**midi**, noon  
 le **milieu**, middle, environment  
 la **modiste**, milliner  
 le **moindre**, the least  
**moins**, less; **au** —, at least; **à** — **que**, unless  
 le **mois**, month  
 le **monde**, people, world  
**monter**, to go up, come up; get on  
 la **montre**, watch  
**montrer**, to show  
**se moquer de**, to make fun of  
 le **morceau**, piece  
**mordre**, to bite  
 le **mot**, word  
**mourir**, to die  
 la **mousse**, moss  
 le **mouvement**, motion  
 le **moyen**, means, way  
**muet**, speechless  
 le **musée**, museum

## N

**nier**, to deny  
 le **nom**, name  
**nommer**, to name, nominate  
**nouveau**, new; **de** —, again  
 la **nouvelle**, news  
 la **nuît**, night

un **ordonnance**, orderly  
 une **oreille**, ear  
**orgueilleux**, proud  
**oser**, to dare  
**ou**, or  
**où**, where, when  
**oublier**, to forget  
**ouvertement**, openly  
 un **ouvrage**, work  
**ouvrir**, to open

**pâler**, to pale  
 le **papier**, paper



le **paquet**, package  
**paraître**, to appear, seem  
 **paresseux**, lazy  
**parler**, to speak, talk  
**parmi**, among  
 la **parole**, word  
 la **part**, share; **de la — de**, on behalf of, from; **d'autre —**, on the other hand  
**partir**, to leave, set out  
**partout**, everywhere  
 le **pas**, step  
 le **passé**, past  
**passer**, to spend, pass; cross; **se —**, to happen; **se — de**, to do without  
 le **pays**, country  
 la **peine**, grief; **à —**, hardly, scarcely  
 se **pencher**, to lean over, bend over  
**pendant**, during; — **que**, while  
 la **pendule**, clock  
**pénétrer**, to enter  
 la **pensée**, thought  
 la **pension**, boarding school  
**perdre**, to lose; **se —**, to get lost  
 le **père**, father  
 la **personne**, person; **ne... —**, no one  
**peser**, to weigh  
 le **petit-fils**, grandson  
**peu (de)**, little, few  
 la **peur**, fear; **avoir —**, to be afraid  
**peut-être**, perhaps  
 la **pièce**, room; play  
 le **pied**, foot  
**pis**, worse  
**plaindre**, to pity; **se —**, to complain  
**plaire (à)**, to please  
**plein**, full  
**pleurer**, to weep  
**pleuvoir**, to rain  
 la **plume**, pen

**quand**, when; — **même**, all the same

un **quart**, quarter

**quelque chose**, something; **quelqu'un**, someone

la **plupart**, most  
**plusieurs**, several  
 la **pomme**, apple  
 la **porte**, door  
 le **porte-monnaie**, pocket-book  
**porter**, to carry, take; wear  
**poser**, to put down; — **une question**, to ask a question  
 la **poste**, post office; **le poste**, post  
**pourquoi**, why  
**poursuivre**, to pursue, follow  
**pourtant**, however, yet  
**pourvu que**, provided that  
**pousser**, to push, grow  
**poussiéreux**, dusty  
 le **pré**, meadow  
**prendre**, to take  
**près de**, near; **à peu près**, almost, nearly  
**présenter**, to introduce  
**presque**, almost  
**pressé**, urgent; **être —**, to be in a hurry  
**prêt**, ready  
**prétendre**, to claim, assert; insist  
**prêter**, to lend  
 la **preuve**, proof  
**prévenir**, to notify, warn  
**prévoir**, to foresee  
**prier**, to pray, request  
 le **prix**, prize, price  
**prochain**, next  
 le **produit**, product  
**profiter de**, to take advantage of  
**profond**, deep  
 le **projet**, plan  
 se **promener**, to walk  
 la **promesse**, promise  
**promettre**, to promise  
**propre**, clean; own  
**prudemment**, cautiously  
**puisque**, since  
**punir**, to punish

**quelquefois**, sometimes

**quelques**, a few; several

la **quinzaine**, fortnight

**quitter**, to leave

**quoique**, although

**raconter**, to relate, tell  
**la raison**, reason; **avoir** —, to be right  
**raisonnable**, reasonable  
**se rallier**, to become reconciled, "collaborate"  
**ramasser**, to pick up  
**ramener**, to bring back  
**rapporter**, to bring back, carry back  
**rater**, to miss  
**ratrapper**, to overtake  
**recevoir**, to receive  
**le récit**, tale, account  
**réciter**, to recite  
**la récompense**, reward  
**reconnaître**, to recognize, admit  
**redevenir**, to become again  
**réfléchir**, to reflect, ponder  
**le regard**, glance, look; eyes  
**regarder**, to look, watch  
**régler**, to settle  
**rejoindre**, to join, meet, overtake  
**remarquer**, to notice  
**rembourser**, to reimburse  
**remplacer**, to replace  
**rencontrer**, to meet  
**rendre**, to make, render, return;  
**se** —, to go; **se** — **compte de**, to realize  
**renier**, to renounce  
**le renseignement**, information

**le sable**, sand  
**le sac**, bag, handbag  
**sage**, good  
**saisir**, to seize, grab  
**le salon**, living room  
**saluer**, bow, greet  
**(le) samedi**, Saturday  
**sans** (que), without  
**la santé**, health  
**sauter**, to jump  
**savant**, learned  
**savoir**, to know  
**la scierie**, sawmill

**rentrer**, to come back, go or come home  
**reparaître**, to reappear  
**repartir**, to leave again  
**le repas**, meal  
**répondre**, to answer  
**la réponse**, answer  
**le repos**, rest  
**se reposer**, to rest  
**repousser**, to push back (away)  
**ressortir**, to go out again  
**rester**, to stay, remain  
**le retard**, delay; **en** —, late  
**retentir**, to resound  
**se retirer**, to withdraw  
**le retour**, return; **être de** —, to be back  
**retrouver**, to find, meet  
**se réunir**, to assemble  
**réussir**, to succeed  
**revenir**, to come back  
**rêver**, to dream  
**revoir**, to see again; **au** —, good-by  
**la revue**, parade, inspection  
**la robe**, dress  
**rôder**, to roam, prowl  
**le roman**, novel  
**le romancier**, novelist  
**rompre**, to break  
**rouler**, to roll, tumble  
**la rue**, street

**la selle**, saddle  
**seller**, to saddle  
**la semaine**, week  
**sembler**, to seem  
**le sentier**, path  
**se sentir**, to feel  
**la serviette**, napkin  
**se servir de**, to use  
**le seuil**, threshold  
**seul**, alone  
**seulement**, only  
**si**, if; (*neg.*) yes  
**le siècle**, century

**siffler**, to whistle  
**le sifflet**, whistle  
**la situation**, position, job  
**la sœur**, sister  
**la soif**, thirst; **avoir** —, to be thirsty  
**le soir**, evening  
**la soirée**, evening, evening party  
**soit . . . soit**, either . . . or  
**songer**, to think  
**la sortie**, exit  
**sortir**, to go out, leave  
**le sou**, 5 centimes, penny  
**souffrant**, ill  
**soffrir**, to suffer  
**souhaiter**, to wish  
**le soupçon**, suspicion, distrust

**le tableau**, picture; **le — noir**, black-board  
**la tache**, spot  
**le taillis**, thicket  
**la tante**, aunt  
**la tape**, tap  
**le tapis**, rug, carpet  
**tard**, late  
**tellement**, so, so much  
**le temps**, time, weather  
**le témoin**, witness  
**tendre**, to hold out  
**tenir**, to hold; — **à**, to be anxious to; **be fond of**  
**tenter**, to tempt  
**terminer**, to finish  
**la terre**, land  
**tomber**, to fall  
**le tonnerre**, thunder  
**le tort**, wrong; **avoir** —, to be wrong  
**tôt**, early, soon

**unique**, only

**les vacances**, vacation  
**vaillant**, brave, stout-hearted  
**vaincre**, to conquer, overcome  
**le vainqueur**, victor

**souple**, flexible, docile  
**sourire**, to smile  
**soutenir**, to support, uphold  
**le souvenir**, memory  
**se souvenir (de)**, to remember  
**souvent**, often  
**le stylo**, fountain pen  
**subir**, to undergo, submit to  
**subitement**, suddenly  
**la sueur**, sweat  
**suite: à la — (de)**, following  
**suivant**, following, according to  
**suivre**, to follow  
**suppliant**, beseeching  
**supportable**, bearable  
**surtout**, above all, especially

**touchant**, pathetic, touching  
**toujours**, always  
**se tourner**, to turn  
**tout**, all, quite; — **à l'heure**, presently, in a little while, a little while ago; — **le monde**, everybody; — **de suite**, immediately; — **à fait**, altogether, entirely; — **à coup**, suddenly  
**traduire**, to translate  
**le trajet**, journey  
**traquer**, to chase  
**le travail**, work  
**travailler**, to work  
**travers: à —**, through  
**traverser**, to cross  
**se tromper**, to be mistaken  
**trop**, too much, too many  
**le trottoir**, sidewalk  
**trouver**, to find, think; **se —**, to be  
**tuer**, to kill

**une usine**, factory, plant

**valoir mieux**, to be better  
**veiller**, to watch  
**vendre**, to sell  
**venir**, to come; — **de**, to have just

le **vent**, wind  
 la **vérité**, truth  
   **vers**, toward; (*time*) about  
   **verser**, to pour  
   **vert**, green  
 les **vêtements** *m.* clothes  
 la **vie**, life  
 le **vieillard**, old man  
   **vieux**, old  
   **vif**, lively, quick, keen  
 la **ville**, town, city  
 le **vin**, wine  
 le **visage**, face  
   **vite**, quickly  
   **vivre**, to live

les **yeux** *m.* eyes

**voici**, here is, here are  
**voilà**, there is, there are  
**voir**, to see  
 la **voiture**, carriage, car, automobile  
 la **voix**, voice  
 le **volontaire**, volunteer, enlisted man  
 la **volonté**, will, will power  
**vouloir**, to want, wish; — **dire**, to  
   mean; **en** — **à**, to be angry  
   with, have a grudge against; —  
   **bien**, to be willing, be kind  
   enough to  
**voyager**, to travel  
**vrai**, true  
 la **vue**, view; **en** —, in sight

## Y

|

# VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH-FRENCH

The following elementary items are omitted from this vocabulary: The articles; the personal and relative pronouns; the interrogative, demonstrative, and possessive pronouns; numerals; common negations; the commoner prepositions; and the words and expressions listed in the vocabularies following the readings in each lesson except when those words or expressions are used elsewhere.

Many of the commoner prepositions form part of an English verb or idiomatic expression. *Depend on*, for example, will be found under *depend*; *go up* under *go*; *by train* under *train*, and so on.

Words ending in *-ion* are not generally listed in this vocabulary if the spelling and meaning are identical in both languages. These words are feminine.

The following abbreviations and special symbols have these meanings:

*adj.* adjective  
*adv.* adverb  
*conj.* conjunction  
*f.* feminine  
*m.* masculine

*pl.* plural  
*prep.* preposition  
*qqch.* quelque chose  
*qqn.* quelqu'un  
— repetition of the entry

*intr.* The verb or expression cannot be followed by a direct object.

*trans.* The verb is followed by a direct object: to **marry**, se marier (*intr.*), épouser (*trans.*). *She married Farnow*: A direct object follows; use épouser.

\* following a verb indicates it is conjugated irregularly.

(**être**) following a verb indicates its compound tenses are conjugated with **être**.

A preposition without parentheses following either an English or French entry indicates that the preposition is part of the verb or ex-

pression: to look for, chercher; to be interested in, s'intéresser à; to give up, renoncer à.

If a preposition is enclosed in parentheses following an entry, it indicates that this preposition is required when any complement other than an infinitive follows: to obey, obéir (à).

If a preposition and a plus sign (à +) (de +) are enclosed in parentheses following an entry, it indicates the preposition required when an infinitive follows as complement.

Roman numerals refer to the lesson in which vocabulary distinctions between French and English usage are explained more extensively.

## A

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>to abandon, abandonner<br/> <b>able</b>: to be —, pouvoir *<br/> <b>about</b>, (<i>concerning</i>) au sujet de; —<br/> + <i>expressions of time</i>, vers; <b>to be</b><br/> — <b>to</b>, aller *; être sur le point de,<br/> être près de<br/> <b>absence</b>, une absence<br/> <b>absent</b>, absent<br/> <b>absolutely</b>, absolument<br/> <b>to accept</b>, accepter (de +)<br/> <b>to accompany</b>, accompagner<br/> <b>acquaintance</b>, une connaissance<br/> <b>to act</b>, agir<br/> <b>active</b>, actif (-ve)<br/> <b>activity</b>, des allées et venues<br/> <b>to add</b>, ajouter<br/> <b>address</b>, une adresse<br/> <b>to admire</b>, admirer<br/> <b>to admit</b>, avouer<br/> <b>advance</b>: in —, en avance<br/> <b>advantage</b>, un avantage; <b>to take</b> —<br/> of, profiter de<br/> <b>adventure</b>, une aventure<br/> <b>advice</b>, le conseil<br/> <b>to advise</b>, conseiller (à) (de +)<br/> <b>afraid</b>: to be —, avoir peur (de +)<br/> <b>Africa</b>, l'Afrique f.<br/> <b>after</b>, après<br/> <b>afternoon</b>, un (or une) après-midi<br/> <b>afterwards</b>, ensuite<br/> <b>again</b>, encore; (<i>with certain verbs</i>)<br/> de nouveau. See under the verb.<br/> <b>against</b>, contre<br/> <b>age</b>, un âge</p> | <p><b>ago</b>, il y a<br/> <b>alarm</b>, une alarme<br/> <b>alarmed</b>, alarmé<br/> <b>all</b>, tout, -e, tous, toutes (xii)<br/> <b>to allow</b>, permettre * (de +)<br/> <b>ally</b>, un allié<br/> <b>almost</b>, presque<br/> <b>alone</b>, seul<br/> <b>along</b>, le long de; <b>to get</b> —, s'en-<br/> tendre<br/> <b>already</b>, déjà<br/> <b>Alsatian</b>, alsacien (-ne)<br/> <b>also</b>, aussi<br/> <b>although</b>, quoique, bien que<br/> <b>always</b>, toujours<br/> <b>ambitious</b>, ambitieux (-se)<br/> <b>American</b>, américain<br/> <b>among</b>, parmi; chez (iv)<br/> <b>anger</b>, la colère<br/> <b>angry</b>, fâché<br/> <b>animal</b>, un animal<br/> <b>to announce</b>, annoncer<br/> <b>answer</b>, la réponse<br/> <b>to answer</b>, répondre (viii)<br/> <b>anxious</b>: to be — <b>to</b>, tenir à<br/> <b>anyhow</b>! n'importe! n'importe com-<br/> ment<br/> <b>anywhere</b>, n'importe où; <b>not</b> —,<br/> nulle part<br/> <b>apartment</b>, un appartement<br/> <b>to apologize</b>, s'excuser<br/> <b>to appear</b>, apparaître *<br/> <b>apple</b>, la pomme<br/> <b>to approach</b>, s'approcher de</p> |
|---|--|

to **approve**, approuver  
**argument**, un argument  
**arm**, le bras  
to **arrive**, arriver (être)  
**as**, comme, pendant que; **as . . . as**,  
aussi . . . que; **as for**, quant à  
**aside**, à l'écart  
to **ask**, demander (de +); **to — for**,  
demander (VIII)  
**asleep**, endormi; **to fall —**, s'en-  
dormir \*

**back**, le dos; **to be —**, être de re-  
tour; — **and forth**, de long en  
large  
**bad**, mauvais  
**bag**, (*lady's bag*) le sac; (*travelling*  
*bag*) la valise  
**barracks**, la caserne  
to **be**, être; avoir (V, IX); faire \* (VII)  
to **beat**, battre \*  
**beautiful**, beau, (bel), belle  
**because**, parce que, car; — **of**, à  
cause de  
to **become**, devenir \* (être)  
**bed**, le lit; **to go to —**, se coucher  
**before**, (*time*) avant; (*location*)  
devant  
to **beg**, supplier  
to **begin**, commencer (à +); se met-  
tre \* à (*used only with an infinitive*)  
**beginning**, à partir de  
to **believe**, croire \*  
to **belong**, appartenir \*  
**bent over**, penché sur  
**best**, le meilleur (*adj.*); le mieux  
(*adv.*)  
**better**, meilleur (*adj.*); mieux (*adv.*)  
**to be —**, valoir \* mieux; (*health*)  
aller \* mieux  
**between**, entre  
**bird**, un oiseau

**cab**, le fiacre  
**cake**, le gâteau  
to **call**, appeler; — **on**, faire \* visite à

to **assemble**, se réunir; — **again**, se  
réunir de nouveau  
to **assure**, assurer  
to **astonish**, étonner (de +)  
to **attract**, attirer  
**automobile**, une (*or un*) automobile  
to **avoid**, éviter (de +)  
**awake**, éveillé  
to **awaken**, éveiller  
**away**, (*adj.*) éloigné. *See under the*  
*verb.*

## B

**birthday**, un anniversaire  
to **blame** (*for*), blâmer (de)  
**blind**, aveugle  
**blond**, blond  
**blue**, bleu  
**book**, le livre  
**border**, la frontière  
to **borrow**, emprunter  
**both of them**, tous les deux  
**bottom**, le fond  
to **bow**, saluer  
**box**, la boîte  
**boy**, le garçon  
**bread**, le pain  
to **break**, casser; — **out**, éclater  
**breakfast**, le petit déjeuner  
to **bring**, apporter, amener (VI); —  
**down**, descendre; — **up**, monter;  
— **up (a child)**, élever  
**brother**, le frère; — **in-law**, le beau-  
frère  
**brown**, brun  
to **brush**, brosser  
to **build**, construire, \* bâtir  
**business**, les affaires *f.*; **on —**,  
pour affaires  
**busy**, occupé; — (*doing*), en train  
de (faire)  
**but**, mais  
to **buy**, acheter  
**by**, par

**calm** (—ly), calme (—ment)  
**can**, pouvoir \* (VII)  
**candidacy**, la candidature

- capital**, la capitale  
**captain**, le capitaine  
**car**, la voiture  
**career**, la carrière  
**carefully**, soigneusement  
**carriage**, la voiture; **by** —, en voiture  
**to carry**, porter; — **out**, exécuter; — **up**, monter  
**case**, le cas; **in any** —, en tout cas  
**cause**, la cause  
**to cause**, faire \* + *infinitive*  
**to cease**, cesser (de +)  
**certainly**, certainement  
**chair**, la chaise  
**to change**, changer; — **clothes**, changer de costume  
**chapter**, le chapitre  
**charming**, charmant  
**chase**, la poursuite  
**chess**: **game of**, une partie d'échecs  
**child**, un (une) enfant  
**childhood**, une enfance  
**choice**, le choix  
**to choose**, choisir  
**church**, une église  
**circle**, le cercle  
**civilization**, la civilisation  
**clear** (-ly), clair (-ement)  
**client**, le client  
**clothes**, les vêtements *m.*  
**coat**, le manteau  
**coffee**, le café  
**coincidence**, la coïncidence  
**cold**, froid; **to be** —, avoir froid, faire froid  
**color**, la couleur  
**college**, une université  
**to come**, venir \* (être); (*night*) **tomber**; — **back**, revenir\*; — **home**, rentrer (à la maison); — **in**, entrer; — **into**, entrer dans; — **out**, sortir \* (de) (être)  
**comfortable**: **to be** —, être confortable, être bien (xi)  
**commercial**, commercial  
**company**, la compagnie  
**compatriot**, le (la) compatriote  
**to complete**, terminer  
**completely**, tout à fait, complètement  
**composed**: **to be** — **of**, se composer de  
**comrade**, le camarade  
**condition**, (*health*) un état  
**conduct**, la conduite  
**to confess**, avouer  
**confidant**, le confident  
**to confide** (in), se confier (à)  
**confidence**: **to have** — (in), avoir confiance (en)  
**conqueror**, le conquérant  
**consent**, le consentement  
**to consent**, consentir \* (à +)  
**to consist in**, consister à  
**contempt**, le mépris  
**to continue**, continuer (à +)  
**contrary**, le contraire; — **to**, contraire à, opposé à  
**to convert**, convertir  
**cooky**, le petit gâteau  
**to copy**, copier  
**could**: *see can and Lesson x, page 119*  
**to count**, compter  
**country**, le pays, (*rural district*) la campagne, la patrie  
**course**, le cours; **in the** — **of**, au cours de; **law** —**s**, études de droit *f.*  
**course**: **of** —, bien entendu  
**cousin**, le (la) cousin (-e)  
**to criticize**, critiquer  
**to cross**, traverser, passer  
**cruel**, cruel, (-le)  
**to cry**, (*weep*) pleurer; (*shout*) crier  
**curiosity**, la curiosité  
**customs officer**, le douanier  
**to cut**, couper



to **dance**, danser  
**dangerous**, dangereux (-se)  
to **dare**, oser  
**dark**, sombre; to **be** —, faire \* nuit (noir)  
**daughter**, la fille; —in-law, la belle-fille  
**day**, le jour, la journée (v)  
**deal**: a great —, beaucoup  
to **decide**, décider (de +)  
**decision**, la décision  
**deep**, profond  
to **defeat**, vaincre \*  
to **defend**, défendre  
**delighted**, enchanté, charmé  
to **denounce**, dénoncer  
**dentist**, le dentiste  
to **deny**, nier  
**departure**, le départ  
to **depend** (on), dépendre (de)  
to **desert**, désert  
**deserter**, le déserteur  
**desire**, le désir  
**desk**, le bureau; (*school*) le pupitre  
**dessert**, le dessert  
**detail**, le détail  
**devoted**, dévoué  
**dictionary**, le dictionnaire  
to **die**, mourir \* (être)  
**different**, différent  
to **dine**, dîner

**dining room**, la salle à manger  
**dinner**, le dîner  
**direction**: in his —, de son côté  
**director**, le directeur  
to **disappear**, disparaître \*  
**discord**, le désaccord, la discorde  
**discouraged**, découragé; to **become** —, se décourager  
to **discover**, découvrir \*  
**discrete**, discret (-ète)  
to **dismiss**, renvoyer \*  
to **dissuade**, dissuader  
**distance**, la distance; **from** a —, de loin  
to **distrust**, se méfier (de)  
to **disturb**, déranger  
**divided**, divisé  
to **do**, faire \*; to — **harm** to, faire du mal à, nuire \* (à)  
**doctor**, le docteur; (*physician*) le médecin  
**door**, la porte  
**doubt**, le doute  
to **doubt**, douter  
**doubtful**, douteux  
**dress**, la robe  
to **dress**, s'habiller  
**drill**, un exercice  
to **drink**, boire \*  
**during**, pendant  
**duty**, le devoir

## E

**early**, en avance, tôt, de bonne heure (11)  
**easily**, facilement  
**easy**, facile  
to **eat**, manger  
**effort**, un effort  
**elderly**, âgé  
**elegant**, élégant  
**else**, d'ailleurs  
**embarrassed**, embarrassé  
**embarrassing**, embarrassant  
to **end** by, finir par  
**enemy**, un ennemi  
to **engage**, retenir \*

**enough**, assez (de)  
to **enter**, entrer (dans), (être)  
**equal**, égal  
**errand**, la course  
**error**, une erreur  
to **escape**, s'échapper  
**especially**, surtout  
**even**, même; — **more**, encore plus  
**evening**, le soir, la soirée (v)  
**event**, un événement  
**ever**, jamais; **for** —, pour jamais  
**every**, chaque, tout; — **day**, tous les jours (XII)  
**everybody**, tout le monde

**everyone**, tout le monde, tous (xii)  
**everything**, tout (xii)  
**everywhere**, partout  
**examination**, un examen  
**example**, un exemple  
**except**, sauf  
**exercise**, un exercice  
**exhausted**, épuisé  
**exit**, la sortie

to **expect**, s'attendre à, compter, avoir  
 l'intention de (vii)  
**expensive**, cher (-ère)  
**experience**, une expérience  
 to **explain**, expliquer  
**explanation**: to have an —, s'ex-  
 pliquer  
 to **express**, exprimer  
**eye**, un œil, *plur.* les yeux

## F

**face**, le visage  
 to **fall**, tomber (être); — **asleep**, s'en-  
 dormir \*  
 to **fail** (in), échouer (à)  
**faith**, la foi  
**faithful**, fidèle  
**family**, la famille  
**far**, loin; **as — as**, jusqu'à  
**farm**, la ferme  
**fast**, vite (*adv.*), rapide (*adj.*)  
**father**, le père; — **in-law**, le beau-  
 père  
**fatherland**, la patrie  
**fault**, la faute  
 to **fear**, craindre \* (de +)  
 to **feel**, se sentir \*; — **like**, avoir envie  
 de; to — **resentful towards**, en  
 vouloir \* à  
**feeling**, le sentiment  
**few**, peu; **a —**, quelques, quelques-  
 uns (iv)  
**finally**, enfin, finalement; finir par  
 + *infinitive*  
 to **find**, trouver  
**fine**, beau, (bel), (belle)  
 to **finish**, finir (de +)  
**first**, premier; d'abord (xiii)  
 to **flee**, fuir \*  
**flight**, la fuite  
**flower**, la fleur

**fog**, la brume  
 to **follow**, suivre \*  
**foolish**, bête  
**foot**, le pied; **on —**, à pied  
**for** (i) (*destination, aim, intent*)  
 pour; (*time*) pendant, depuis, il  
 y a, pour; (*because*) car  
 to **forbid**, défendre (de +) (viii)  
 to **force**, forcer (de +)  
**forest**, la forêt  
 to **forget**, oublier (de +); — **one's**  
**prejudices**, revenir \* (être) de ses  
 préventions  
 to **forgive**, pardonner (de +) (viii)  
**former**, ancien  
**formerly**, autrefois  
**fountain pen**, le stylo  
**France**, la France  
**frank**, franc (-he)  
**frankly**, franchement  
**free** (-ly), libre (-ment)  
**friend**, un(e) ami(e)  
**friendship**, une amitié  
**from** (iii)  
**front**: **in — of**, devant  
**frontier**, la frontière  
**fur**, la fourrure; — **coat**, le manteau  
 de fourrure  
**future**, un avenir

## G

**gaily**, gaiement (*galement*)  
 to **galop away**, s'éloigner au galop  
**garden**, le jardin  
**gate**, la grille  
**gay**, gai  
**general**, le général

**generous**, généreux (-se)  
**gentleman**, le monsieur  
**geometry**, la géométrie  
**German**, allemand  
 to **Germanize**, germaniser  
**Germany**, l'Allemagne f.

to **get**: — **angry**, se fâcher; — **along**, s'entendre; — **into**, monter dans; — **lost**, se perdre; — **up**, se lever; — **rid (of)**, se débarrasser, (de); — **worried**, s'inquiéter (de +)  
**girl**, (*daughter*) la fille, (*young person*) la jeune fille  
to **give**, donner; — **up**, renoncer à  
**glad**, content  
**glass**, le verre  
**gleam**, la lueur  
**glove**, le gant  
to **go** (iv), aller \*; — **away**, s'en aller; — **out**, sortir \*; (*to leave*) partir \*; — **the wrong way**, se tromper de chemin; **be —ing on**, se passer  
**gold**, l'or (*m.*)

**hair**, les cheveux (*m.*)  
**half**, demi; — **an hour**, une demi-heure; **the —**, la demie; **the — of**, la moitié de  
**hand**, la main; **on the other —**, par contre  
to **happen**, arriver (être), se passer (vii)  
**happy**, heureux (-se)  
**hard**, dur  
**hardly**, à peine, ne . . . guère (iii)  
**harm**, le mal  
to **harm**, nuire \* (à), faire \* du mal à  
**haste**, la hâte  
**hastily**, à la hâte  
**hat**, le chapeau  
to **hate**, haïr, \* détester  
**hatred**, la haine  
to **have**, avoir; — **to**, falloir, \* devoir \* (x)  
**head**, la tête; **to have a —ache**, avoir mal à la tête  
to **hear**, entendre; entendre dire (parler) (*see Lesson xv, page 187*)  
**heart**, le cœur, **at —**, de cœur  
**help**, une aide  
to **help**, aider (à +)

**icebox**, la glacière  
**idea**, une idée  
**ill**, malade

**golf**, le golf  
**good**, bon (-ne)  
**good day**, — **morning**, — **afternoon**, bonjour  
**good-by**, (*see you again*) au revoir; (*forever*) adieu  
**government**, le gouvernement  
**grandfather**, le grand-père  
**grandson**, le petit-fils  
**grateful**, reconnaissant  
to **greet**, saluer, dire bonjour  
to **grow worse**, s'aggraver  
**grudge**: **to have a — against**, en vouloir \* à  
**guard**: **mobile —**, le gendarme  
to **guess**, deviner  
**guest**, un invité

## H

**here**, ici; — **is**, voici (ix)  
to **hesitate**, hésiter (à +)  
**history**, une histoire  
to **hold**, tenir \* (être); — **back**, retenir  
**home**, chez (iv); **return or come back —** (vi)  
**homework**, les devoirs (*m.*)  
**honesty**, une honnêteté  
**honor**, un honneur  
**hope**, un espoir  
to **hope**, espérer  
**horse**, le cheval  
**hour**, une heure  
**house**, la maison; **to (at) the — of**, chez (iv)  
**how**, comment; **how . . . !** comme, que; — **long**, combien de temps (i); — **much**, **many**, combien (de) (iv); — **old . . .**, quel âge . . . (v)  
**however**, cependant; — + *adj.*, si + *adj.* + que  
**hungry**: **to be —**, avoir faim  
to **hurt**, faire \* mal à  
**husband**, le mari

## I

to **imagine**, s'imaginer  
**immediately**, tout de suite;  
**after**, aussitôt après

**impatiently**, avec impatience  
 to **implore**, implorer (de +)  
**important**, important  
**impossible**, impossible  
**in**, (III, XIII)  
**incident**, un incident  
 to **increase**, augmenter  
**independent**, indépendant  
**inevitable**, inévitable  
 to **inform**, prévenir \*, faire part de  
**ink**, l'encre *f.*  
**inspection**, la revue

to **join**, rejoindre \*  
 to **jump**, sauter  
**just**, juste; — **as**, au moment où;

to **keep**, garder; (*detain*) retenir \*  
**key**, la clef  
**kind**, la sorte

to **lack**, manquer de  
**lady**, la dame  
**lamp**, la lampe  
**land**, la terre  
**landlady**, la logeuse  
**large**, grand  
**last**, *adj.* dernier; **at** —, enfin  
 to **last**, durer  
**late**, tard, en retard (II)  
**latter**: **the** —, celui-ci  
**law courses**, études de droit *f.*  
**lawyer**, un avocat  
 to **learn**, apprendre \*  
 to **leave**, laisser, partir, \* quitter (IV)  
**left**, gauche  
**left**: to **have** —, **be** —, rester,  
*impers.* (XIII)  
 to **lend**, prêter  
**less**, moins (IV)  
**lesson**, la leçon  
 to **let**, (*allow*) laisser (*Lesson* I, page 4)  
**letter**, la lettre  
**library**, la bibliothèque  
 to **lie**, mentir \*

**instead of**, au lieu de  
 to **insure**, assurer (de)  
**intelligent**, intelligent  
 to **intend**, avoir l'intention (de +)  
**interest**, un intérêt  
 to **interest**, intéresser  
**interested**: to **be** — **in**, s'intéresser à  
**interesting**, intéressant  
 to **interfere**, se mêler de  
**interview**, une entrevue  
 to **introduce**, présenter  
 to **invite**, inviter (à +)

## J

— **the same**, quand même; to  
**have** —, venir \* de

## K

**kind**, bon, -ne; aimable  
 to **know**, savoir, \* connaître \* (VII)

## L

**life**, la vie; to **live** a —, mener une vie  
**like**, comme  
 to **like**, aimer (à +), vouloir, \* désirer (X)  
**line**, la ligne  
**lip**, la lèvre  
 to **listen** (to), écouter  
**little**, petit (*adj.*); peu (*adv.*); **a** —,  
 un peu (IV)  
 to **live**, vivre \*; (*inhabit*) demeurer,  
 habiter; — **a life**, mener une vie  
**living room**, le salon  
**lodging**, le logement  
**long**, (*distance*) long (*adj.*); (*time*)  
 longtemps, (*adv.*); **a** — **time**,  
 longtemps  
 to **long to**, avoir envie de  
**longer**: **no** —, ne . . . plus, ne pas  
 . . . plus longtemps (III)  
 to **look at**, regarder; — **for**, chercher;  
 — **like**, ressembler à, (*seem*)  
 avoir l'air (de +) (IX); — **out** (**the**  
**window**), regarder par (la fenêtre)  
 to **lose**, perdre

**lost: to get** —, se perdre  
**lot: a** —, beaucoup  
**love**, un amour; **to be in with**,  
 être amoureux de  
**to love**, aimer (à +)

**loyal**, loyal  
**luck**, la chance  
**lunch, luncheon**, le déjeuner; **to have** —, déjeuner  
**to lunch**, déjeuner

## M

**magistrate**, le magistrat  
**magistrature**, la magistrature  
**maid**, la bonne  
**mail**, le courrier  
**to make**, faire \*  
**man**, un homme  
**manufacturer**, un industriel  
**many**, beaucoup; **as** — **as**, autant  
 — que; **so** —, tant (de) (iv)  
**mark**, la marque  
**marriage**, le mariage  
**to marry**, se marier (*intr.*); épouser,  
 (*trans.*)  
**master**, le maître; **station** —, le chef  
 de gare  
**matter: family** —, affaire de famille  
**to matter**, importer, *impers.*; **to be the** — (ix)  
**may**, pouvoir \* (*Lesson XI, page 133*)  
**meal**, le repas  
**to mean**, vouloir \* dire  
**meaning**, le sens  
**meanwhile**, en attendant  
**meat**, la viande  
**to meddle in**, se mêler de  
**to meet**, rencontrer, retrouver, faire \*  
 la connaissance de (xi)

**member**, le membre  
**memory**, le souvenir  
**to mention**, prononcer  
**middle**, le milieu  
**might: with all his** —, de toutes ses  
 forces  
**military**, militaire  
**mind**, un esprit  
**miserable**, misérable  
**to miss**, manquer, manquer à (xi)  
**mistake**, la faute, une erreur  
**mobile guard**, le gendarme  
**modern**, moderne  
**moment**, le moment  
**Monday**, lundi *m.*  
**money**, l'argent *m.*  
**month**, le mois  
**monument**, le monument  
**morning**, le matin, la matinée (v)  
**most**, le plus, *adv.*; la plupart de,  
*prep.*  
**mother**, la mère  
**to move away**, s'en aller \*, s'éloigner  
**movies**, le cinéma  
**much**, beaucoup; **as** — **as**, autant  
 — que (iv)  
**museum**, le musée  
**must**, falloir, \* devoir \* (x)

## N

**nail: finger** —, un ongle  
**name**, le nom  
**near** (-ly), près de  
**to need**, avoir besoin (de)  
**nephew**, le neveu  
**nevertheless**, néanmoins  
**new**, nouveau, neuf (v)  
**news**, (*one item*) la nouvelle; (*several items*) les nouvelles  
**newspaper**, le journal  
**next**, prochain  
**night**, la nuit; — **fall**, la tombée de

la nuit; **last** —, hier soir, la nuit  
 dernière (ii)  
**noise**, le bruit  
**noisy**, bruyant  
**noon**, midi  
**to note**, remarquer  
**notebook**, le cahier  
**to notice** (*see*), apercevoir \*; (*to become aware of*) s'apercevoir (de)  
**noticed: to be** —, être remarqué  
**to notify**, avertir, prévenir \*  
**novel**, le roman

to **obey**, obéir (à)  
**obliged**: **to be** —, être obligé (de +)  
**obstacle**, un obstacle  
**o'clock** (v), heure *f.*  
**October**, octobre  
**of**, de; (*material*) de, en (XIII)  
**offer**, une offre  
to **offer**, offrir \* (de +)  
**office**, le bureau  
**officer**, un officier  
**official**, le fonctionnaire  
**often**, souvent  
**old**, vieux, (vieil), vieille; **to be** —, (x)  
**once**, une fois  
**only**, ne... que, seulement, seul (III); **not** —... **but also**, non seulement..., mais encore

**to open**, ouvrir \*; — **again**, rouvrir; —  
**for someone**, ouvrir à quelqu'un  
**opinion**, une opinion; **in my** —, à mon avis  
**opportunity**, une occasion  
**to oppose**, s'opposer à  
**order**, un ordre; **in** — **to**, afin de, pour  
**to order**, ordonner (de +)  
**other**, autre  
**otherwise**, autrement  
**ought**, falloir, \* devoir \* (x)  
**outside**, dehors  
**over**, sur  
**overcoat**, le pardessus  
**owe**, devoir \* (x)  
**own**, propre

## P

to **pack** (*a suitcase*), faire \* (une valise)  
to **paint**, peindre \*  
**pale**, pâle  
**paper**, le papier  
**parent**, le parent  
**park**, le parc  
**part**, le rôle; — (*of a whole*), la partie  
**party** (*evening*), la soirée  
to **pass**, passer; — **through**, franchir  
**past**, le passé  
**path**, le sentier, le chemin  
**patience**, la patience  
**patriot**, le (la) patriote  
to **pay** (*for*), payer (VIII); **pay attention**, faire \* attention; — **a visit**, faire visite à  
**pen**, la plume; **fountain** —, le stylo  
**people**, les gens (*masc.*, *but with a preceding adj.*, *usually fem.*); (*gathering of people*) le monde; (*people as a nation*) le peuple; (*after numbers*) les personnes  
to **perceive**, apercevoir \*  
**perfect**, parfait  
**perhaps**, peut-être  
to **permit**, permettre \* (de +)  
to **persist**, persister (à +)  
**person**, la personne

**personal** (-ly), personnel (-lement)  
to **persuade**, persuader (à)  
to **pick**, cueillir  
**place** (*site*) un endroit; (*position*) la place; **to take** —, avoir lieu  
**plan**, le plan, le projet  
to **plant**, planter  
**plate**, une assiette  
**play** (*theatrical*), la pièce  
to **play**, jouer à or de (XI)  
**pleasant**, agréable  
to **please**, plaire (à)  
**pleased**, content  
**political**, politique  
**politics**, la politique  
**poor**, pauvre  
**possible**, possible  
**post office**, la poste or le bureau de poste  
to **postpone**, retarder, remettre \*, ajourner  
to **pour**, verser  
**practical**, pratique  
to **prefer**, aimer mieux, préférer  
**prejudices**: **to forget one's** —, revenir \* de ses préventions (être)  
**present**, le cadeau  
**present** (*adj.*) présent; **to be** — **at**, assister à

**pretty**, joli  
 to **prevent**, empêcher (de +)  
 to **proceed**, continuer  
 to **promise**, promettre \* (de +)  
**proud**, fier, (-ère)  
 to **prove**, prouver  
**provided that**, pourvu que  
**province**, la province

**quality**, la qualité  
**quarter**, le quart

to **rain**, pleuvoir \*  
 to **raise**, lever  
**rapid** (-ly), rapide (-ment)  
**rather**, assez, plutôt. *See also prefer*  
 to **reach**, gagner, atteindre \*  
 to **read**, lire \*  
 to **realize**, se rendre \* compte (de)  
**reason**, la raison  
 to **receive**, recevoir, \* accueillir \*  
 to **recite**, réciter  
 to **recognize**, reconnaître \*  
 to **recommend**, recommander  
**reconciled: to become** —, se rallier  
**refuge**, le refuge  
 to **refuse**, refuser (de +)  
**regiment**, le régiment  
 to **relate**, raconter  
**relief**, le soulagement  
 to **remain**, rester (être) (XIII)  
**remark**, la remarque  
 to **remember**, se souvenir \* (de); se rappeler (*trans.*, *seldom used with people*)  
**renegade**, le renégat  
 to **repair**, réparer  
 to **repeat**, répéter  
 to **replace**, remplacer

**sad** (-ly), triste (-ment)  
**saddle**, la selle  
 to **saddle**, seller  
**same**, même; **just the** —, quand même

**Prussian**, prussien (-ne)  
**public**, le publique  
 to **publish**, publier  
 to **punish**, punir  
 to **push**, pousser; — **aside**, repousser  
 to **put**, mettre \*; — **down**, poser; — **off**, remettre \*

## Q

**quiet**, tranquille

## R

to **reply**, répondre  
 to **require**, exiger; falloir \* (x)  
**resentful: to feel** — **towards**, en vouloir \* à  
 to **resist**, résister (à)  
**resistance**, la résistance  
**respectful**, respectueux (-se)  
**rest**, le reste  
 to **rest**, se reposer  
**result**, le résultat  
 to **resume**, se remettre \* à  
 to **return**, revenir, \* retourner, rentrer, (vi) (être)  
**return**, le retour  
 to **reward**, récompenser  
**rich**, riche  
 to **rid: to get** — **of**, se débarrasser de  
**right**, juste; **to be** —, avoir raison;  
 — **away**, tout de suite  
 to **ring out**, s'échaler  
 to **rise**, se lever  
**road**, la route  
 to **roll**, rouler  
**room**, la chambre; **living** —, le salon  
 to **run**, courir \*; — **to**, courir vers  
 to **rush**, se précipiter; — **to**, se précipiter vers

## S

to **satisfy**, satisfaire \*; **satisfied** (with), content (de)  
**Saturday**, samedi  
 to **say**, dire \* (de +); **that is to** —, c'est-à-dire

**scandal**, le scandale  
**scarcely**, à peine, ne . . . guère (III)  
**school**, une école  
 to **scold**, gronder  
**second**, second  
**secret**, le secret; *adj.* secret, -ète  
 to **see**, voir \*; connaître \*; to — **again**,  
 revoir  
 to **seek**, chercher, rechercher  
 to **seem**, paraître, \* sembler, avoir l'air  
 (IX)  
**seldom**, rarement  
 to **sell**, vendre  
 to **send**, envoyer \*; — **for**, envoyer  
 chercher  
**sensible**, raisonnable  
**sentimental**, sentimental  
**sergeant**, le sergent  
**serious**, sérieux (-se)  
**servant**, le (la) domestique  
 to **serve**, servir  
**service**, le service  
**set**, fixé  
 to **set out**, se mettre \* en route  
 to **settle**, régler  
**several**, plusieurs, quelques  
**severely**, sévèrement  
 to **sew**, coudre \*  
 to **share**, partager  
 to **shine**, briller  
**shoe**, la chaussure  
**shot**: **gun** —, un coup de feu  
**should**, *see Lesson x, page 119*  
 to **shout**, crier  
 to **show**, montrer  
**side**, le côté; **on the other** —, de  
 l'autre côté; to **take** —s with,  
 prendre \* le parti de  
**sigh**, le soupir  
**silence**, le silence  
**silently**, silencieusement  
**silk**, la soie  
**silver**, l'argent (*m.*)  
**simply**, simplement  
**since**, (*because*) puisque; (*time*) de-  
 puis, pendant, pour (I)  
 to **sing**, chanter  
**single**, seul  
**sister**, la sœur  
 to **sit** (**down**), s'asseoir \* (XI)

**skillful**, habile  
**sky**, le ciel  
**slow** (-ly), lent (-ement)  
**small**, petit  
**smile**, le sourire  
 to **smile**, sourire \*  
 to **snow**, neiger  
**so**, si (*adv.*); (*and so, thus*) aussi;  
 (*it*) le; — **that**, de sorte que  
**soldier**, le soldat  
**somebody**, quelqu'un  
**someone**, quelqu'un  
**something**, quelque chose  
**sometimes**, quelquefois  
**son**, le fils  
**song**, la chanson  
**soon**, bientôt; **as** — **as**, dès que,  
 aussitôt que  
**sorry**: to **be** —, regretter (de +)  
**south**, sud  
**souvenir**, le souvenir  
**Spanish**, espagnol  
 to **speak**, parler; — **plainly**, s'expli-  
 quer  
 to **spend**, dépenser, passer (II)  
**spite**: in — of, malgré  
**spoon**, la cuillère  
**spring**, le printemps  
**stairs**, un escalier  
**stamp**, un timbre or un timbre-poste  
 to **stand**, se lever, se tenir \* debout,  
 rester debout (XI)  
**standing**, debout  
 to **start**, commencer (à +), se mettre \*  
 à (*used only when followed by an*  
*infinitive*)  
**station**, la gare; — **master**, le chef  
 de gare  
**stay**, le séjour  
 to **stay**, rester (être)  
**still**, (*adj.*) tranquille, (*adv.*) encore  
**stocking**, le bas  
 to **stop**, arrêter, s'arrêter (de +) (VI)  
**storm**, un orage; **there is a** —, il  
 fait de l'orage  
**story**, une histoire  
**strange**, étrange  
**street**, la rue  
**stroke**, le coup  
**student**, un étudiant



to **study**, étudier  
**stupid**, stupide  
**subject**, le sujet  
to **succeed** (in), réussir (à +)  
**success**, le succès  
**such**, tel, si (XIII)  
**suddenly**, tout à coup, soudain  
to **suffer**, souffrir \* (de +)  
**suit**, un costume

**suitcase**, la valise  
**supper**, le souper  
to **suppose**, supposer  
**sure**, sûr  
**surprise**, la surprise  
to **surprise**, surprendre \*  
**surprising**, étonnant  
to **suspect**, se douter (de)  
**suspicion**, le soupçon

## T

**table**, la table  
**tailor**, le tailleur  
to **take**, prendre \*; mener, emmener;  
porter, emporter (vi); falloir \*  
(x); — **advantage of**, profiter de;  
— **place**, se passer, avoir lieu; —  
**sides with**, prendre le parti de;  
— **a trip**, faire \* un voyage; — **a**  
**walk**, faire une promenade  
to **talk**, causer; — **about**, causer de;  
— **over**, discuter  
**tavern**, la taverne  
**taxi**, le taxi  
**tea**, le thé  
**team**, une équipe  
**telephone**, le téléphone  
to **telephone**, téléphoner (de +)  
to **tell**, dire \* (de +), raconter (VII)  
**tennis**, le tennis  
**term**, le semestre  
**thank you**, merci  
**then** (*therefore*), alors; (*next*) puis  
**there**, là, y (*Lesson VIII*); — **is**,  
voilà, il y a (IX)  
**therefore**, par conséquent, donc  
**thicket**, le taillis  
**thing**, la chose  
**think**, penser, croire \* (I); penser de  
or à (VIII); — **over**, réfléchir (à)  
**thirst**, la soif; **to be thirsty**, avoir soif  
**thought**: **as** —, comme si  
**thought**, la pensée  
**through**, à travers

**thus**, ainsi  
**time**, le temps, la fois, l'heure (II,  
v); **some** —, quelque temps;  
**have a good** —, s'amuser  
**tired**, fatigué  
to (III, XIII), (*in order to*), pour (*see*  
*Lesson XV*); (*towards*) vers; (*as*  
*far as, up to*) jusqu'à  
**toast**, le toast  
**today**, aujourd'hui  
**tomorrow**, demain  
**tonight**, ce soir, cette nuit (II)  
**too**, trop; **too** + *noun*, trop de;  
(*also*) aussi  
**towards**, vers  
**town**, la ville  
**toy**, le jouet  
**trade**, le métier  
**train**, le train  
to **transact business**, faire \* des affaires  
to **travel**, voyager  
**tree**, un arbre  
to **tremble**, trembler  
**trip**, le voyage; **to take a** —, faire \*  
un voyage  
**troubled**, troublé  
**true**, vrai  
**trunk**, la malle  
to **trust**, avoir confiance en  
**truth**, la vérité  
to **try**, essayer (de +), tâcher (de +)  
to **turn**, tourner (*trans.*), se tourner  
(*intrans.*)

## U

**umbrella**, le parapluie  
**uncle**, un oncle  
to **understand**, comprendre \*

**unfortunate** malheureux (—se)  
**unfortunately**, malheureusement  
**uniform**, un uniforme

**United States**, les États-Unis *m.*

**unless**, à moins que

**unnoticed**, inaperçu

**until**, jusqu'à; (*v*); — **now**, jusqu'

ici; — **then**, jusque là; **not** —,

pas avant (*v*)

**unusual**, inaccoutumé

**up**: — **to**, jusqu'à

**to use**, se servir \* de

**useless**, inutile

**usual**, (*adj.*) accoutumé; (*used adverbially*) d'habitude

## V

**vague**, vague

**valiant**, vaillant

**valley**, la vallée

**velvet**, le velours

**vicinity**, le voisinage

**village**, le village

**violent**, violent

**visit**, la visite

**voice**, la voix

**volunteer**, le volontaire

## W

**to wait** (*for*), attendre

**to wake**, se réveiller; — + *dir. obj.*, réveiller

**walk**, la promenade; **take a** —, faire \* une promenade

**to walk**, marcher; — **toward**, se diriger vers

**to want**, vouloir \*

**war**, la guerre

**warm**, chaud; **to be** —, avoir chaud, faire \* chaud

**to warn**, prévenir \*

**watch**, la montre

**to watch**, (*look*) regarder; **to keep** —, veiller

**water**, l'eau *f.*

**way**, le chemin; **by the** —, à propos;

**on the** —, en chemin; **in this** —,

de cette manière; **to go the wrong**

—, se tromper de chemin

**to wear**, porter

**weather**, le temps (*vii*)

**week**, la semaine

**welcome**, un accueil

**well**, bien; **to be** —, aller \* bien; **well!** Eh bien!

**whatever**, quoi que, quel que

**when**, quand; où (*in a relative clause*)

**where**, où

**wherever**, partout où

**whether**, si

**while**, pendant que; (*whereas*) tandis que

**white**, blanc (—*he*)

**whoever**, qui que

**whole**: **the** —, tout le, toute la (*xii*)

**why**, pourquoi

**wife**, la femme

**wind**, le vent; **to be windy**, faire \* du vent

**window**, la fenêtre

**wine**, le vin

**winter**, un hiver

**to wish**, désirer, souhaiter

**with**, avec, de, à (*iv*)

**without**, sans (*prep.*), sans que (*conj.*)

**to wonder**, se demander

**wood**, le bois

**word**, le mot

**work**, le travail, un ouvrage

**to work**, travailler

**worried**, inquiet, (—*ête*)

**to worry**, inquiéter, s'inquiéter

**would**, *see Lesson X, page 119*

**to wound**, blesser

**to write**, écrire \* (de +)

**wrong**, le tort; **to be** —, avoir tort

## Y

**year**, un an, une année (*v*)

**yesterday**, hier

**yet**, pourtant; **not** . . . , pas encore

**to yield**, céder

**young**, jeune



# INDEX

If several page references follow an entry, the figures in boldfaced type indicate those pages which present a full discussion of an essential.

- à** (*location*), 160-61; meaning *with*, 45; plus disjunctive pronoun, 96; with geographical names, 31; with nouns used adjectively, 33
- Address, articles in, 25
- Adjectives, agreement of, 40-41; comparison of, 53-54; feminine of, 39-40; followed by **à** or **de** + infinitive, 183-84; meanings according to position, 51; plural of, 40; position of, 49-52, 54*n*, 144; present participles used as, 196; demonstrative, 127-28; interrogative, 13; possessive, 141-45. *See also* Parts of the body.
- Adverbs: comparison of, 53-54; position of, 52-53; interrogative, 12-13; of quantity, 42-43; *y*, 93
- afin de**: or **afin que**, 134; or **pour**, 182
- Age, expressions of, 57
- Agreement, of adjectives, 40-41; of past participle, 67-68, 199*n*; of possessive adjectives, 141, 144-45
- Any*. *See* Partitive.
- à peine**, inversion with, 16; or **ne guère**, 30
- après**, with past infinitive, 69
- Article, 24-27; and geographical names, 25; and parts of the body, 63, 142-45; and titles, 26; omission of, 26-27, 28, 31-32, 36, 38; used in forming superlative, 54
- attendre**, **s'attendre à**, 86; **s'attendre à ce que**, 87, 170-71
- aussi**, 16
- Auxiliary, in compound tenses, 65, 72; in negative constructions, 27. *See also* **devoir**, **falloir** and other modal auxiliaries.
- avant** and **avant que**, 134
- avec**, 45
- avoir** (*auxiliary*), 65, 72; in expressing age, 57; in idiomatic expressions, 108; used impersonally, 108; **n'y avoir plus**, 158
- Body. *See* Parts of the body.
- can*, 85
- car**, 6
- Case. *See* Subjects, Objects, Possessive case.
- Causative **faire**, 200-201
- ce** (*neuter pronoun*); **c'est**, **ce sont de**, etc., 132
- ce** (+ **qui**, **dont**), 131
- ceci**, **cela**, 130, 131
- celui qui**, 149
- chez**, 44
- ci** and **-là**, 127-28
- combien**, 12
- Command. *See* Imperative, Request.
- comme** (*exclamation*), 16
- commencer par**, 193
- comment**, 12
- Comparison of adjectives and adverbs, 53-54; **que** in comparisons, 44, 53; **que** + **de** + infinitive in comparisons, 184
- Complementary infinitive, 3, 181-182. *See also* Infinitive and Appendix.
- Complements of verbs, 98-100
- Compound objects and subjects, 103-104
- Compound tenses, auxiliary in, 65, 72; position of adverbs in, 53. *See also* names of tenses and Appendix.
- comprendre que**, 170

- compter**, 86  
**compter que**, 171  
 Conditional, 1-2, 80; tenses and uses of, 116-118  
 Conditional sentences, 1-2, 80, 105, 116-118; future not in *si*-clause of, 24  
**confortable**, use of, 138  
 Conjugation of verbs. *Consult Appendix.*  
 Conjunctions: **que**, 3; followed by Indicative, 134; followed by Subjunctive, 133-34, 146-47  
 Conjunctive pronouns, 91-92; **le**, 104-105  
*could*, meanings of, 119  
**croire**, 8
- dans** (*location*), 160-61; and **en**, 19; with geographical names, 31  
 Dates, 58  
**de**, complement of superlative, 54; in passive, 198; meaning *with*, 45; plus disjunctive pronoun, 96; with geographical names, 32; with nouns denoting material, 160; with nouns used adjectively, 33. *See also* Complementary infinitive.  
 Definite article, 24-25, 54. *See also* Article.  
 Demonstrative adjectives, 127-128  
 Demonstrative pronouns, variable, 128-29; invariable, 129-32  
**depuis**, and the present, 2, 6-7; and past tenses, 80-81, 105  
**désirer** (*polite request*), 123; and **souhaiter**, 3, 4  
**devoir**, 121-23  
 Direct objects, 91-97; parts of the body, 142-44. *See also* Agreement (of past participle), Compound objects.  
 Disjunctive pronouns, 95-96, 103-104  
**dont**, 114-15. *See also* **ce**.  
 Duration, and time of day, 7, 57-58
- Emphasis, 96  
 Emphatic pronouns, 104  
**en** (*partitive pronoun*), 38, 43; contrasted with **y**, 92-94  
**en** (*preposition*), 19, 26; (*location*) 160-61; with geographical names, 31; with nouns denoting material, 160; with present participle, 192-94  
**entendre parler** (*dire*), 187  
**en train de** + infinitive, 195  
**espérer**, 55, 169  
 Essentially reflexive verbs, 63-64, 67-68  
**est-ce que**, use of, 12  
**être** (*auxiliary*), 65. *See also* Reflexive verbs.  
**être à**, 15, 146; passive not used after, 200  
 Exclamatory phrases: **quel**, **que**, **comme**, 16
- faire**, causative, 200-201; past participle invariable, 66; with expressions of weather, 87  
**falloir** and **devoir**, 121-123  
**finir par** . . ., 193  
**fois**, **heure**, **temps**, 18  
 Fractions, 235  
 Future, tenses of, 23-24; in English *if*-clause, 2; replaced by Present, 23  
 Future in the past, 118  
 Future perfect, 23-24
- Gender: of adjectives, 39-40; of countries, 32  
 General negations, omission of article in, 36  
 Genitive case, 4  
 Geographical names, used with article, 25; used with prepositions, 31-32  
 Gerund, 187, 196
- heure**, **temps**, **fois**, 18  
*hours* and *o'clock*, 7
- if*-clauses. *See* Conditional sentences.  
**il est** + adjective + **de**, 184  
**il reste**, 158  
**il y a**, 109  
**il y a . . . que**, 6; **il y avait . . . que**, 80, 105  
 Imperative, 4; pronoun objects with affirmative, 95

Imperfect, 76-82

Impersonal verbs, *constructions with*, 106

Indefinite adverbial expressions, 150

Indefinite antecedents. *See* Subjunctive (in relative clauses).

Indefinite article. *See* Article.

Indefinite pronouns, 148-50

Independent clauses, subjunctive in, 167

Indicative, after conjunctions, 134; after impersonal verbs, 106; after interrogative clauses, 169; or Subjunctive, choice between, 157, 165-71

Indirect objects, 91-97; parts of the body, 142-44

Infinitive, after prepositions, 68-69, 134, 181-85, 232-33; complementary, 3, 181-83; direct, 182, 232; in negative constructions, 28; pronoun object of, 184-86; past, 69, 186; subordinate, 184-85; used as noun, 187, 196

Interrogative adjectives, 13

Interrogative adverbs, 12, 13

Interrogative clauses, followed by Indicative, 169; followed by Subjunctive, 168

Interrogative constructions, 11-15; negative, 27; with noun subject, 11; with pronoun subject, 11-12; with possessive pronoun, 146; introduced by *est-ce que*, *que*, 12; by *qui* (*qu'*) *est-ce qui* (*que*), 15

Interrogative pronouns, 12-15

Inverted constructions: interrogative, 11-14; declarative, 16; with *peut-être*, *à peine*, etc., 16

*il*, translation of, 130, 132

*jouer*, 137

*la*, *le*, *les*. *See* Definite article.

*-là* and *-ci*, 127-28

*laisser* + infinitive, 186

Languages, article with, 25

*le* (*neuter conjunctive pronoun*), 104-105

*let*, meanings of, 4, 186

(*de*) *manière que*, meanings of, 134

*manquer*, *manquer à*, 136

*may*, meanings of, 133

*meet*, meanings of, 136

*miss*, meanings of, 136

Modal auxiliaries. *See* *devoir*, *falloir*, *may*, *should*, etc.

Moods. *See* Indicative, Subjunctive, Conditional.

*ne*, pleonastic, 176

*ne . . . guère*, 30-31

*ne . . . ni . . . ni*, indefinite article omitted with, 28

Negations, omission of article in general, 36; list of, 233

Negative constructions, 27-29

Negatives (limited), 30-31

*n'est-ce pas*, 13

Neuter pronouns: *ce*, 132; *le*, 104-105

*nier*, 169

*n'importe qui*, *quoi*, 149

*nobody*, *nothing*, 28

Noun objects, order of, 95; parts of the body, 142-44

Nouns, followed by *à* or *de* + infinitive, 183; infinitives used as, 187; plural of, 40

Numerals, cardinal, 234; ordinal, 235; followed by *à* or *de* + infinitive, 183; gender and number of, 235

Objects, 91-97; object-subject of infinitive, 184-86. *See also* Complements of verbs, Compound objects.

Omission of article. *See* Article.

*on*, use of, 198-99

*où* (*interrogative adverb*), 12

*où* (= *dans lequel*, etc.), 115

*où que*, 146

*ought* and *ought to have* . . ., 123

*par*, introducing agent in passive, 198

Participle. *See* Past participle, Present participle.

Partitive, use of, 36-38; omission of, 27, 28, 37; pronoun *en*, 38, 43; with adverbs of quantity, 42-43

- Parts of the body, use of article or possessive adjective, 142-45
- passé simple**. *See* Past definite.
- Passive voice, used, **197-99**; not used, 200; reflexive used for, 199
- Past anterior, use of, 200
- Past definite, 77-78, **81-82**
- Past indefinite, 76-82
- Past infinitive, 69, 186
- Past participle, agreement of, **66-68**, 199*n*
- payer, payer à**, 99
- pendant**, 6
- penser à, penser de**, 98
- Perception, verbs of, 181, 185, 194; passive not used after, 200
- Perfect active participle, 195; after **bien que, quoique**, 194
- Perfect subjunctive, 83
- Personal pronouns, 91-92
- peu de** and **un peu de**, 43
- peut-être**, 16
- play*, meanings of, 137
- Pleonastic **ne**, 176
- Pluperfect, uses of, **105-106**; in *si*-clause, 105, 106
- Plural, of nouns and adjectives, 40
- Position, of adjectives, 49-52; of adverbs, 52-53; of objects, 91-97; of reflexive pronouns, 63, 67-68, **92**. *See also* Inverted constructions.
- Possession, **141-46**; parts of body, 142-44; *whose*, 15
- Possessive adjectives, 141-45
- Possessive case (*genitive*), 4; **être + à**, 15, 146
- Possessive pronouns, 145-46
- pour**, 6; followed by infinitive, 182-83; and **pour que**, 134
- Prepositions, before infinitive, 68-69, 134, **181-85**, 232-33. *See also à, chez, dans, en, pour, etc.*
- Present indicative, **1, 2**; after **depuis**, 2; in *si*-clause, 1, 2; used for future, 23. *See also* Indicative.
- Present participle, after **bien que, quoi que**, 194; meanings of, 192-94; not to be used, 69, **195-96**; used as adjective, 196; with **en**, 192-94; with **tout en**, 193, 195; without **en**, 193-94
- prétendre que**, 170
- Pronoun objects, position of, **91-92**, 95
- Pronouns: conjunctive, 91-92; neuter conjunctive **le**, 104-105; demonstrative (variable), 128-29; (invariable), 129-32; disjunctive, 95-96, 103-104; indefinite, 148-50; interrogative, 12-15; partitive **en**, 38; personal, 91-92; possessive, 145-46; reflexive, 63, 67-68, **92**; relative, 113-15; with parts of the body, 142-45; **y** and **en**, 92-94
- puisque**, 7
- quand**, 12
- que** (*conjunction*), 3; (*exclamation*), 16; (*interrogative pronoun*), 12, 14; (*relative pronoun*), 2; used in comparisons, 44, 53
- quel** (*exclamation*), 16
- quel que**, 146
- quelque . . . que**, 146
- Questions. *See* Interrogative constructions.
- qui** (*interrogative pronoun*), 12, 14; (*relative pronoun*), **2**, 113
- quiconque**, 149
- quique**, 146
- quoique**, 146; and participle, 194
- quoique** and **quoi que**, 147
- Reciprocal verbs, 63-64, 67-68
- Reflexive pronouns, position of, 63, 67-68, **92**; compared with pronouns in *-self*, 104; with parts of the body, 142
- Reflexive verbs, **63-64**, 67-68
- Relative clauses, indicative in, 157, 165-67; subjunctive in, 156-57, 165-67
- Relative pronouns, **2**, **113-15**
- Request, polite, 123
- rester, passer**, 196
- sans and sans que**, 134
- sans aucun doute**, 16
- sans doute**, 16

**il semble (il me semble) que**, 170  
 Sequence of Tenses. *See* Conditional sentences, Subjunctive.  
*should*, meanings of, 119–120, 123  
**si**, 24; (*conjunction*), 118; or **tel**, 159  
**si**, introducing supposition. *See* Conditional sentences.  
**si-clause**. *See* Conditional sentences.  
**si . . . que**, 146  
*since*, meanings of, 7  
*sit*, renderings of, 137  
**soit que . . .**, 134  
*some*, 42. *See* Partitive.  
**de (telle) sorte que**, meanings of, 134  
**souhaiter and désirer**, 3, 4  
*stand*, renderings of, 137–38  
 Subject and object of infinitive, 184–85  
 Subjects. *See* Nouns, Pronouns, Infinitives.  
 Subjunctive, **154–57, 165–174**; after certain types of verbs, 3, 55, 155–57; after conjunctions, 133–34, 146–47; after impersonal verbs, 106; after interrogative clauses, 168; in independent clauses, 167; in relative clauses, 156–57, 165–67  
 Subjunctive, avoidance of, 174, 175, 181; or the indicative, 157, **165–71**  
 Subjunctive, tenses of: Present, 3–4; Imperfect and Pluperfect, 172–74; Present and Perfect, 172, 174*n*; Perfect, 83; Present or Perfect (replacing Imperfect and Pluperfect), 173–74; Sequence of tenses of, 171–74  
 Subordinate infinitive, 184–85  
 Super-compound past anterior, 200  
 Superlative. *See* Adjectives, Adverbs.

Suppositions. *See* Conditional sentences.

**tard, en retard**, 18

**tel, si**, 159

**temps, fois, heure**, 18

Tenses. *See* Indicative, Conditional Subjunctive, and *Appendix*.

*time*: on time, 19

Time, of day and duration, 7, 57–58; divisions of, 59

Titles of address, articles in, 25

**tôt, en avance**, 18

**tout (adjective and pronoun)**, 148

**tout en** + present participle, 195*n*

**un, une**. *See* Article.

*until*, 59–60

Verbs: auxiliary, 27, 65, 72 (*see also* **devoir, falloir, may, should**, etc.); impersonal, 106; reflexive and reciprocal, 63–64, 67–68. *For forms, endings, conjugations, etc., see Appendix*.

Vocabulary Distinctions. *See* chart on inside front cover.

Voice. *See* Passive voice.

**voici, voilà**, 109

**voilà . . . que**, 6

**vouloir**, followed by complementary infinitive, 3; (*polite request*), 123; in contrary-to-fact statement, 187

Weather, 87

*whose?*, 15

*will*, meanings of, 24

*would*, meanings of, 119, 123

**y** and **en**, 92–94



लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी, पुस्तकालय  
Lal Bahadur Shastri National Academy of Administration Library

## नसरी

## MUSSOORIE

यह पुस्तक निम्नांकित तारिख तक वापिस करनी है।

**This book is to be returned on the date last stamped**

[illegible]

445  
Dan

अवाप्ति सं.

ACC. No. 110034

वर्ग सं.

पुस्तक सं.

Class No. Book No.

लेखक

Author.....Dandon.....R.....

शीर्षक

Title...French...in...review.....

निर्माण दिनांक : 1955

445

Dan

LIBRARY

LAL BAHADUR SHASTRI

National Academy of Administration

MUSSOORIE

Accession No.

110034

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the library.
5. Books lost, stolen or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or be